00035871

ized with financial assistance
H T Parekh
FOUNDATION
An Initiative by
HDFC
WITH YOU, RIGHT THROUGH
on 08 January, 2019

THE MOHAMMADAN DYNASTIES

THE

MOHAMMADAN DYNASTIES

CHRONOLOGICAL AND GENEALOGICAL TABLES WITH HISTORICAL INTRODUCTIONS

35871
ac

BY

STANLEY LANE-POOLE

TT-U-25

Westminster

ARCHIBALD CONSTABLE AND COMPANY

PUBLISHERS TO THE INDIA OFFICE

14 PARLIAMENT STREET

MDCCCXCIV

GOD
929.2
Lan / Moh
35871

HERTFORD

PRINTED BY STEPHEN AUSTIN AND SONS.

PREFACE

The following Tables of Mohammadan Dynasties have grown naturally out of my twenty years' work upon the Arabic coins in the British Museum. In preparing the thirteen volumes of the *Catalogue of Oriental* and *Indian Coins* I was frequently at a loss for chronological lists. Prinsep's *Useful Tables*, edited by Edward Thomas, was the only trustworthy English authority I could refer to, and it was often at fault. I generally found it necessary to search for correct names and dates in the Arabic historians, and the lists of dynasties prefixed to the descriptions of their coins in my Catalogue were usually the result of my own researches in many Oriental authorities. It has often been suggested to me that a reprint of these lists would be useful to students, and now that the entire Catalogue is published I have collected the tables and genealogical trees in the present volume.

The work is, however, much more than a reprint of these tables. I have not only verified the dates and pedigrees by reference to the Arabic sources and added a number of dynasties which were not represented in the Catalogue of Coins, but I have endeavoured to make the lists more intelligible by prefixing to each a brief historical introduction. These introductions do not attempt to relate the internal history of each dynasty: they merely show its place in relation to other dynasties, and trace its origin, its principal extensions, and its downfall; they seek to define the boundaries of its dominions, and to describe the chief steps in its aggrandisement and in its decline. In the space at my command these facts could only be stated with the utmost brevity, but in the absence of any similar attempt to arrange, define, and explain the relative positions and successions of all the Mohammedan Dynasties in every part of the Muslim world, I hope the manual may be useful to students of history. To the collector of Arabic coins and

Saracenic antiquities I know, from personal experience, that it will be practically indispensable.

The plan I have followed is to arrange the dynasties in geographical order, beginning with Spain, which first threw off the control of the Caliphs of Baghdād. From the extreme west of the kingdoms of Islām I gradually work eastwards, till the end is reached in India and Afghānistān. Certain deviations from the strict geographical order are explained as they arise (see p. 107). Each dynasty has its historical introduction, a chronological list of its princes, and (when necessary) a genealogical tree. The years of the Christian era are given as well as those of the Hijra,* and when the latter occur in the introductory notices they are distinguished by italic

* The Hijra date is of course the more exact, as it is derived from Arabic historians; whilst the date A.D. is merely *the year in which that Hijra year began*, and does not necessarily correspond with it for more than a few months. The correspondence is near enough, however, for practical purposes; and a reference to the conversion tables in my *Catalogue of Indian Coins* will render it more precise. When the Hijra year began at the close of the Christian year the following year A.D. is given.

type. Beneath each chronological list is given [in square brackets] the name of the succeeding dynasty.

The two synoptic Tables of the Mohammadan Dynasties, (1) during and (2) after the Caliphate, will give a general idea of their relative positions, and roughly indicate the comparative extent of their dominions. The numismatist will find almost all the coin-striking dynasties within the limits of time assigned; and the Oriental student in general may find this map of the Mohammadan Empire instructive in its rough delineation of the relative territorial extent of the various dynasties, its assignment of each dynasty to its proper geographical position in the Muslim world, and its attempt to indicate the interweaving of the several houses and the supplanting of one by another in the various kingdoms and provinces of the East. It is interesting to trace the gradual absorption of the vast empire of the Caliphs from the opposite quarters of Africa and the Oxus provinces. We see how the

Omayyads of Cordova were the first to divide the authority of the head of the religion, and then how the Idrīsids, Aghlabids, Ṭūlūnids, Iḵhshīdids, Fāṭimids, and many others, destroyed the supremacy of the 'Abbāsid Caliphs of Baghdād in their Western provinces; and how, meanwhile, the Persian dynasties of Ṭāhirids, Ṣaffārids, Sāmānids, Ziyārids, and Buwayhids gradually advanced from the Oxus nearer and nearer to the City of Peace, until, when the Buwayhids entered Baghdād on Dec. 19, 945, the Caliph ruled little more than his own palace, and often could not even rule there. Then a fresh change comes over the scene. The Turkish tribes begin to overrun the Moḥammadan Empire. The Ghaznawids establish themselves in Afghānistān, and the Seljāḳs begin their course of conquest, which carries them from Herāt to the Mediterranean, and from Bukhārā to the borders of Egypt. When the Seljūḳ rule comes to be divided among many branches of the family, and division brings its invariable con-

sequence of weakness, we find several dynasties of Atābegs, or generals of Seljūḳian armies, springing up in the more western provinces of Syria and Diyār-Bakr and Al-'Irāḳ, whilst the Shāh of Khwārizm founds further East a wide empire, which increases with extraordinary rapidity, and eventually includes the greater part of the countries conquered by the Seljūḳs as well as that portion of Afghānistān which the Ghaznawids, and after them the Ghōrids, had subdued to their rule. And then comes the greatest change of all. The Mongols come down from their deserts and carry fire and sword over the whole eastern Moḥammadan Empire; the Turkish slaves, or Mamlūks, of Saladin found their famous dynasty in Egypt; the Berber houses of Marīn and Ziyān and Ḥafṣ are established along the north coast of Africa; and the Christians are rapidly recovering Andalusia from the Moors, who had given it so much of its beauty and renown. And here the epoch is chosen for beginning the second table, which begins at

the Mongol invasion and brings the history down to the present day.

Vertically the tables are divided under the headings of the chief divisions of the Mohammadan Empire. The various dynasties have been placed as nearly as possible, not only under their proper geographical head, but in the proper portion of the space allotted to that head: but the difficulties of arrangement and the necessity of economizing space have brought about a certain number of exceptions. The Turkish and Mongol tribes who wandered in Siberia, Turkistān, Kipchak, etc., are altogether omitted, because no exercise of ingenuity availed to provide a convenient place for them.

Horizontally the tables are divided, though the lines are not ruled through, into centuries, an inch representing one hundred years. The date of the beginning is taken at A.H. 41, the year of the foundation of the Omayyad Caliphate, because the Mohammadan Empire

was scarcely organized until this house came into power, and it would have been very difficult to indicate in any satisfactory manner the tide of Muslim conquest with its flow and ebb. Where space permits the names of a few leading kings and caliphs are inserted in the space allotted to their dynasty, especially when such names are familiar to European students.

In the orthography of Oriental names I have thought it best to be precise and consistent, except in some instances of names which have been adopted into the English language and cannot now be amended. Every letter of the Arabic and Persian alphabet is represented as a rule by one character, as shown in the table on p xix. The final *h*, which has an inflexional use, is omitted, since it serves no purpose in Roman writing: but it must be remembered that every name ending in short *a* (as -Baṣra, but not *ā* as Ṣan'ā) has a final *h* in Arabic. To indicate the elision of the *l* in the article *al* before certain letters, (as *d*, *s*, *r*),

the *l* is printed in italic type: thus 'Abd-*al*-Raḥmān is to be pronounced 'Abd-ar-Raḥmān.* The *l* is retained (though not pronounced) because it is so written in Arabic. On the other hand I omit the article altogether *before* a name. All the Caliphs and a multitude of other dynasts have names with the prefixed *al*, and a considerable saving of space and some added clearness is gained by omitting it. To show, however, that the article is to be used in the original I retain the hyphen: thus -Ḥākim stands for Al-Ḥākim. The only sign not generally employed by Orientalists is the Greek colon (·) which I use to denote the quiescent *hamza* in the middle of a word: as -Ma·mūn, where there is a catch in the breath between the *a* and *m*.

To students who are not Orientalists, and who wish to be accurate without elaboration in the orthography of

* If the inflexion of the Arabic is to be reproduced the name would be 'Abdu-r-Rahmān, and would require to be modified in accordance with its government in the sentence; but this would be carrying accuracy to an extreme of pedantry.

Eastern names, I would recommend the omission of all the diacritical points and the prefixed hyphen, and the assimilation of the italic *l* to the letter which follows it: thus for popular purposes one might write Abd-ar-Rahman instead of 'Abd-aL-Raḥmān, Hakim instead of Al-Ḥākim. No system of transliteration can possibly represent the pronunciation of all parts of the Moḥammadan world: what would suit the accent of Fez would not fit the mouth of an Egyptian, still less of a Panjābī. One simple suggestion may, however, be made. Whereas for consistency I have adopted the *a* throughout to represent the Arabic vowel *fatḥ*, an *e* may advantageously be substituted for the *a* in spelling Egyptian or Algerian names, where *el* is nearer the native pronunciation than *al*, and Shems-ed-dīn than Shams-al-dīn.

The European reader when confronted with the long string of names and titles commonly affected by Oriental potentates is naturally puzzled to select the name by which a Moḥammadan ruler may be called 'for short.'

In the early days of Islām a great man was content to be known by a single or at most a double name. There would be his proper name, or what we should call his 'Christian name,' such as Moḥammad, Aḥmad, 'Omar; and to this would sometimes be added a patronymic (or rather hyionymic), as Abū-l-Ḥasan, 'the father of -Ḥasan,' or the name of his father as b. Ṭūlūn or ibn Ṭūlūn, 'the son of Ṭūlūn.' The patronymics beginning with *Abū* may always be omitted (except Ahū-Bakr) in shortening the name, and so may the sonship prefixed by the abbreviation *b.* They are necessary in the dynastic lists for purposes of identification, but Aḥmad the Ṭūlūnid is a sufficient designation for Aḥmad b. Ṭūlūn, and the Ziyānid Mūsā I is adequately defined without his patronymic Abū-Ḥammū.

But very soon other titles of an honorific or theocratic character began to be added. Such epithets (laḳab) as Nūr-*al*-dīn, 'Light of the Faith,' Nāṣir-*al*-dīn, 'Succourer of the Faith,' Sayf-*al*-dīn, 'Sword

of the Faith,' were prefixed to the proper name; and adjectives or participles such as Al-Manṣūr 'the victorious,' Al-Sa'īd 'the Fortunate,' Al-Rashīd 'the Orthodox,'' were appended to the title *Khalīfa* (caliph) or *Malik* (king). Thus we find the caliph Hārūn al-Rashīd, 'the Orthodox,' or 'rightly-directed,' caliph Aaron; and Saladin's full title was Al-Malik Al-Nāṣir Ṣalāḥ-al-dīn Yūsuf b. Ayyūb, 'The Victorious* King, Redresser of the Faith, Joseph son of Job.' In the case of compound names such as these, the owner is generally called either by the participial title Al-Nāṣir, Al-Manṣūr, Al-Rashīd, etc, or by the laḳab with the termination al-dīn ('of the Faith') or al-dawla ('of the State'), etc. Thus the brother of Saladin is known both as Al-'Ādil, 'the Just [King]' and as Sayf-al-dīn, 'Sword of the Faith.' On the other hand the Atābegs of Al-Mōṣil are generally cited by both

* Lit. 'Helping'; one who helps the religion of Islām by his victories.

the proper name and the epithet, as 'Imād-*al*-dīn Zangī, 'Izz-*al*-dīn Mas'ūd; though the epithet by itself is sufficient. As a general rule the first name given in the chronological lists (omitting the patronymic Abū- such an one) may be used to designate the ruler, to the exclusion of the rest. When there are several similar titles it is better to add the proper name: for instance there are eight Al-Manṣūrs among the Mamlūk Sulṭāns, and it is necessary to distinguish them as Al-Manṣūr Kalā'ūn, Al-Manṣūr Lājīn, etc.

To give a list of the authorities I have used in compiling the lists of dynasties and historical notices would involve publishing a catalogue of an Orientalist's library. I have referred to all the leading Arabic historians, consulted special histories, and derived considerable help from articles in the Asiatic and numismatic journals. Where I am specially indebted to a particular author I refer to his work in a footnote. The coins, however, are the backbone of the book and the

historian's surest documents, and upon them I have relied throughout.

In a work abounding in names and figures it would be strange if misprints and mistakes did not occur. I shall be grateful to any scholar who will convict me of error; for those who 'serve tables' know the danger and annoyance of even slight inaccuracy.

S. L.-P.

The Athenæum,
1*st October*, 1893.

LIBRARY
OF THE
BOMBAY
BRANCH
OF THE
ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY

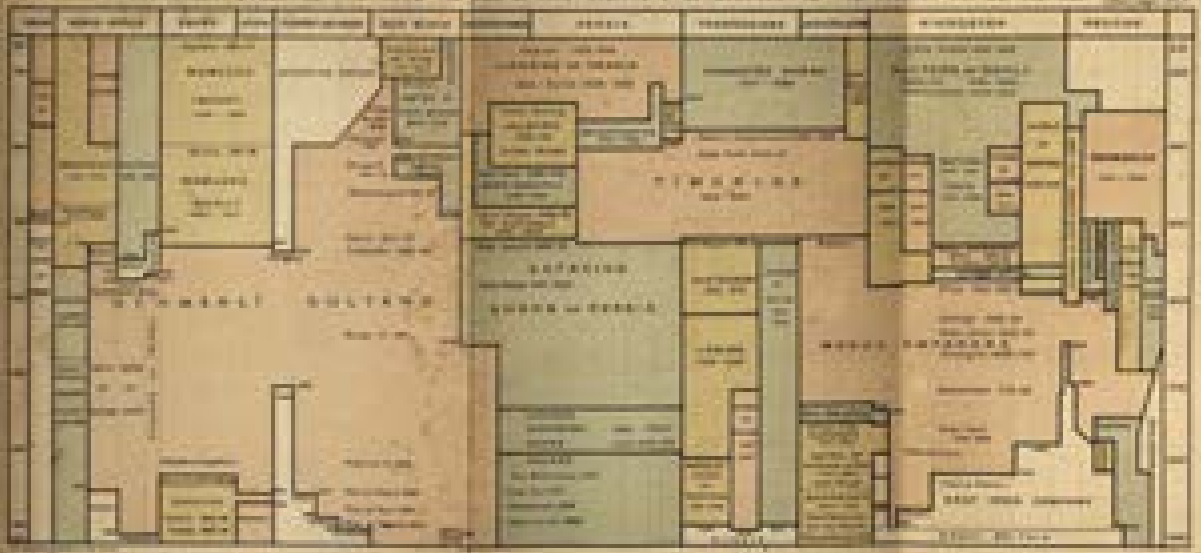


TABLE OF TRANSLITERATION

أ	ʾ		ض	ḍ	
ب	b		ط	ṭ	
پ	p		ظ	ẓ	
ت	t		ع	ʿ	
ث	th		غ	gh	
ج	j		ف	f	
چ	ch		ق	k	
ح	ḥ		ک	k	
خ	kh		گ	g	
د	d		ل	l	
ذ	dh		م	m	
ر	r		ن	n	
ز	z		ه	h	
س	s		و	w	
ش	sh		ی	y	
ص	ṣ				

LIBRARY OF THE BOMBAY BRANCH OF THE ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY

VOWELS

ـَ a (rarely e)	ـَا ā	ـَو aw (rarely ō)
ـُ u (rarely o)	ـُو ū	ـَی ay
ـِ i	ـِی ī	

CORRIGENDA.

Page 46 *line* 3 *for* Ḥammūdid *read* Ḥammādid

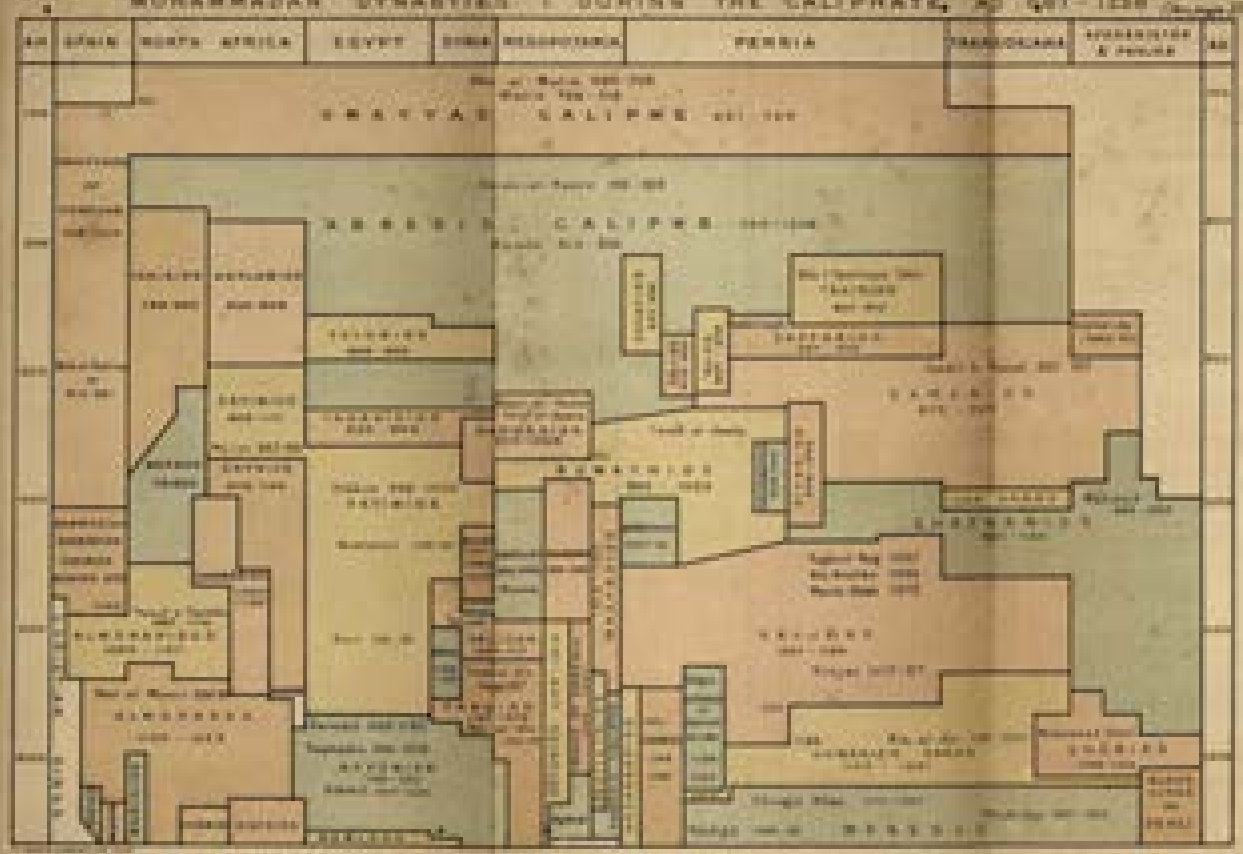
„ 71 *lines* 2, 5 *for* Ḳayruwān *read* Ḳayrawān

„ 78 *for* [*Tatars*] *read* [*Mongols*]

„ 79 *line* 7 *from bottom, for* Tughtakīn *read* Ṭughtigīn

„ 157, 172 *for* FĀRIS *read* FĀRS

„ 168 *heading* B. *for* 712, 1312, *read* 811, 1408


MOHAMMADAN DYNASTIES I DURING THE CALIPHATE, AD 661-1258
SPAIN
NORTH AFRICA
EGYPT
SYRIA
MESOPOTAMIA
PERSIA
TRANSOXIANA
AFGHANISTAN & PUNJAB
OMAYYAD CALIPHS
ABBASID CALIPHS

CONTENTS

ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY LIBRARY OF THE BOMBAY BRANCH OF THE

PREFACE v

Table of Dynasties during the Caliphate xviii

Table of Dynasties after the Caliphate . . . . . *face* xx

THE CALIPHS SÆC. VII—XIII 1

Orthodox 9

Omayyads 9

Table of Connexion of lines of Caliphs 10

Genealogy of Omayyads 11

'Abbāsids 12

Genealogy of 'Abbāsids 14

SPAIN SÆC. VIII—XV 16

Omayyads of Cordova 21

Genealogy 22

MINOR SPANISH DYNASTIES (REYES DE TAIFAS) . . 23

Ḥammūdids (Malaga) 23

Genealogy 24

Ḥammūdids (Algeciras) 25
'Abbādids (Seville) 25
Zayrids (Granada) 25
Jahwarids (Cordova) 25
Dhū-l-Nūnids (Toledo) 25
Āmirids (Valencia) 26
Ṭojibids (Zaragoza) 26
Hūdids (Zaragoza) 26
Denia, Kings of 26
Naṣrids (Granada) 28
Genealogy 29

NORTH AFRICA SÆC. VIII.—XIX 31

Idrīsids (Morocco) 35
Aghlabids (Tunis) 36
Genealogy 38
Zayrids (Tunis) 40
Ḥammādids (Algiers) 40
Almoravides (Morocco, Algiers, Spain) 41
Genealogy 44
Almohades (North Africa, Spain) 45
Genealogy 48
Ḥafṣids (Tunis) 49
Genealogy 52
Ziyānids (Algiers) 51
Genealogy 54
Corsairs 55
Marīnids (Morocco) 57
Genealogy 59
Sharīfs (Morocco) 60
Genealogy 62

EGYPT AND SYRIA SÆC. IX—XIX 65

Ṭūlūnids 68
Ikhshīdids 69
Fāṭimids 70
Genealogy 72
Ayyūbids 74
Genealogy . . . . . *face* 76
Mamlūks 80
Genealogy 82
Khedives 84
Genealogy 85

ARABIA FELIX (YAMAN) SÆC. IX—XVIII 87

Ziyādids (Zabīd) 90
Ya'furids (Ṣan'ā and Janad) 91
Najāḥids (Zabīd) 92
Genealogy 93
Ṣulayḥids (Ṣan'ā) 94
Genealogy 94
Hamdānids (Ṣan'ā) 95
Mahdids (Zabīd) 96
Zuray'ids ('Aden) 97
Genealogy 97
Ayyūbids 98
Rasūlids 99
Genealogy 100
Ṭāhirids 101
Genealogy 101
Reseid Imāms (Sa'da) 102
Genealogy . . . . . *face* 102
Imāms of Ṣan'ā 103

SYRIA AND MESOPOTAMIA (Arab Period) SÆC. X—XII 105
Classification of Asiatic Dynasties 107
Arab tribes 109
Ḥamdānids (-Mōṣil, Aleppo) 111
Genealogy 113
Mirdāsids (Aleppo) 114
Genealogy 115
'Oḳaylids (-Mōṣil, etc.) 116
Genealogy . . . . . *face* 116
Marwânids (Diyār-Bakr) 118
Genealogy 118
Mazyadids (-Ḥilla) 119
Genealogy 120

PERSIA AND TRANSOXIANA (Persian Period) SÆC. IX—XI 121
Dulafids (Kurdistān) 125
Genealogy 125
Sājids (Adharbījān) 126
'Alids (Ṭabaristān) 127
Ṭāhirids (Khurāsān) 128
Genealogy 128
Ṣaffārids (Persia) 129
Sāmānids (Transoxiana and Persia) 131
Genealogy 133
Ilak Khāns (Turkistān) 134
Ziyārids (Jurjān) 136
Genealogy 137
Hasanwayhids (Kurdistān) 138
Buwayhids (S. Persia and -'Irāḳ) 139
Geographical distribution 143
Genealogy 144
Kākwayhids (Kurdistān) 145
Genealogy 145

THE SELJŪḲS (Western Asia) Sᴇc. xi—xii . 147

Genealogy . . . . . *face* 152
Great Seljūḳs 153
Seljūḳs of Kirmān 153
Seljūḳs of Syria 154
Seljūḳs of -'Irāḳ and Kurdistān 154
Seljūḳs of -Rūm (Asia Minor) 155
Dānishmandids (Asia Minor) 156

THE ATĀBEGS (Seljūḳ Officers) Sᴇc. xii—xiii . . . 157

Būrids (Damascus) 161
Genealogy 161
Zangids (Mesopotamia and Syria) 162
Genealogy 164
Begtigīnids (Arbela) 165
Ortuḳids (Diyār-Bakr) 166
Genealogy 169
Armenia, Shāhs 170
Genealogy 170
Adharbījān, Atābegs. 171
Genealogy 171
Salgharids (Fārs) 172
Genealogy 173
Ilazāraspids (Lūristān) 174
Genealogy 175
Khwārizm Shāhs 176
Genealogy 178
Ḳutlugh Khāns (Kirmān) 179
Genealogy 180

THE SUCCESSORS OF THE SELJŪḲS IN THE WEST

Sæc. xiv—xix 181

Amīrs of Asia Minor . . . . . face 184
ʿOthmānlī Sulṭāns 186
Table of growth and decay of the Ottoman Empire . 190
Genealogy 196

THE MONGOLS Sæc. xiii—xviii 199

Sketch-tree of Mongol Dynasties 206
Great Khāns 207
Ogotāy's line 207
Tulūy's line 211
Genealogy of Great Khāns . . . . . face 216
Mongols of Persia 217
Genealogy 221
Golden Horde 222
Bātū's line (Blue Horde) 224
Orda's line (White Horde) 226
Rival Families 229
Table 232
Khāns of the Ḳrīm (Crimea) 233
Shaybān's line (Czars of Tiumen, etc.) 238
Genealogy of the House of Jūjī . . . . face 240
Chagatāy Khāns (Transoxiana) 241
Genealogy . . . . . face 242

PERSIA Sæc. xiv—xix 243

Jalayrs (-ʿIrāḳ, etc.) 246
Genealogy 248
Muẓaffarids (Fārs, etc.) 249
Genealogy 250

Sarbadārids (Khurāsān) 251
Karts (Herāt) 252
Genealogy 252
Ḳarā-Ḳuyunlī (Black Sheep Turkomāns) 253
Āḳ-Ḳuyunlī (White Sheep Turkomāns) 254
Shāhs of Persia 256
Ṣafavids 259
Afghāns 259
Afshārids 259
Zands 260
Ḳājārs 260
Genealogies 261–2

TRANSOXIANA Sæc. xiv—xix 263
Tīmūrids 265
Table of the descendants of Tīmūr . . . *face* 268
Table of connexion of the Transoxine Khānates . . . 269
Shaybānids 270
Sub-dynasties of Bukhārā and Samarḳand . . . 272
Genealogy 273
Jānids 274
Genealogy 276
Mangits 277
Khiva, Khāns of 278
Khoḳand, Khāns of 280

INDIA AND AFGHĀNISTĀN Sæc. x—xix 281
Ghaznawids (Afghānistān and Panjāb) 285
Genealogy 290
Ghōrids (Afghānistān, Hindūstān) 291
Genealogy . . . . . *face* 294

Sulṭāns of Dehlī (Hindūstān) 295
Slave Kings 299
Khaljīs 299
Taghlaḳids 300
Sayyids 300
Lōdīs 300
Afghāns 300
Genealogies 301–3

Provincial Dynasties of India 304
Governors and Kings of Bengal 305
Sharḳī Kings of Jaunpūr 309
Kings of Mālwa 310
Kings of Gujarāt 312
Genealogy 314
Kings of Khāndēsh 315
Bahmanids (Kulbarga, etc.) 316
Genealogy 319
'Imād Shāhs (Berār) 320
Niẓām Shāhs (Aḥmadnagar) 320
Barīd Shāhs (Bīdar) 321
'Ādil Shāhs (Bījāpūr) 321
Ḳuṭb Shāhs (Golkonda) 321
Mogul Emperors of Hindūstān 322
Genealogy 329
Amīrs of Afghānistān 330
Durrānīs 334
Bārakzais 334
Genealogy 335
Index to Rulers 337

I. THE CALIPHS

SÆC. VII—XIII

1. ORTHODOX

2. OMAYYADS

3. ʿABBĀSIDS

I. THE CALIPHS

SÆC. VII–XIII

On the death of the Prophet Mohammad in A.D. 632, in the eleventh year after his Flight (Hijra, 622) from Mecca to Medīna, his father-in-law Abū-Bakr was elected head of the Muslims, with the title of *Khalīfa* or Caliph ('successor'). Three other Caliphs, 'Omar, 'Othmān, and 'Alī, were similarly elected in turn, without founding dynasties, and these first four successors are known as the Orthodox Caliphs (*Al-Khulafā Al-Rāshidūn*). On the murder of 'Alī in 661 (A.H. *40*), Mo'āwiya, a descendant of Omayya of the Prophet's tribe of the Kuraysh, assumed the Caliphate, and founded the dynasty of the *Omayyad Caliphs*, fourteen in number, whose capital was Damascus. In 750 (*132*) this dynasty was supplanted (except in Spain) by that of the *'Abbāsid Caliphs*, numbering thirty-seven, descended from 'Abbās, an uncle of the Prophet, and having Baghdād (founded 762, *145*) as their capital. The 'Abbāsid Caliphate at Baghdād was exterminated by the Mongol Hūlāgū in 1258 (*656*). A line of their descendants, the *'Abbāsid Caliphs of Egypt*, held a shadowy spiritual dignity

at Cairo, until the last of the house was carried to Constantinople by the Ottoman Sulṭān Salīm I., after the conquest of Egypt in 1517, and surrendered his title of Caliph to the conqueror.

At the accession of the first Caliph, Abū-Bakr, the rule of Islām comprised no territory outside Arabia; but during his brief reign of two years the tide of Moḥammadan conquest had already begun to swell. In 633 (*12*) the Battle of the Chains, followed by other victories, admitted the Muslims into Chaldaea (-'Irāḳ -'Arabī), and gave them the city of -Hīra. In 634 (*13*) the Battle of the Yarmuk opened Syria to their arms; Damascus fell in 635 (*14*); Emesa, Antioch, and Jerusalem in 636; and the conquest of Caesarea completed the subjugation of Syria in 638 (*17*). Meanwhile the victory of Ḳādisīya in 635 (*14*) was followed by the conquest of Madā'in (Seleucia-Ctesiphon), the old double capital of Chaldaea, 637 (*16*); Mesopotamia was subdued, and the cities of -Basra and -Kūfa founded; and Khūzistān and Tustar were annexed in 638–40. The decisive Battle of Nahawand in 642 (*21*) put an end to the Sāsānid dynasty, and gave all Persia to the Muslims. By 661 (*41*) they were at Herāt, and soon carried their arms throughout Afghānistān and as far as the Indus, where they established a government in

Sind. In 674 (*54*) they occupied Bukhārā, and two years later Samarḳand, but these early raids in Transoxiana were not converted into settled conquests until 711 (*93*). On the East the Caliphate had reached its utmost limits in little more than forty years after the Muslims first led a campaign outside Arabia.

On the West their progress was slower. In 641 (*20*) Egypt was conquered, and by 647 (*26*) the Barbary coast was overrun up to the gates of Roman Carthage; but the wild Berber population was more difficult to subdue than the luxurious subjects of the Sāsānids of Persia or the Greeks of Syria and Egypt. Ḳayrawān was founded as the African capital in 670 (*50*); Carthage fell in 693 (*74*), and the Arabs pushed their arms as far as the Atlantic. From Tangier they crossed into Spain in 710 (*91*), and the conquest of the Gothic kingdom was complete on the fall of Toledo in 712. Southern France was overrun in 725, and in spite of Charles the Hammer's victory near Tours in 732 (*114*), the Muslims continued to hold Narbonne and to ravage Burgundy and the Dauphiné. Thus in the West the Caliphate attained its widest extent within a century after its commencement.

To the North, the Greeks retained Anatolia, which

never belonged to the Caliphate, but the Muslims invaded Armenia, and reached Erzerūm about 700. Cyprus had been annexed as early as 649 (*28*), and Constantinople was several times besieged from 670 (*50*) onwards.

Thus the empire of the Caliphs at its widest extended from the Atlantic to the Indus, and from the Caspian to the cataracts of the Nile. So vast a dominion could not long be held together. The first step towards its disintegration began in Spain, where 'Abd-al-Raḥmān, a member of the suppressed Omayyad family, was acknowledged as an independent sovereign in 755 (*138*), and the 'Abbāsid Caliphate was renounced for ever. Thirty years later Idrīs, a great-grandson of the Caliph 'Alī, and therefore equally at variance with 'Abbāsids and Omayyads, founded an 'Alid dynasty in Morocco, with Tudgha for its capital, 788 (*172*). The rest of the North African coast was practically lost to the Caliphate when the Aghlabid governor established his authority at Ḳayrawān in 800 (*184*). In the following century, Egypt, together with Syria, attained independence under the rule of Ibn-Ṭūlūn, by the year 877 (*264*). It is true that after the collapse of the Ṭūlūnids, governors were again appointed over Syria and Egypt by the 'Abbāsid Caliphs for thirty years; but in 934 (*323*) Ikhshīd founded

his dynasty, and thenceforward no country west of the Euphrates ever recognized the temporal authority of the Caliphs of Baghdād, though their spiritual title was generally acknowledged on the coins and in the public prayer (*khuṭba*), except in Spain and Morocco.

In the East, the disintegration of the 'Abbāsid empire proceeded with equal rapidity. The famous general of -Ma'mūn, Ṭāhir Dhū-l-Yamīnayn, on being appointed Viceroy of the East in 819 (*204*), became to most intents independent; and his house, and the succeeding dynasties of the Ṣaffārids, Sāmânids, and Ghaznawids, whilst admitting the spiritual lordship of the Caliphs, reserved to themselves all the power and wealth of the eastern provinces of Persia and Transoxiana. From the middle of the ninth century the 'Abbāsids had fallen more and more under the baneful influence of mercenary Turkish bodyguards and servile *maires du palais*; and the absorption of the whole of their remaining territory by the Buwayhids, who occupied even the 'City of Peace,' Baghdād itself, in 945 (*334*), was little more than a change in their alien tyrants. From this date the Caliphs merely held a court, but governed no empire, until their extinction by the Mongols in 1258 (*656*). Occasionally, however, as in the Caliphate of -Nāṣir, they

extended their authority outside the palace walls, and even ruled the whole province of Arabian -'Irāḳ (Chaldaea).

In classifying the dynasties which thus absorbed the 'Abbāsid empire, a geographical system is both natural and convenient. Beginning with the earliest secession, Spain, the dynasties of Andalusia and North Africa are placed first; those of Egypt and Syria come next; then follow the Persian and Transoxine dynasties; whilst those of India, which spread over a dominion never subdued to the Caliphate, are placed last. In dealing with the Persian and Syrian sections, however, the geographical arrangement is necessarily modified, since the wide sweep of the Seljūḳs and Mongols temporarily obliterated the older divisions and formed fresh starting points in the dynastic history. The relative positions, both geographical and chronological, of the various dynasties are shown in the table prefixed to the volume.

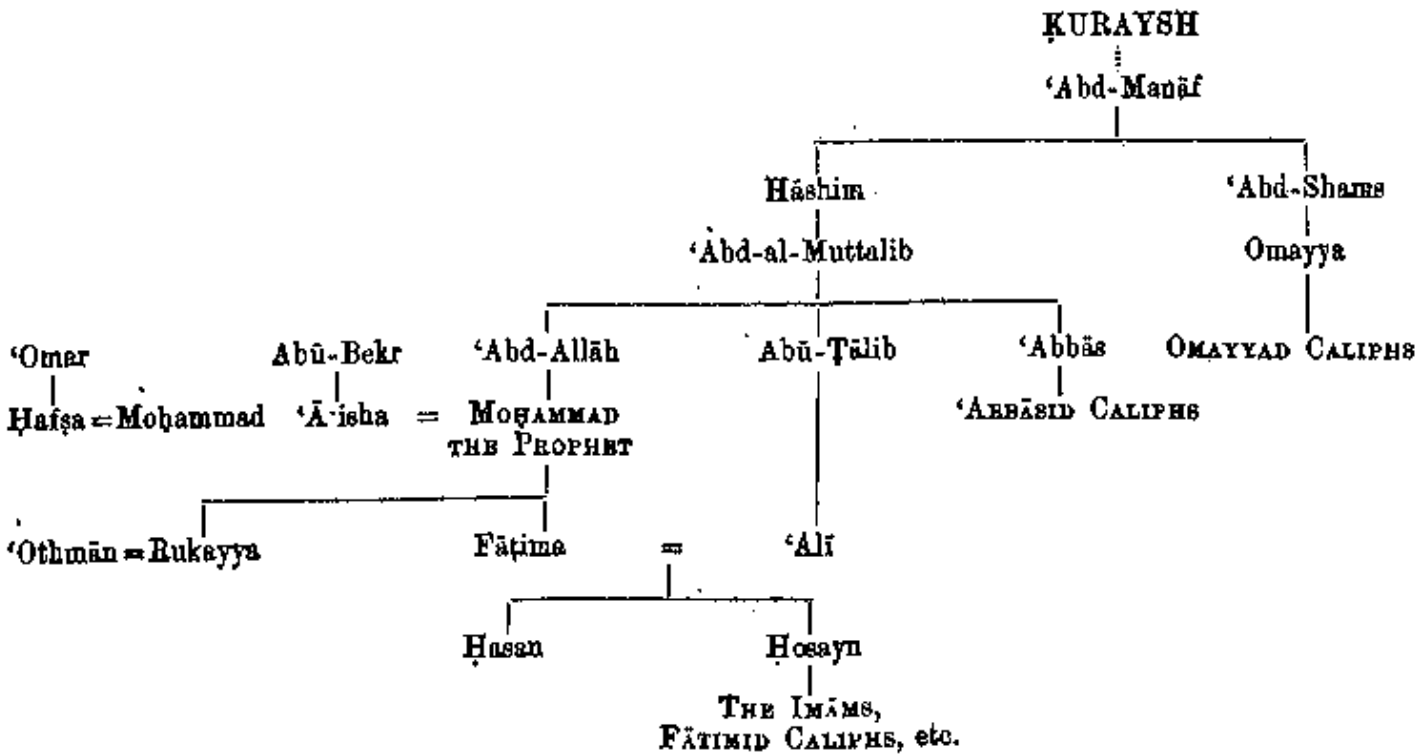
A.H.		A.D.
11—40	**1. ORTHODOX CALIPHS**	632—661
11	Abū-Bakr	632
13	'Omar	634
23	'Othmān	644
35	'Alī	656
—40		—661

[*Succeeded by Omayyads.*]

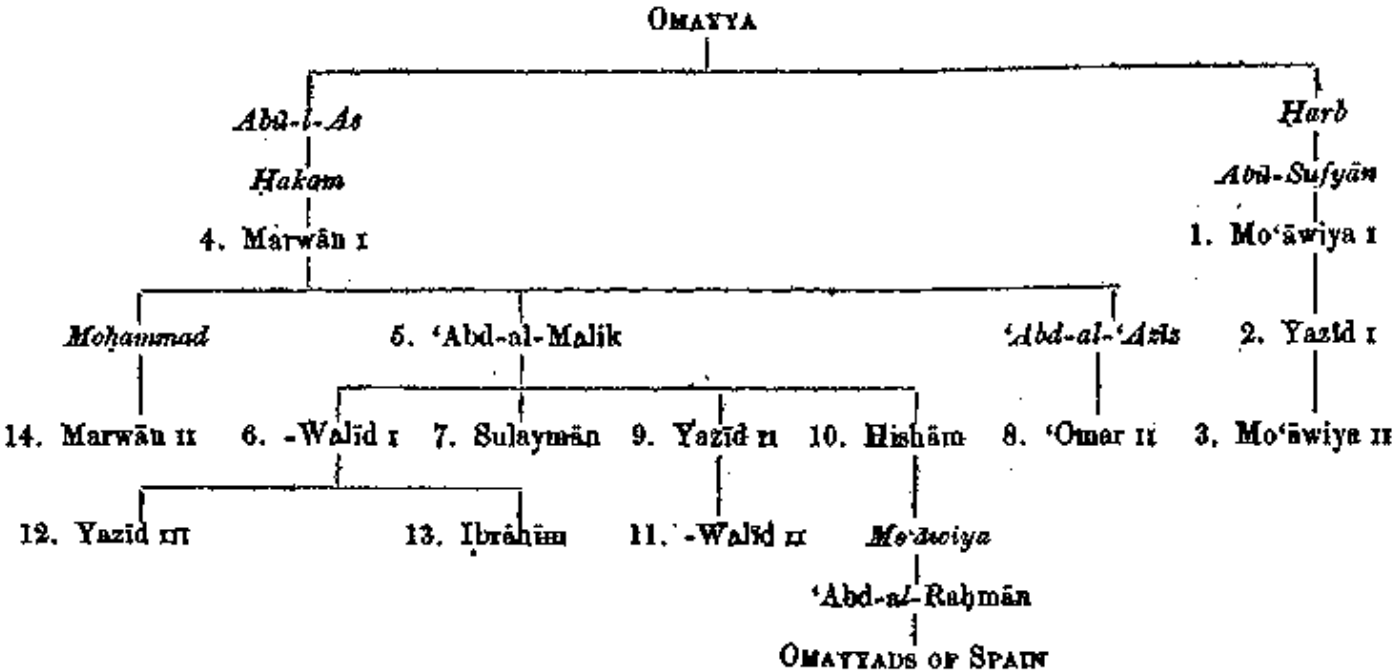
A.H.		A.H.
41—132	**2. OMAYYAD CALIPHS**	661—750
41	Mo'āwiya I	661
60	Yazīd I	680
64	Mo'āwiya II	683
64	Marwān I	683
65	'Abd-al-Malik	685
86	Walīd	705
96	Sulaymān	715
99	'Omar	717
101	Yazīd II	720
105	Hishām	724
125	Walīd II	743
126	Yazīd III	744
126	Ibrāhīm	744
127	Marwān II	744
—132		—750

['*Abbāsids*; *Omayyads of Cordova*]

CONNEXION OF THE LINES OF CALIPHS



OMAYYAD CALIPHS

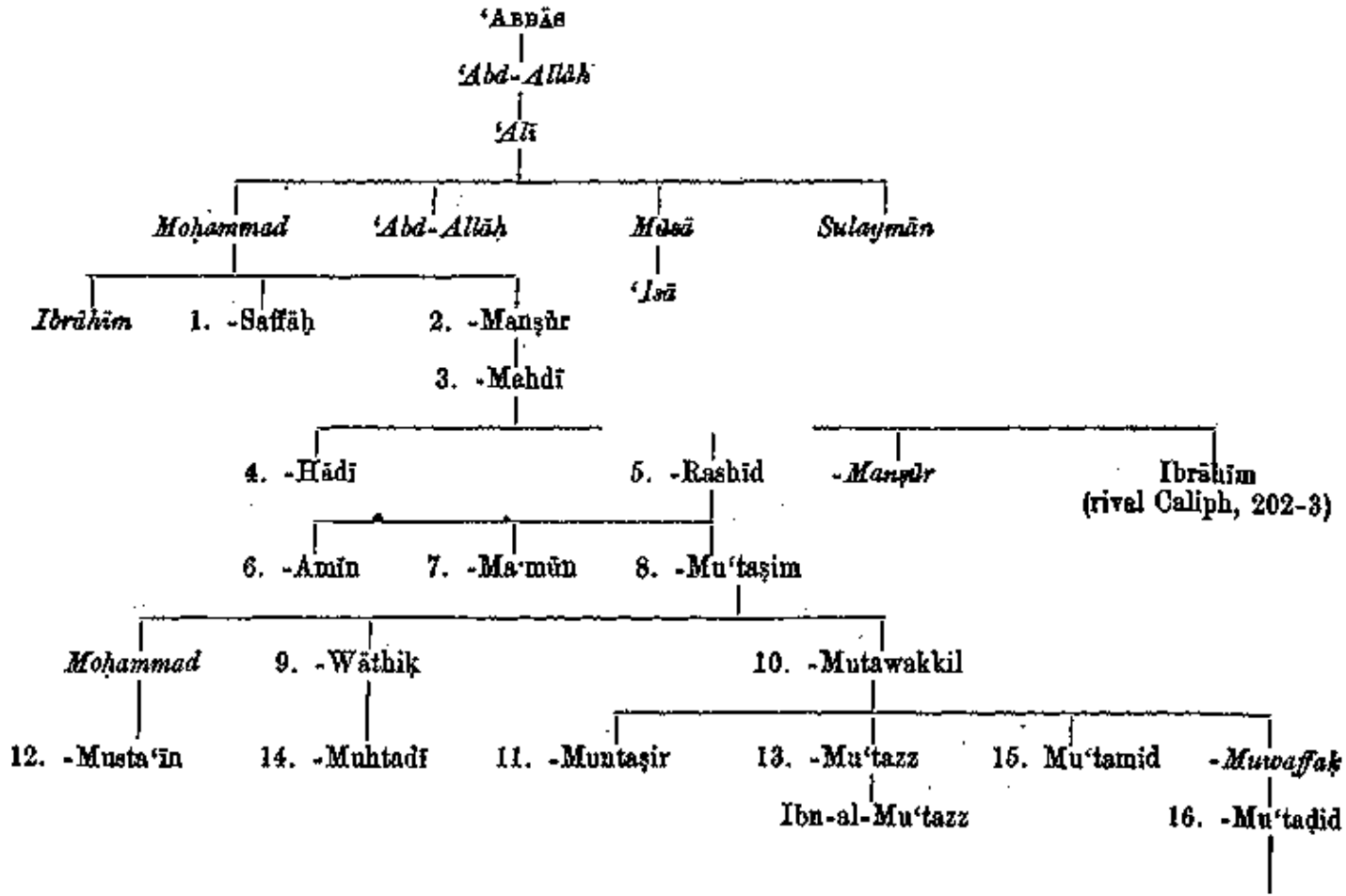


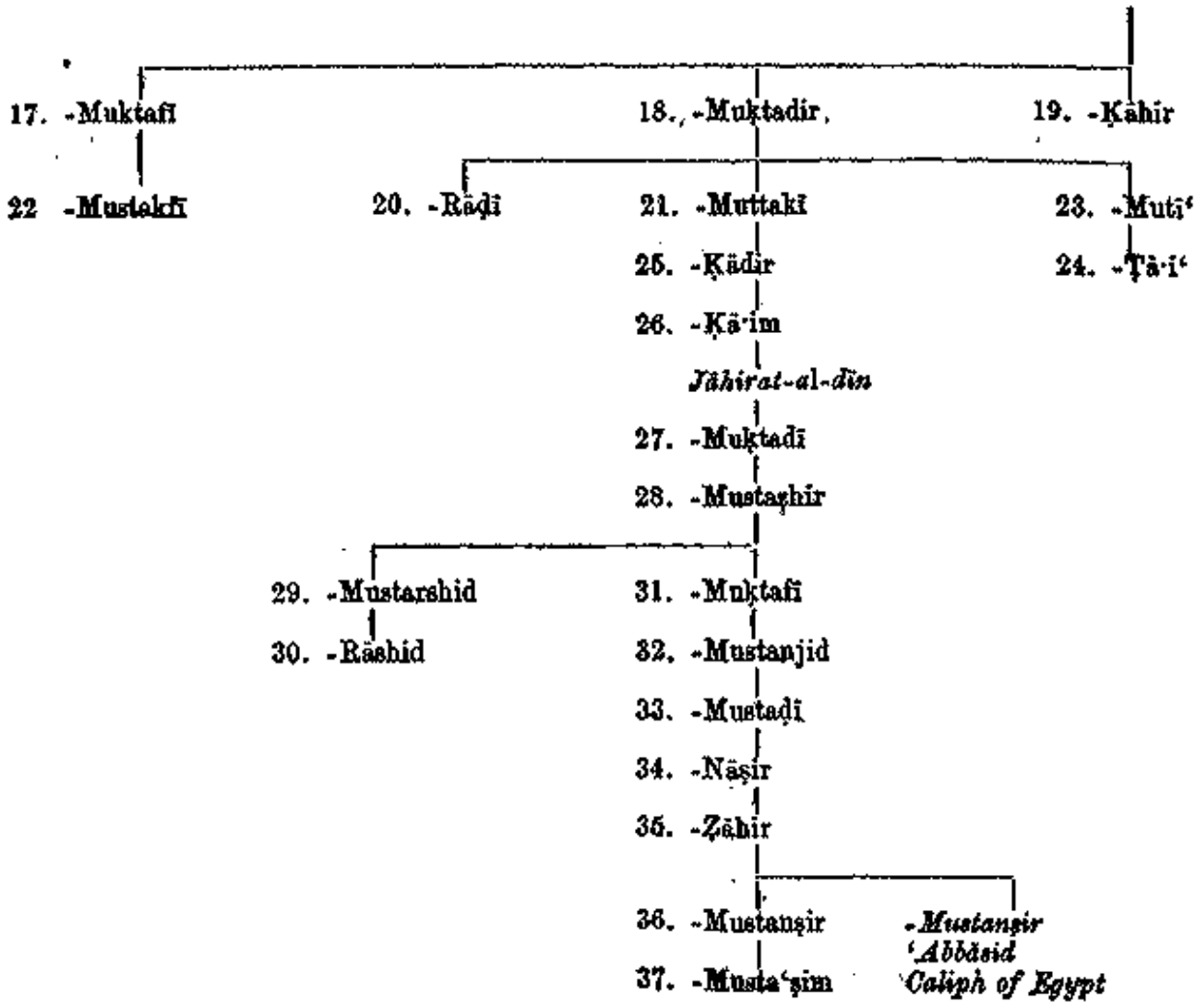
A.H.		A.D.
132—656	3. 'ABBĀSID CALIPHS	750—1258
132	-Saffāḥ	750
136	-Manṣūr	754
158	-Mahdī	775
169	-Hādī	785
170	-Rashīd	786
193	-Amīn	809
198	-Ma'mūn	813
218	-Mu'taṣim	833
227	-Wāthiḳ	842
232	-Mutawakkil	847
247	-Muntaṣir	861
248	-Musta'īn	862
251	-Mu'tazz	866
255	-Muhtadī	869
256	-Mu'tamid	870
279	-Mu'tadid	892
289	-Muḳtafī	902
295	-Muḳtadir	908
320	-Kāhir	932
322	-Rāḍī	934
329	-Muttaḳī	940
333	-Mustakfī	944
334	-Muṭī'	946
363	-Ṭā'i'	974
381	-Ḳādir	991
422	-Ḳā'im	1031
467	-Muḳtadī	1075
487	-Mustaẓhir	1094
512	-Mustarshid	1118
529	-Rāshid	1135

530	-Muḳtafī	1136
555	-Mustanjid	1160
566	-Mustaḍī	1170
575	-Nāṣir	1180
622	-Ẓāhir	1225
623	-Mustanṣir	1226
640	-Musta'ṣim	1242
—656		—1258

[*Idrīsids, Aghlabids, Ṭūlūnids, Ṭāhirids, Ṣaffārids, Buwayhids, Ḥamdānids, Ghaznawids.*]

'ABBĀSID CALIPHS




17. -Muktafī
18. -Muḳtadir
19. -Ḳāhir
22 -Mustekfī
20. -Rāḍī
21. -Muttakī
23. -Muṭī'
25. -Ḳādir
24. -Ṭā-i'
26. -Ḳā'im
Ẓāhirat-al-dīn
27. -Muḳtadī
28. -Mustaẓhir
29. -Mustarshid
31. -Muḳtafī
30. -Rāshid
32. -Mustanjid
33. -Mustaḍī
34. -Nāṣir
35. -Ẓāhir
36. -Mustanṣir
-Mustanṣir
'Abbāsid
Caliph of Egypt
37. -Musta'ṣim

II. SPAIN

SÆC. VIII—XV

4. OMAYYADS OF CORDOVA

MINOR DYNASTIES

5. ḤAMMŪDIDS (MALAGA)

6. ḤAMMŪDIDS (ALGECIRAS)

7. ʿABBĀDIDS (SEVILLE)

8. ZAYRIDS (GRANADA)

9. JAHWARIDS (CORDOVA)

10. DHU-L-NŪNIDS (TOLEDO)

11. ʿĀMIRIDS (VALENCIA)

12. TOJIBIDS AND HŪDIDS (ZARAGOZA)

13. KINGS OF DENIA

ALMORAVIDES (*See NORTH AFRICA*)

ALMOHADES " " "

14. NAṢRIDS (GRANADA)

II. SPAIN

SÆC. VIII—XV

Spain was conquered by the Muslims in 710–13 (*91–5*), and ruled, like the other provinces of the Moḥammadan empire, by a series of governors appointed by the Omayyad Caliphs, until 756 (*138*). Among the few members of the Omayyad family who escaped from the general massacre which signalized the accession of the 'Abbāsids was 'Abd-al-Raḥmān, a grandson of Hishām, the tenth Omayyad Caliph. After some years of wandering, he took advantage of the disordered state of Spain, which was divided by the jealousies of the Berbers and the various Arab tribes, to offer himself as king. He met with an encouraging response, and landed in Andulasia at the close of 755. In the following year (*138*) he received the homage of most of Moḥammadan Spain, and successfully repelled an invasion of 'Abbāsid troops. His successors maintained themselves on the throne of Cordova with varying success against the encroachments of the Christians of the north, and the insurrections of the many factions among their own

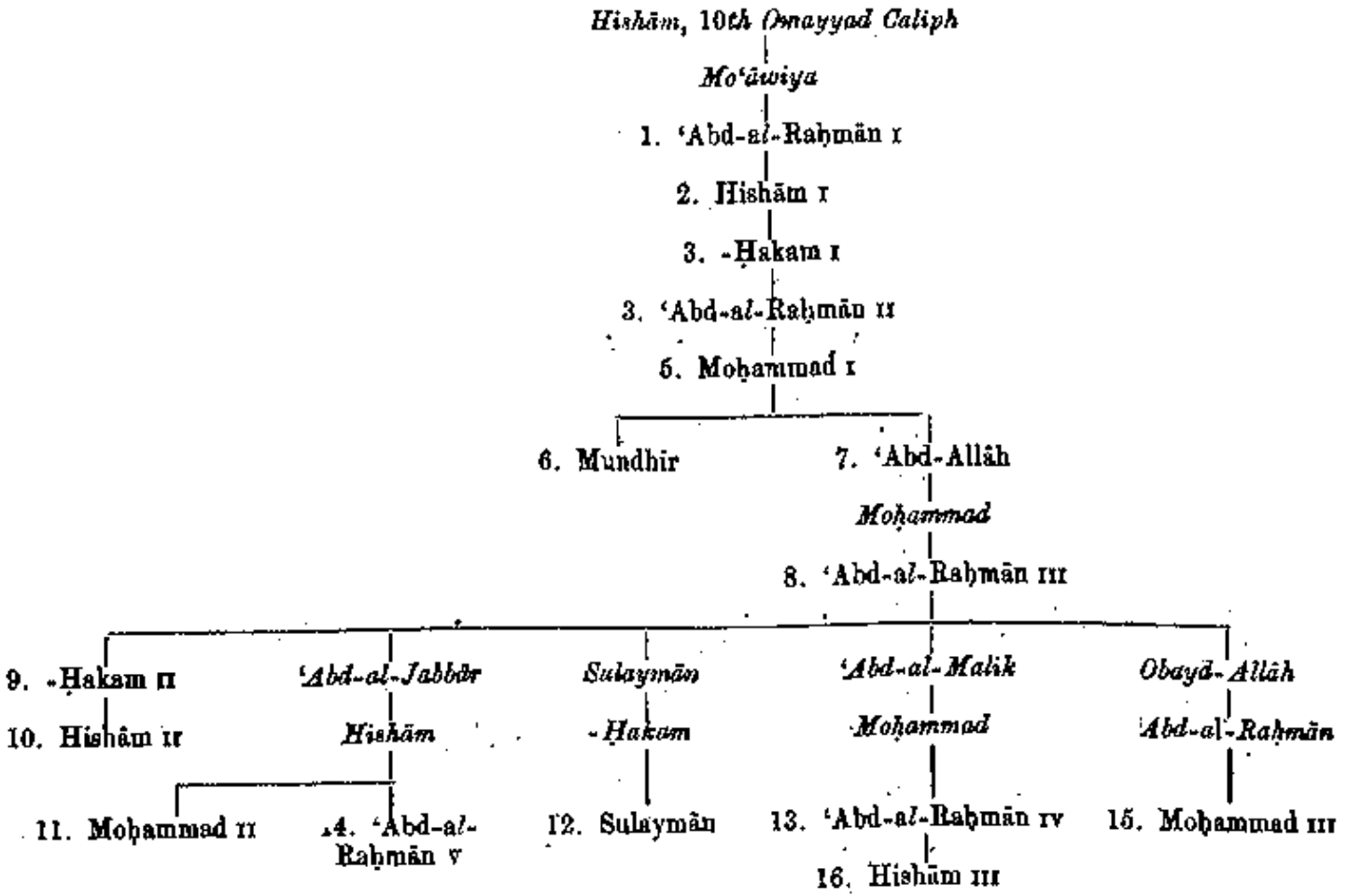
subjects, for two centuries and a half. They contented themselves with the titles of Amīr and Sulṭān, until 'Abd-al-Raḥmān III adopted that of Caliph in 929 (*317*). He was the greatest of the line, and not only exercised absolute sway over his subjects and kept the Christian kings of Leon, Castile and Navarre in check, but warded off the chief danger of Moorish Spain, invasion from Africa, and maintained his authority on the Mediterranean by powerful fleets. After his death, no great Omayyad carried on his work, but the famous minister and general, Almanzor (Al-Manṣūr), preserved the unity of the kingdom. After this, at the beginning of the eleventh century, Moorish Spain became a prey to factions and adventurers, and a number of petty dynasties arose, who are known in Spanish history as the *Reyes de Taifas* or Party Kings. Most of these were absorbed by the most distinguished of their number, the cultured house of the 'Abbādids of Seville, who were the leaders of the Spanish Moors against the encroachments of the Christians, until they were forced to summon the *Almoravides* to their aid, and discovered that they had invited a master instead of an ally.

A.H.		A.D.
138—422	**4. OMAYYADS OF CORDOVA**	756—1031
138	ʿAbd-al-Raḥmān I	756
172	Hishām I	788
180	-Ḥakam I	796
206	ʿAbd-al-Raḥmān II	822
238	Moḥammad I	852
273	-Mundhir	886
275	ʿAbd-Allāh	888
300	ʿAbd-al-Raḥmān III. (Al-Khalīfa Al-Nāṣir)	912
350	-Ḥakam II -Mustanṣir	961
366	Hishām II -Muʾayyad	976
399	Moḥammad II -Mahdī	1009
400	Sulaymān -Mustaʿīn	1009
400	Moḥammad II (again)	1010
400	Hishām II (again)	1010
403	Sulaymān (again)	1013
407	*ʿAlī b. Ḥammūd* *	1016
408	ʿAbd-al-Raḥmān IV -Murtaḍā	1018
408	*-Ḳāsim b. Ḥammūd*	1018
412	*Yaḥyā b. ʿAlī*	1021
413	*-Ḳāsim* (again)	1022
414	ʿAbd-al-Raḥmān V -Mustaẓhir	1023
414	Moḥammad III -Mustakfī	1024
416	*Yaḥyā* (again)	1025
418	Hishām III -Muʿtadd	1027
—422		—1031

[*Minor Dynasties*]

* Of the dynasty of Ḥammūdids. See Table 5.

OMAYYADS OF CORDOVA



MINOR SPANISH DYNASTIES *

(REYES DE TAIFAS)

A.H.		A.D.
407—449	5. HAMMŪDIDS †	1016—1057
	(MALAGA)	
407	ʿAlī -Nāṣir	1016
408	-Ḳāsim -Maʾmūn	1018
412	Yaḥyā Muʿtalī	1021
413	-Ḳāsim (again)	1022
416	Yaḥyā (again)	1025
427	Idrīs I -Mutaʿayyad	1035
431	Ḥasan -Mustanṣir	1039
434	Idrīs II -ʿĀlī	1042
438	Moḥammad I -Mahdī	1046
444	Idrīs III -Muwaffaḳ	1052
445	Idrīs II (again)	1053
446	Moḥammad II -Mustaʿlī	1054—
—449		1057
	[*Almoravides*]	

* In the tables and trees of these dynasties Codera's *Tratado de Numismática Arábigo-Española* (1879) has been generally followed: which see for lists of various petty rulers here omitted.

† The Hammūdids took the title of Caliph or 'Prince of the Faithful.'

ḤAMMŪDIDS

ḤAMMŪD
OF MALAGA
1. ʿAlī
2. al-Ḳāsim
Mohammad
of Algeciras
al-Ḳāsim
of Algeciras
3. Yaḥyā
4. Idrīs I
7. Moḥammad I
5. Ḥasan
6. Idrīs II
8. Idrīs II
9. Moḥammad II

A.H.		A.D.
431—450	6. ḤAMMŪDIDS (ALGECIRAS)	1039—1058
431	Moḥammad -Mahdī	1039
440	-Ḳāsim -Wāthiḳ	1048
—450		—1058
	[*'Abbādids of Seville*]	
414—484	7. 'ABBĀDIDS (SEVILLE)	1023—1091
414	Abū-l-Ḳāsim Moḥammad I. b. Ismā'īl	1023
434	Abū-'Amr 'Abbād -Mu'taḍid b. Moḥammad I	1042
461—	Abū-l-Ḳāsim Moḥammad II -Mu'tamid b. 'Abbād	1068—
484		1091
	[*Almoravides*]	
403—483	8. ZAYRĪDS (GRANADA)	1012—1090
403	Zāwī b. Zayrī	1012
410	Ḥabbūs	1019
430	Bādīs b. Ḥabbūs -Muẓaffar -Nāṣir	1038
466	'Abd-Allāh b. Sayf-al-dawla Bulukkīn b. Bādīs	1073
483	Tamīm b. Bulukkīn	1090
	[*Almoravides*]	
422—461	9. JAHWARIDS (CORDOVA)	1031—1068
422	Abū-l-Ḥazam Jahwar	1031
435	Abū-l-Walīd Moḥammad b. Jahwar	1043
450—	'Abd-al-Malik b. Moḥammad	1058—
461		1068
	[*'Abbādids of Seville*]	
427—478	10. DHU-L-NŪNIDS (TOLEDO)	
427	Ismā'īl -Ẓāfir	1035
429	Yaḥyā -Ma'mūn b. Ismā'īl	1037
467—	Yaḥyā -Ḳādir b. Ismā'īl b.-Ma'mūn	1074—
478		1085
	[*Alfonso VI of Leon*]	

A.H.		A.D.
412—478	11. ʿĀMIRIDS (VALENCIA)	1021—1085
412	ʿAbd-al-ʿAzīz -Manṣūr	1021
453	ʿAbd-al-Malik -Muẓaffar	1061
457	-*Maʾmūn of Toledo*	1065
467	-*Ḳādir* ,, ,,	1074
468	Abū-Bakr b. ʿAbd-al-Malik	1075
478	-Ḳāḍī ʿOthmān b. Abū-Bakr	1085
,,	-*Ḳādir of Toledo*	,,

[*Christians* (the *Cid*): then *Almoravides*]

410—536	12. TOJIBIDS & HŪDIDS (ZARAGOZA)	1019—1141
410	Mundhir -Manṣūr b. Yaḥyā -Tojībī	1019
414	Yaḥyā -Muẓaffar b. Mundhir	1023
420	Mundhir b. Yaḥyā	1029
431	Sulaymān -Mustaʿīn b. Hūd	1039
438	Aḥmad Sayf-*al*-dawla -Muḳtadir b. Sulaymān	1046
474	Yūsuf -Muʿtamen b. Aḥmad	1081
478	Aḥmad -Mustaʿīn b. Yūsuf	1085
503	ʿAbd-al-Malik ʿImād-*al*-dawla b. Aḥmad	1109
513—536	Aḥmad Sayf-*al*-dawla b. ʿAbd-al-Malik	1119—1141

[*Christians*]

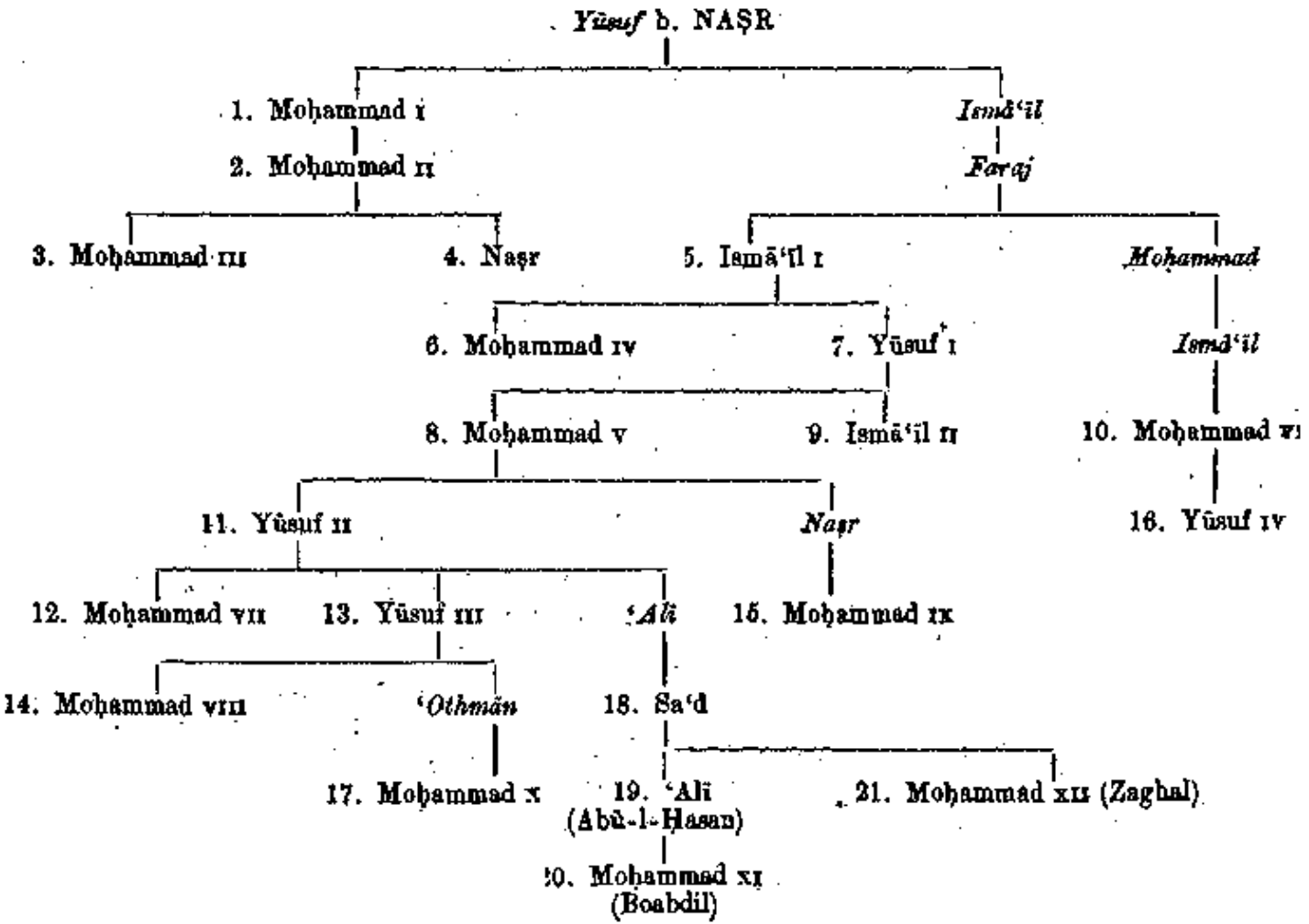
408—468	13. KINGS OF DENIA	1017—1075
408	Mujāhid b. Yūsuf	1017
436—468	ʿAlī Iḳbāl-*al*-dawla b. Mujāhid	1044—1075

[*Hūdids of Zaragoza*]

In 1086 the *Almoravides* came to Spain, summoned by the 'Abbādids to help them against Alfonso of Leon. In 1090 they came again, and this time they conquered the whole of Moorish Spain, and made it a province of their African empire (see Table 19). Their successors in Africa, the *Almohades*, similarly annexed the Spanish province in 1145–50 (see Table 20). A few petty dynasties sprang up at Valencia and Murcia between these two invasions, and during the decline of the Almohades' power; but the only important line was that of the Nasrids or Banū-Naṣr of Granada, whose cultivated Court and beautiful palace, Alhambra, for a time revived the splendour and distinction of Moorish Spain as it had been in the days of the great Caliph 'Abd-*al*-Raḥmān III. Their long struggle against the advancing Christians, however, ended in the fall of Granada before the assaults of Ferdinand and Isabella in 1492, and with the flight of Boabdil the last remnant of Mohammadan rule vanished from the Peninsula.

A.H.		A.D.
629—897	**14. NAṢRIDS**	1232—1492
	(GRANADA)	
629	Moḥammad I -Ghālib	1232
671	Moḥammad II -Faḳīh	1273
701	Moḥammad III	1302
708	Naṣr Abū-l-Juyūsh	1309
713	Ismā'īl I Abū-l-Walīd	1314
725	Moḥammad IV	1325
733	Yūsuf Abū-l-Ḥajjāj	1333
755	Moḥammad V -Ghānī	1354
760	Ismā'īl II	1359
761	Moḥammad VI Abū-Sa'īd	1360
763	Moḥammad V (again)	1362
793	Yūsuf II	1391
794	Moḥammad VII	1392
810	Yūsuf III Abū-l-Ḥajjāj -Nāṣir	1407
820	Moḥammad VIII -Mutamaṣṣik	1417
831	Moḥammad IX -Ṣaghīr	1427
833	Moḥammad VIII (again)	1429
835	Yūsuf IV	1432
835	Moḥammad VIII (third time)	1432
848	Moḥammad X	1444
849	Sa'd -Musta'īn	1445
850	Moḥammad X (again)	1446
857	Sa'd (again)	1453
866	'Alī Abū-l-Ḥasan	1461
887	Moḥammad XI (Boabdil)	1482
888	'Alī Abū-l-Ḥasan (again)	1483
890	Moḥammad XII (Zaghal)	1485
892	Moḥammad XI (Boabdil, again)	1486
—897		—1492

[*Ferdinand and Isabella of Castile*]


NAṢRIDS OF GRANADA
Yūsuf b. NAṢR
1. Moḥammad I
Ismā'īl
2. Moḥammad II
Faraj
3. Moḥammad III
4. Naṣr
5. Ismā'īl I
Moḥammad
6. Moḥammad IV
7. Yūsuf I
Ismā'īl
8. Moḥammad V
9. Ismā'īl II
10. Moḥammad VI
11. Yūsuf II
Naṣr
16. Yūsuf IV
12. Moḥammad VII
13. Yūsuf III
'Alī
15. Moḥammad IX
14. Moḥammad VIII
'Othmān
18. Sa'd
17. Moḥammad X
19. 'Alī (Abū-l-Ḥasan)
21. Moḥammad XII (Zaghal)
20. Moḥammad XI (Boabdil)

III. NORTH AFRICA

SÆC. VIII—XIX

15. IDRĪSIDS (MOROCCO)

16. AGHLABIDS (TUNIS, ETC.)

FĀṬIMIDS (*See EGYPT*)

17. ZAYRIDS (TUNIS)

18. ḤAMMĀDIDS (ALGIERS)

19. ALMORAVIDES (MOROCCO, ALGIERS, SPAIN)

20. ALMOHADES (NORTH AFRICA, SPAIN)

21. MARĪNIDS (MOROCCO)

22. ZIYĀNIDS (ALGIERS)

23. ḤAFṢIDS (TUNIS)

24. SHARĪFS (MOROCCO)

III. NORTH AFRICA

SÆC. VIII—XIX

The narrow strip of habitable land between the great African desert and the Mediterranean Sea was always the nursery of schismatics. The superstitious and credulous Berbers offered a favourable soil for the germination of all varieties of Mohammadan heresy. Any prophet who found himself without honour in his own country had only to go to the Berbers of North Africa to be sure of a welcome and an enthusiastic following; whilst the distance from the centre of the Caliphate and the natural turbulence and warlike character of the population predisposed the 'Abbāsids to ignore the disloyalty of provinces which profited them little and cost them ceaseless energy and expense to control. Hence the success of such strange developments of Islām as the Almoravides and Almohades, the establishment of 'Alid dynasties such as the Idrīsids and Fāṭimids, and in our own time the widespread authority of the Prophet Sanūsī.

North Africa had been subdued by the Arabs with difficulty between the years 647 (*26*) and 700, and had since been ruled with varying success by the lieutenants of the Caliphs. So long as Yazīd b. Ḥātim, the popular and energetic governor of Ḳayrawān for the 'Abbāsids, lived, the tendency of the Berbers to foster rebellion and schism was held in check, but on his death in 787 (*170*) North Africa became a prey to anarchy, which was only suppressed by allowing the local dynasties, which then sprang up, to exercise independent authority. After the year 800 the 'Abbāsid Caliphs had no influence whatever west of the frontier of Egypt.

A.H.		A.D.
172—375	15. IDRĪSIDS (MOROCCO)	788—985

In the year 785 (*168*) an insurrection of the partisans of the family of ʿAlī took place at -Medīna. Among those who took part in it was Idrīs b. ʿAbd-Allāh b. Ḥasan b. Ḥasan b. ʿAlī b. Abū-Ṭālib. On the suppression of the revolt Idrīs fled to Egypt, and thence to Morocco where he founded an ʿAlid dynasty in the region about Ceuta. His coins bear the names of the towns of Tudgha and -Walīla. The Idrīsid dominions reached their greatest extent about 860, and gradually dwindled until the extinction of the dynasty in 985 (*375*). Some of the dates are not recorded by Ibn-Khaldūn.

172	Idrīs I	788
177	Idrīs II b. Idrīs I [illegible]	793
213	Moḥammad b. Idrīs II	828
221	ʿAlī I b. Moḥammad	836
234	Yaḥyā I b. Moḥammad	849
	Yaḥyā II b. Yaḥyā	
	ʿAlī II b. ʿOmar b. Idrīs II	
	Yaḥyā III b. -Ḳāsim b. Idrīs II	
292	Yaḥyā IV b. Idrīs b. ʿOmar	904
310	-Ḥasan	922

[*Miknāsa Berbers*]

A.H. A.D.

184—296 16. AGHLABIDS 800—909

(TUNIS, ETC.)

Ibrāhīm b. -Aghlab was governor of the province of Zāb for the Caliph at the time of confusion which followed upon the death of Yazīd the 'Abbāsid governor-general of 'Africa' (Afrīḳiya, *i.e.* Tunis) in 787 (*170*), and was appointed to the government of the whole African province by the Caliph Hārūn -Rashīd in 800 (*184*); but did not interfere with the authority of the Idrīsids in the far west. His dynasty was practically independent, and the Aghlabids seldom troubled to put the Caliphs' names on their coins in token even of spiritual suzerainty. They were not only enlightened and energetic rulers on land, but employed large fleets on the Mediterranean, harried the coasts of Italy, France, Corsica, and Sardinia, and conquered Sicily in 827–78; which island remained in Moḥammadan hands until the conquest by the Normans. The Aghlabid domination in Africa when at its best was indeed the period of the greatest ascendancy of the Arabs in the Mediterranean: their

corsairs were the terror of the seas, and besides Sicily they took Malta and Sardinia, and even invaded the suburbs of Rome. The incapacity of the later Aghlabid princes, however, and the growth of sectarian disaffection under the fostering influence of the Shī'ite Idrīsids in the west, paved the way for the Fāṭimid triumph in 909 (*296*).

184	Ibrāhīm I	800
196	'Abd-Allāh I	811
201	Ziyādat-Allāh I	816
223	Abū-'Aḳāl -Aghlab	837
226	Moḥammad I	840
242	Aḥmad	856
249	Ziyādat-Allāh II	863
250	Moḥammad II	864
261	Ibrāhīm II	874
289	'Abd-Allāh II.	902
290	Ziyādat-Allāh III	903
—296		—909

[*Fāṭimids*]

AGHLABIDS

-Aghlab
1. Ibrāhīm
2. 'Abd-Allāh I
3. Ziyādat-Allāh I
4. -Aghlab
5. Mohammad
6. Aḥmad
7. Ziyādat-Allāh II
8. Mohammad II
9. Ibrāhīm II
10. 'Abd-Allāh II
11. Ziyādat-Allāh III

The Aghlabids were succeeded by the *Fāṭimids*, who, however, belong more particularly to the series of Egyptian Dynasties (see Table 27). Their empire, which at one time included the whole north African coast from Egypt to the Atlantic, together with Sicily and Sardinia, became split up into various kingdoms as soon as their removal of their seat of government to Cairo in 972 (*362*) weakened their control of the more western provinces. Their lieutenant over Africa, Yūsuf Bulukkīn, chief of the Sanhaja Berbers, soon declared himself independent and founded the dynasty of the *Zayrids*, whilst another dynasty, the *Ḥammādids*, established themselves at Bougie (Bujāya) in Algeria and restricted the Zayrids' authority to little more than the province of Tunis. Further west in Morocco various tribes of Berbers, Miknasa, Maghrawa, etc., acquired independence, and occupied the site of the Idrīsids' kingdom, but hardly attained to the dignity of dynasties. These were in turn subdued by the *Almoravides*, who also took a large part of the territory of the Ḥammādids of Algeria; but it was reserved for the *Almohades* to reign in the capitals of Ḥammād and Zayrī.

A.H.		A.D.
362—543	**17. ZAYRIDS**	972—1148
	(TUNIS)	
362	Yūsuf Bulukkīn b. Zayrī . . .	972
373	Manṣūr b. Yūsuf	983
386	Bādīs b. Manṣūr	996
406	-Mu'izz b. Bādīs	1015
453	Tamīm b. -Mu'izz	1061
501	Yaḥyā b. Tamīm	1107
509	'Alī b. Yaḥyā	1115
515	-Ḥasan b. 'Alī	1121
—543		—1148

[*Roger of Sicily; then Almohades*]

398—547	**HAMMĀDIDS**	1007—1152
	(ALGERIA)	
398	Ḥammād	1007
419	-Ḳāïd b. Ḥammad	1028
446	Muḥassin b. -Ḳāïd	1054
447	Bulukkīn b. Moḥammad b. Ḥammād .	1055
454?	-Nāṣir b. 'Alnās b. Moḥammad . .	1062?
481	-Manṣūr b. -Nāṣir	1088
498	Bādīs	1104
500	-'Azīz	1106
?	Yaḥyā b. -'Azīz	——
—547		—1152

Almohades]

A.H. A.D.

448—541 19. ALMORAVIDES (-MURÂBITS) 1056—1147

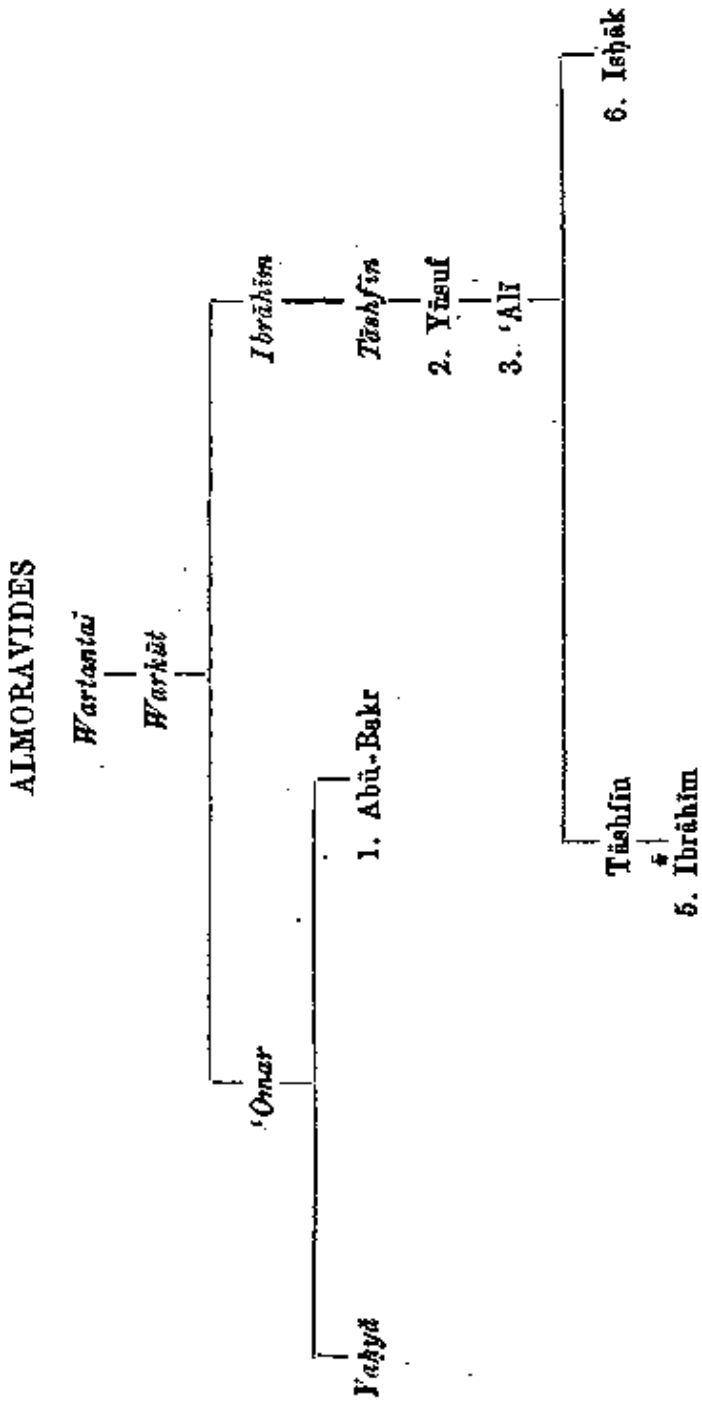
(MOROCCO, PART OF ALGERIA, SPAIN)

In the middle of the eleventh century the successes of the Christians in Spain, the energy of the Genoese and Pisans in recovering for Christendom the islands of Corsica and Sardinia, and the valour of the Normans in Southern Italy, had thoroughly humbled the power of the Muslims in the Mediterranean. The Fāṭimids of Egypt alone maintained the ancient prestige of the Saracens. The Zayrids of Tunis were incapable even of repressing the frequent revolts which disturbed their restricted dominion; and the rivalry between Zayrids, Ḥammādids, and Fāṭimids prevented any collective action against the Christians. It was time for a Moḥammadan revival, and among a people so easily excited to religious exaltation as the Berbers a revival was always possible if a prophet could be found. The prophet appeared among the tribe of Lamtuna in the person of 'Abd-Allāh b. Tāshfīn. This man preached a holy war for the glory of Islām, and the Berbers were not slow to follow him. His adherents called themselves *Al-Murābiṭīn*, which means literally 'pickets who have hobbled their horses on the enemy's frontier,' and hence 'Protagonists for the Faith.'

The Spaniards corrupted the name into Almoravides, and the French *marabout*, or devotee, is another perversion of it. The Almoravides acknowledged the supremacy of the 'Abbāsid Caliphs. The Lamtuna Berbers under 'Abd-Allāh were joined by the great clan of the Masmuda, and led by Abū-Bakr and his second cousin Yūsuf b. Tāshfīn, reduced Sijilmāsa and Aghmāt by 1068 (*460*), founded the city of Morocco (Marrākush), and in the course of the next fifteen years spread over Fez, Mequinez (Miknasa), Ceuta (Sabta), Tangier (Ṭanja), Salee, and the west of Morocco. In 1086 Yūsuf b. Tāshfīn, whose great qualities both as general and as administrator had secured the devotion of the Protagonists, was entreated by the 'Abbādids of Spain to come over and help them against the assaults of Alfonso VI. and Sancho of Aragon and the invincible valour of the Cid Campeador Rodrigo Diaz de Bivar. Yūsuf utterly crushed the Castilian army at the battle of Zallāka, or, as the Spaniards call it, Sacralias, near Badajoz, October 23, 1086; but he did not follow up his victory. Leaving 3000 Berbers to support the Andalusians he returned to Africa. But in 1090 the King of Seville again prayed him to come and help him against the Christians, and this time Yūsuf annexed the whole of Moorish Spain, with the exception of

Toledo, which remained in the possession of the Christians, and Zaragosa, where the Hūdids were suffered to subsist. The success of the Almoravides, however, was fleeting. Their hardy warriors soon became enervated in soft Andalusia, and offered no adequate resistance to the steady advance of the Christians. They made no attempt to recover the command of the Mediterranean, and were content to leave the Ḥammādids and Zayrids in possession of most of Algeria, Tunis, and Tripoli. The Almoravide dynasty had lasted less than a century when the fanatical rush of the *Almohades* swept over the whole of north Africa and southern Spain, and left no rival house standing.

A.H.		A.D.
448	Abū-Bakr	1056
480	Yūsuf	1087
500	ʿAlī	1106
537	Tāshfīn	1143
541	Ibrāhīm	1146
541	Isḥāḳ	1147


ALMORAVIDES
Wartantāī
Warkāt
Ibrāhīm
Tāshfīn
2. Yūsuf
3. ʿAlī
6. Isḥāk
1. Abū-Bakr
ʿOmar
Yaḥyā
Tāshfīn
5. Ibrāhīm

A.H. A.D.
524—667 20. ALMOHADES (-MUWAḤḤIDS) 1130—1269
(ALL NORTH AFRICA)

The Muwaḥḥids (in Spanish, Almohades) or Unitarians were so called because their doctrine was a protest against the realistic anthropomorphism of orthodox Islām. Their prophet Abū-'Abd-Allāh Moḥammad b. Tūmart, a Berber of the Masmuda tribe, began to preach the doctrine of the Unity of God (*-Tawḥīd*) and took the symbolic title of the Mahdī, at the beginning of the 12th century. Dying in 1128 (*522*) he left the command of the Unitarians to his friend and general 'Abd-al-Mu'min, who formally accepted the chief authority over the Masmuda Muwaḥḥids in 1130. In 1140 (*534*) 'Abd-al-Mu'min began a long career of conquest. He annihilated the army of the Almoravides in 1144, captured Oran, Tilimsān, Fez, Ceuta, Aghmāt, and Salee in two years, and by the successful siege of Morocco in 1146 (*541*) put an end to the Almoravide dynasty. Meanwhile he had sent an army into Spain (1145) and in the course of five years reduced the whole Moorish part of

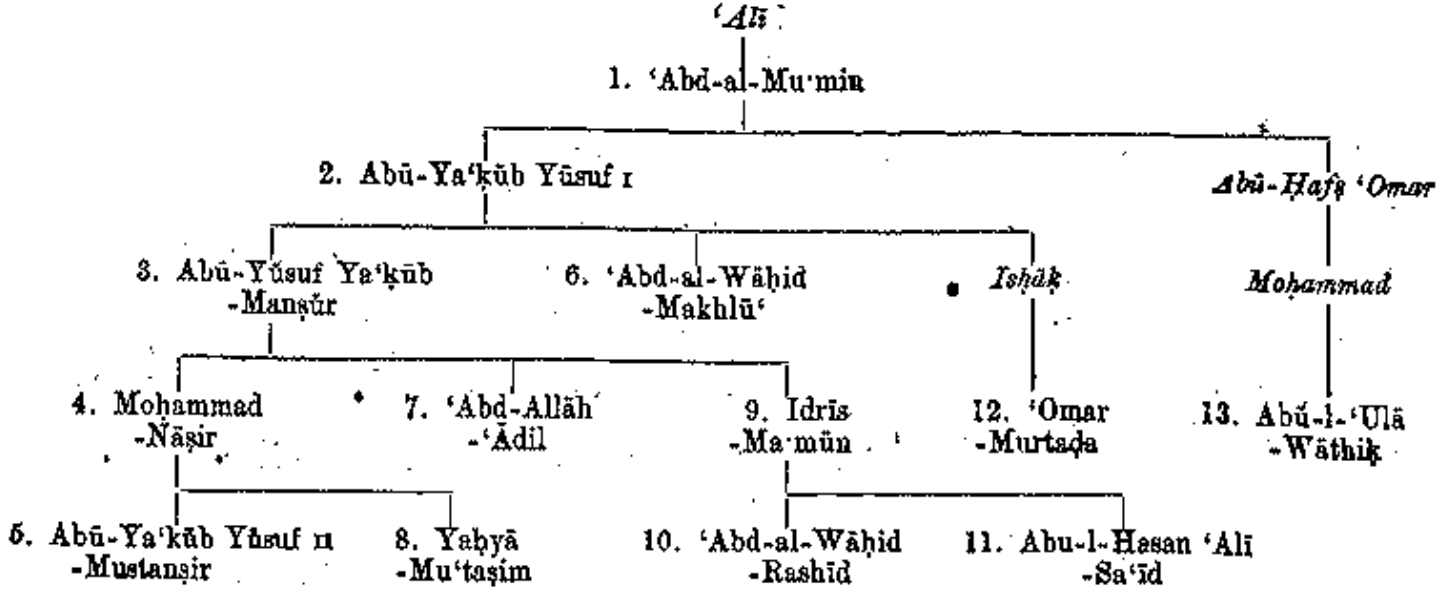
the Peninsula to his sway. Master of Morocco and Spain, he next carried his conquests eastwards, and in 1152 (*547*) abolished the Ḥammūdid rule in Algeria; in 1158 (*553*) he drove the Norman successors of the Zayrids out of Tunis, and by the annexation of Tripoli united the whole coast from the frontier of Egypt to the Atlantic together with Moorish Spain under his sceptre. The Holy War with the Christians in Spain was the chief anxiety of his successors, and the disastrous defeat at Las Navas in 1235 (*632*) was the signal for the expulsion of the Almohades from the Peninsula, which was then divided between the ever-encroaching Christians and the local Moḥammadan dynasties, among whom the Naṣrids of Granada (Table 14) offered the most stubborn resistance to the enemy, and held out until the fall of their city in 1492 delivered the whole of Spain over to Ferdinand and Isabella the Catholic. The loss of Spain was quickly followed by the undermining of the Almohades' power in Africa. Tripoli had long before been annexed by Saladin (1172). Their lieutenants in Tunis, the *Ḥafṣids*, threw off their allegiance and founded an independent dynasty in 1228; whose example was followed by the *Ziyānids* of Tlemçen (Tilimsān) in western Algeria, in 1235; while, amidst the confusion created by many pretenders to

the throne of Morocco, the chiefs of the mountain tribe of the *Marīnids* pushed their way to the front and put an end to the dynasty of the Almohades by the conquest of their capital, Morocco, in 1269 (*667*).

A.H.		A.D.
524	ʿAbd-al-Muʾmin	1130
558	Abū-Yaʿḳūb Yūsuf I	1163
580	Abū-Yūsuf Yaʿḳūb -Manṣūr . . .	1184
595	Moḥammad -Nāṣir	1199
611	Abū-Yaʿḳūb Yūsuf II -Mustanṣir . .	1214
620	ʿAbd-al-Wāḥid -Makhlūʿ	1223
621	Abū-Moḥammad ʿAbd-Allāh -ʿĀdil .	1224
624	Yaḥyā -Muʿtaṣim	1227
626	Abū-l-ʿUlā Idrīs -Maʾmūn . . .	1229
630	ʿAbd-al-Wāḥid -Rashīd . . .	1232
640	Abū-l-Ḥasan ʿAlī -Saʿīd	1242
646	Abū-Ḥafṣ ʿOmar -Murtaḍa . . .	1248
665	Abū-l-ʿUlā -Wāthiḳ	1266
—667		—1269

[*Marīnids, Ziyānids, Ḥafṣids*]

ALMOHADES


'Alī
1. 'Abd-al-Mu'min
2. Abū-Ya'ḳūb Yūsuf I
Abū-Ḥafṣ 'Omar
3. Abū-Yūsuf Ya'ḳūb -Manṣūr
6. 'Abd-al-Wāḥid -Makhlū'
Isḥāḳ
Moḥammad
4. Moḥammad -Nāṣir
7. 'Abd-Allāh -'Ādil
9. Idrīs -Ma'mūn
12. 'Omar -Murtaḍa
13. Abū-l-'Ulā -Wāthiḳ
5. Abū-Ya'ḳūb Yūsuf II -Mustanṣir
8. Yaḥyā -Mu'taṣim
10. 'Abd-al-Wāḥid -Rashīd
11. Abu-l-Ḥasan 'Alī -Sa'īd

A.H.		A.D.
625—941	21. ḤAFṢIDS	1228—1534

(TUNIS)

The Ḥafṣids were at first lieutenants of the Almohades n their province of Tunis. The government passed from ather to son, and the dynasty became independent. For hree centuries the Ḥafṣids governed Tunis with justice nd mildness, and cultivated friendly commercial relations with the trading republics of Italy. The Corsair Khayr-*al*-lîn Barbarossa conquered Tunis in the name of the Ottoman Sultan in 1534, and though the Emperor Charles v. restored the Ḥafṣid king in 1535 and placed a Spanish garrison at the Goletta of Tunis, the province remained chiefly in the hands of the Corsairs, who re-took Tunis itself in 1568 and the Goletta in 1574;* since when, it has been a province of the Ottoman Empire, but in 1881 became practically a possession of France. Tripoli, which had been taken from the kingdom of Tunis by the Spaniards in 1510, was added to the Ottoman Empire by he Corsairs in 1551.

* See my *Barbary Corsairs* (1890), ch. viii, xii, xiv, xv.

A.H.		A.D.
625	Abū-Zakaryā Yaḥyā I	1228
647	Abū-'Abd-Allāh Moḥammad I -Mustanṣir	1249
675	Abū-Zakaryā Yaḥyā II	1277
678	Abū-Isḥāḳ Ibrāhīm I	1279
683	Abū-Ḥafṣ 'Omar I	1284
694	Abu-'Abd-Allāh Moḥammad II -Mustanṣir	1295
709	Abu-Bakr I -Shadīd	1309
709	Abū-l-Baḳā Khālid I	1309
711	Abū-Yaḥyā Zakaryā	1311
717	Abu-Ḍarba Moḥammad III -Mustanṣir	1317
718	Abū-Yaḥyā Abū-Bakr II -Mutawakkil	1318
747	Abū-Ḥafṣ 'Omar II	1346
[747	*Marīnid occupation*	1346
750	Abū-l-'Abbās Aḥmad I -Faḍl	1349
751	Abū-Isḥāḳ Ibrāhīm II -Mustanṣir	1350
770	Abū-l-Baḳā Khālid II	1368
772	Abu-l-'Abbās Aḥmad II -Mustanṣir	1370
796	Abū-Fāris 'Abd-al-'Azīz	1394
837	Moḥammad IV -Muntaṣir	1433
839	Abū-'Amr 'Othmān	1435
893	Abū-Zakaryā Yaḥyā III	1488
899	Abū-'Abd-Allāh Moḥammad V	1493
932	-Ḥasan	1525
—941		—15

[*Corsair Pashas, and Beys, under the Ottoman Sultans*]

A.H.		A.D.
633—796	22. ZIYĀNIDS	1235—1393

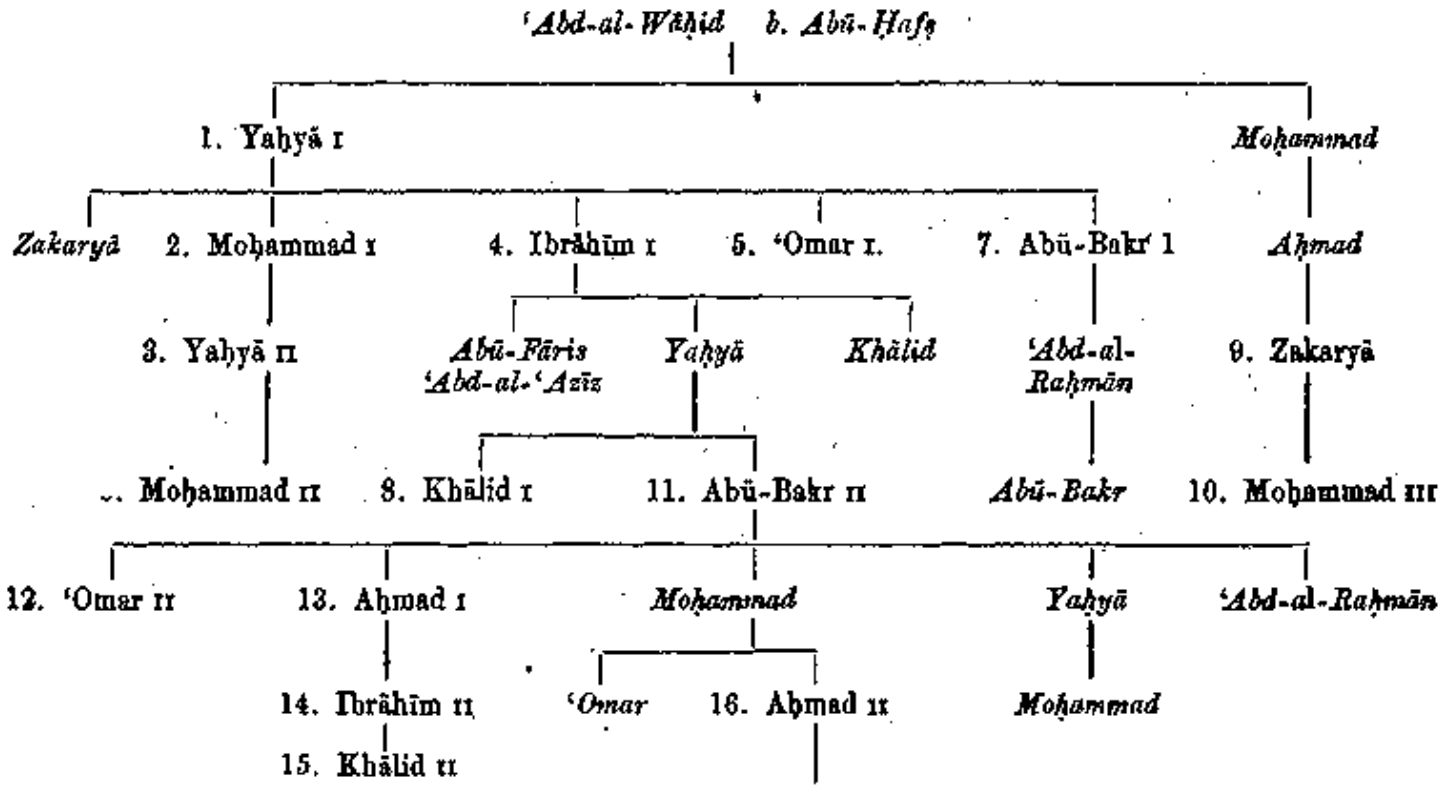
(ALGERIA)

The Ziyānids, lieutenants of the Almohades in Algeria, followed the example of their neighbours the Ḥafṣids to make themselves independent as soon as their masters began to grow feeble. Their capital was Tlemçen (Tilimsān). In their turn the Ziyānids succumbed to the power of the Marīnids of Morocco in 1393.

633	Yagmorasan b. Ziyān	1235
681	'Othmān I	1282
703	Abū-Ziyān I	1303
707	Abū-Ḥammū Mūsā I	1307
718	Abū-Tāshfīn 'Abd-al-Raḥmān I . . .	1318
749	Abū-Sa'īd 'Othmān II	1348
	Abū-Thābit -Zāïm	
753	Abū-Ḥammū Mūsā II	1352
788	Abū-Tāshfīn 'Abd-al-Raḥmān II . . .	1386
796	Abū-Ziyān II	1393

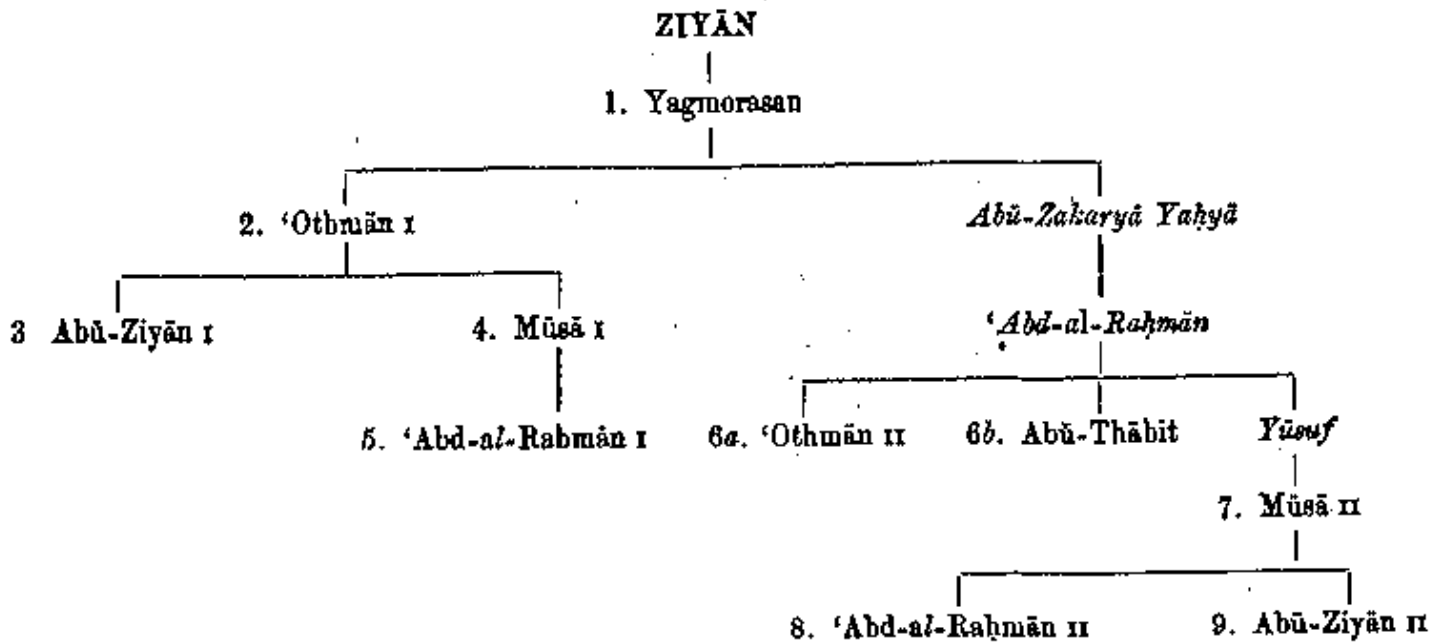
[*Marinids of Morocco*]

HAFṢIDS


'Abd-al-Wāḥid b. Abū-Ḥafṣ
1. Yaḥyā I
Moḥammad
Zakaryā
2. Moḥammad I
4. Ibrāhīm I
5. 'Omar I.
7. Abū-Bakr I
Aḥmad
3. Yaḥyā II
Abū-Fāris 'Abd-al-'Azīz
Yaḥyā
Khālid
'Abd-al-Raḥmān
9. Zakaryā
.. Moḥammad II
8. Khālid I
11. Abū-Bakr II
Abū-Bakr
10. Moḥammad III
12. 'Omar II
13. Aḥmad I
Moḥammad
Yaḥyā
'Abd-al-Raḥmān
14. Ibrāhīm II
'Omar
16. Aḥmad II
Moḥammad
15. Khālid II

17. Abū-Fāris 'Abd-al-'Azīz
-Manṣūr
18. Mohammed IV
19. 'Othmān
-Mas'ūd
20. Yahyā III
-Ḥasan
21. Mohammed V
22. *-Ḥasan*
Ahmad
Mohammed

ZIYĀNIDS


ZIYĀN
1. Yagmorasan
2. ʿOthmān I
Abū-Zakaryā Yaḥyā
3 Abū-Ziyān I
4. Mūsā I
ʿAbd-al-Raḥmān
5. ʿAbd-al-Rahmān I
6a. ʿOthmān II
6b. Abū-Thābit
Yūsuf
7. Mūsā II
8. ʿAbd-al-Raḥmān II
9. Abū-Ziyān II

From the 16th to the present century the North African provinces of Algiers, Tunis, and Tripoli were in the possession, more or less nominal, of the *'Othmānlī* or Ottoman Sulṭāns of Turkey. The annexation of these provinces was due to the energy of the Barbary Corsairs. Previously to the arrival of Barbarossa, the Spaniards under Don Pedro Navarro had established several strong positions on the African coast, at the Peñon de Alger, Bougie (Bujāya), Oran (Wahrān), Tripoli, etc., with a view to overawing the petty pirates of Algiers. In 1509 Urūj Barbarossa, a Lesbian adventurer, occupied the island of Jarba, off the coast of Tripoli, and began his operations against the Spaniards. He took Jijil in 1514, Algiers in 1516, Tinnis and Tlemçen (Tilimsān) from the Marīnids in 1517; and in 1519 his brother Khayr-*al*-dīn Barbarossa was recognised by the Ottoman Sulṭān as Beglerbeg or Governor-General of the province of Algiers, which corresponded very nearly to the Algeria of to-day, though the Spaniards kept their hold on the fortress or Peñon de Alger until 1530 and held Oran till 1706. In 1534 Khayr-*al*-dīn took Tunis from the Ḥafṣids, but the city was retaken by the Emperor Charles v. in the following year, and not restored to the Corsairs of Algiers till 1568. It was again captured for the moment

by Don John of Austria in 1573, but finally annexed by Ochiali (Ulūj 'Alī) in 1574. Meanwhile another Corsair, Dragut (Torghūd), reduced Tripoli to the authority of the Porte in 1551, and drove out the Knights of St. John, who had held it since their expulsion from Rhodes in 1522.

The three provinces of Algiers, Tunis, and Tripoli were thus annexed to the Turkish Empire in 1519, 1568, and 1551, respectively. Algiers was governed first by a series of twenty-six Pashas, appointed from Constantinople; but in 1671 the janissary garrison of Algiers elected a *Dey* from amongst themselves, whose power soon eclipsed that of the Pasha, and in 1710 the two offices were united in that of Dey, which subsisted until the French conquest in 1830. Tunis was governed until 1705 by *Deys* appointed by the Porte, after which the Turkish soldiery elected their own *Beys*, one of whom still affects to reign, though Tunis has been occupied by France since 1881. Tripoli is still a Turkish province governed by a Pasha appointed by the Sulṭān. Morocco alone of the North African provinces has never owned Christian rule, though the Spaniards held various forts on the coast, and still retain Ceuta; and the English once owned Tangier, but neglected to keep it.*

* See my *Barbary Corsairs* (1890).

A.H.		A.D.
591—875	**23. MARĪNIDS**	1195—1470

(MOROCCO)

The Marīnids traced their dynasty from 1195 (*591*), as rulers in the highlands of Morocco; but they did not succeed to the capital of the Almohades till 1269 (*667*). Soon after 1393 (*796*) they added to their kingdom the territory of the Ziyānids in western Algeria. They were superseded by their kinsmen the Wat'asids in 1470.

591	'Abd-al-Ḥakk	1195
614	'Othmān I	1217
637	Moḥammad I	1239
642	Abū-Yaḥyā Abū-Bakr	1244
656	Abū-Yūsuf Ya'ḳūb	1258
685	Abū-Ya'ḳūb Yūsuf	1286
706	Abū-Thābit 'Āmir	1306
708	Abū-*l*-Rabī' Sulaymān	1308
710	Abū-Sa'īd 'Otḥmān II	1310
731	Abū-l-Ḥasan 'Alī	1331
749	Abū-Aynān	1348
759	-Sa'īd	1358
760	Abū-Sālim Ibrāhīm	1359
762	Abū-'Omar Tāshfīn	1361
763	'Abd-al-Ḥalīm	1361
763	Abū-Ziyān Moḥammad II	1361
768	'Abd-al-'Azīz	1366

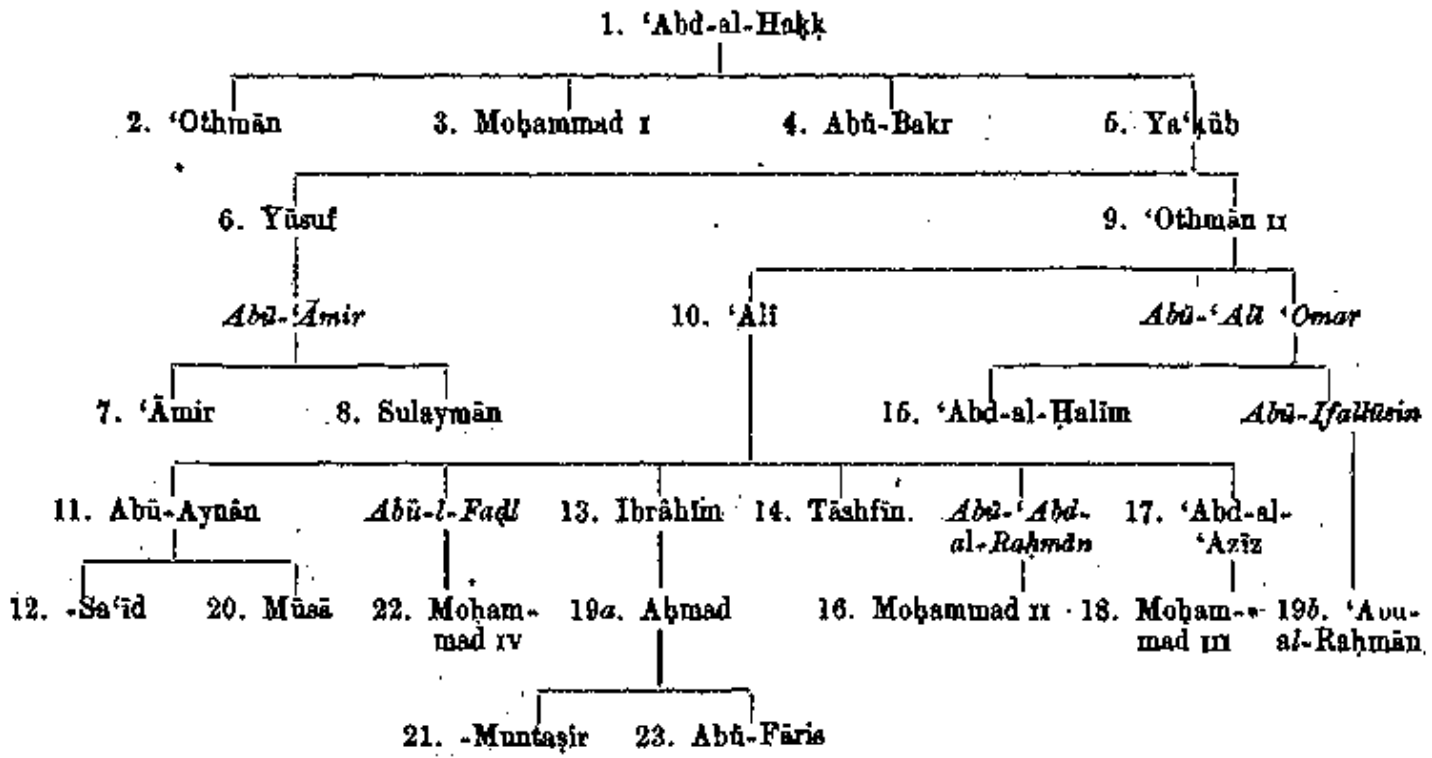
774	Moḥammad III -Sa'īd	1372
776	Abū-l-'Abbās Aḥmad -Mustanṣir .	1374
	'Abd-al-Raḥmān	
786	Mūsā	1384
786	-Muntaṣir	1384
788	Moḥammad IV -Wathiḳ . . .	1386
789	Abū-l-'Abbās Aḥmad -Mustanṣir (again)	1387
796	Abū-Fāris	1393
?	Fāris -Mutawakkil	?
811	Abū-Sa'īd	1408
819	Sa'īd	1416
	Ya'ḳūb	
827	'Abd-Allāh	1424
875	Sharīf	1470

WAT'ASIDS

875	Sa'īd, Shaykh Wat'as	1470
906	Moḥammad I b. Sa'īd	1500
936	Aḥmad b. Moḥammad	1530
957	Moḥammad II b. Aḥmad . . .	1550

[*Sharīfs of Morocco*]

MARĪNIDS


1. 'Abd-al-Ḥaḳḳ
2. 'Othmān
3. Moḥammad I
4. Abū-Bakr
5. Ya'ḳūb
6. Yūsuf
9. 'Othmān II
Abū-'Āmir
10. 'Alī
Abū-'Alī 'Omar
7. 'Āmir
8. Sulaymān
15. 'Abd-al-Ḥalīm
Abū-Ifalūsin
11. Abū-Aynān
Abū-l-Faḍl
13. Ibrāhīm
14. Tāshfīn.
Abū-'Abd-al-Raḥmān
17. 'Abd-al-'Azīz
12. Sa'īd
20. Mūsā
22. Moḥammad IV
19a. Aḥmad
16. Moḥammad II
18. Moḥammad III
19b. 'Abd-al-Raḥmān
21. Muntaṣir
23. Abū-Fāris

A.H.		A.D.
951—1311	24. SHARĪFS	1544—1893
reigning	(MOROCCO)	reigning

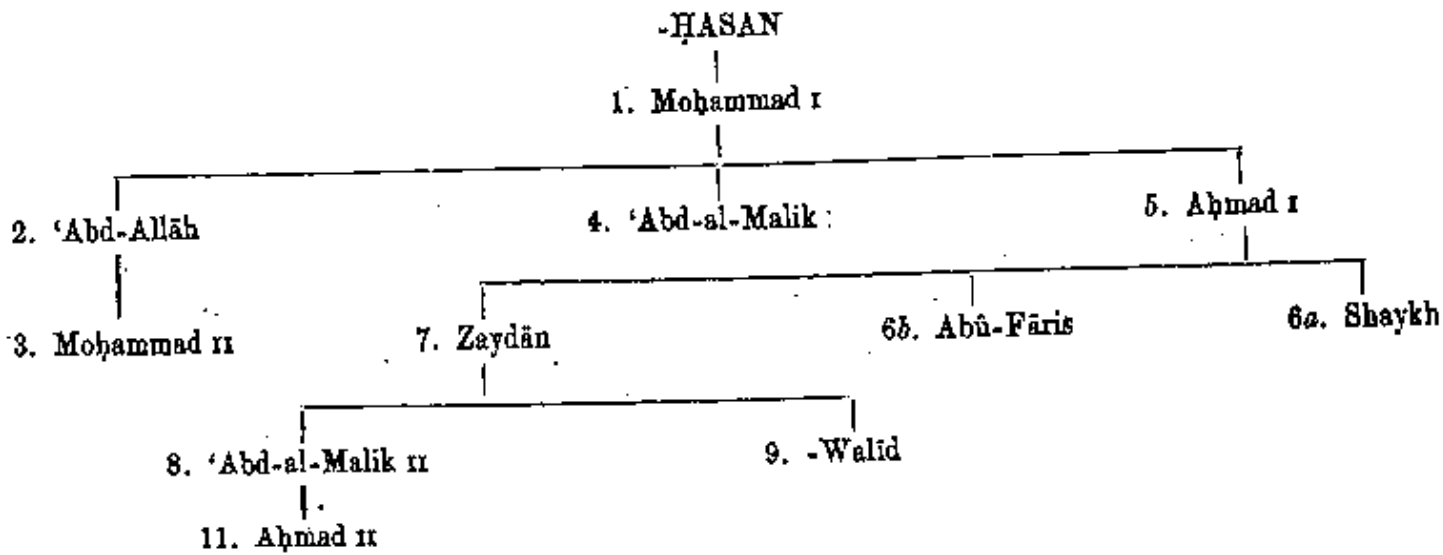
The title *Sharīf* (lit. 'noble') implies descent from the Prophet Moḥammad, from whom the Sharīfs of Morocco trace their lineage through Ḥasan the elder son of Fāṭima by ʿAlī. The Sharīfs possessed themselves of Tarudant in 1515, and Morocco and Fez soon afterwards, but their formal assumption of sovereignty dates from 1544 (*951*). The series falls into two divisions, Ḥasanī and Filalī Sharīfs, and a period of anarchy for six years occurred between the two. Their boundaries have always remained much as they are in the present day, but there has frequently been a rival Sharīf at Fez in opposition to the Sharīf of Morocco. The Sharīfs claim to be inheritors of the title of Caliph and Prince of the Faithful.

A.H.		A.D.
951—1069	**A. ḤASANĪ SHARĪFS**	**1544—1658**
951	Moḥammad I -Shaykh	1544
965	ʻAbd-Allāh	1557
981	Moḥammad II	1573
983	Abū-Marwān ʻAbd-al-Malik I	1575
986	Abū-l-ʻAbbās Aḥmad I -Manṣoor	1578
1012	Shaykh Abū-Fāris Zaydān rivals	1603
1016	Zaydān (alone)	1608
1038	Abū-Marwān ʻAbd-al-Malīk II	1628
1040	Walīd	1630
1045	Moḥammad III	1635
1064	Aḥmad II	1654
—1069		—1658

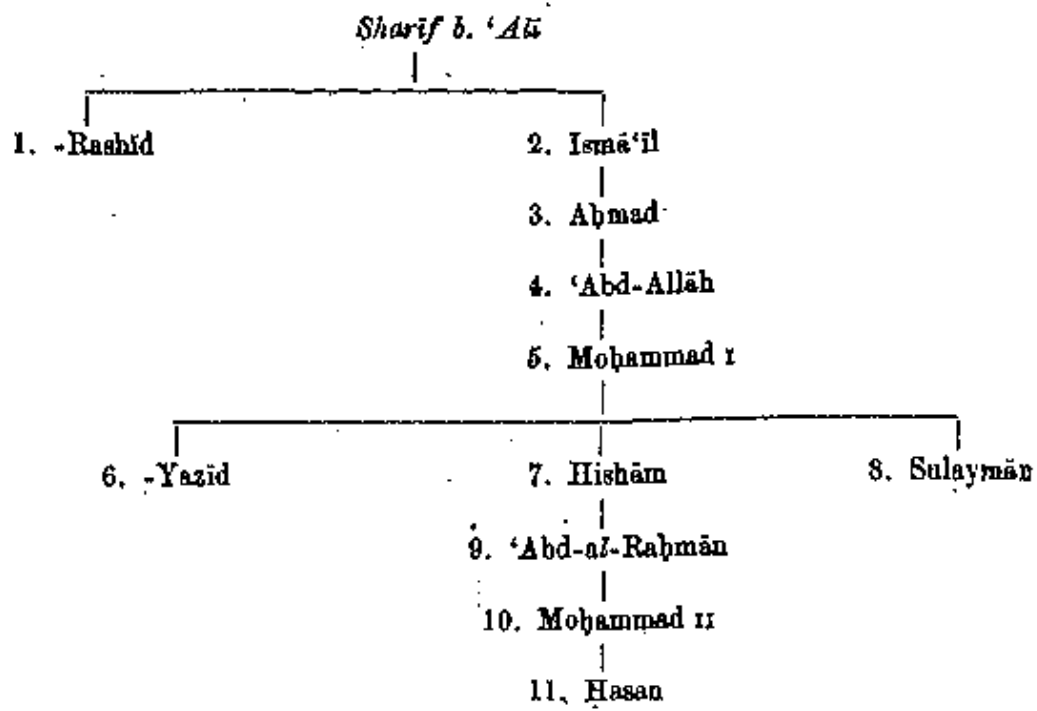
1075—1311	**B. FILALĪ SHARĪFS**	**1664—1893**
1075	-Rashīd b. -Sharīf b. ʻAlī	1664
1083	Ismāʻīl -Samīn	1672
1139	Aḥmad -Dhahabī	1727
1141	ʻAbd-Allāh*	1729
1171	Moḥammad I	1757
1204	-Yazīd	1789
1206	Hishām	1792
1209	Sulaymān	1795
1238	ʻAbd-al-Raḥmān	1822
1276	Moḥammad II	1859
1290	Ḥasan (now reigning)	1873

* Interrupted by ʻAlī b. Ismāʻīl, 1147-9; -Mustaḍī b. Ismāʻīl, 1151–3, and Zayn-al-ʻAbidīn, 1158.

ḤASANĪ SHARĪFS



FILALĪ SHARĪFS



IV. EGYPT AND SYRIA

SÆC. IX—XIX.

25. ṬŪLŪNIDS

26. IKHSHĪDIDS

27. FĀṬIMIDS

28. AYYŪBIDS

29. MAMLŪKS

'OTHMĀNLĪS (*See X*)

30. KHEDIVES

IV. EGYPT AND SYRIA

SEC. IX—XIX

Egypt and Syria have generally formed one government in Moḥammadan history. Syria was conquered by the Arabs in 635–638 (*14–17*), and Egypt in 641 (*21*). From the time of the conquest to 868 (*254*) Egypt was ruled as a separate province by 98 governors appointed by the Omayyad and 'Abbāsid Caliphs; but the new governor in 868, Aḥmad b. Ṭūlūn, founded a dynasty which lasted 37 years. This was succeeded after an interval by the Ikhshīdids, who in turn gave place to the greatest of mediæval Egyptian dynasties, that of the Fāṭimid Caliphs. Under these last, however, Syria became the seat of independent dynasties (Mirdāsids, Būrids, Zangids), but was again united to Egypt by Saladin, the founder of the Ayyūbid dynasty, and so continued until both became separate provinces of the Ottoman Empire. In 1831 Ibrāhīm Pasha, eldest son of Moḥammad 'Alī, again joined Syria to the dominions of the ruler of Egypt, but it was restored to the Porte in 1841 by the intervention of the European Powers, and has ever since been a Turkish vilāyat.

A.H.		A.D.
254—292	ṬŪLŪNIDS	868—905

Ṭūlūn was a Turkish slave, who was sent by the Sāmānid ruler of Bukhārā as a present to the Caliph -Ma'mūn, and attained high rank in the court at Baghdād and Surra-man-ra'ā. His son Aḥmad succeeded to his father's dignity in 240, and was appointed deputy-governor of Egypt in 868 (*254*), where he soon made himself practically independent. In 877 (*264*) he was allowed to incorporate Syria in his government, and the two countries remained in the possession of his dynasty until its extinction in 905 (*292*). The Ṭūlūnids were renowned for the wealth and luxury of their capital -Ḳaṭā'i' (between -Fusṭāṭ and the later Cairo) and for their public works.

A.H.		A.D.
254	Aḥmad b. Ṭūlūn	868
270	Khumārawayh b. Aḥmad . . .	883
282	Jaysh Abū-l-Asākir b. Khumārawayh .	895
283	Hārūn b. Khumārawayh	896
292	Shayhān b. Aḥmad	904 —905

[*Governors under the 'Abbāsid Caliphs*]

A.H.		A.D.
323—358	**IKHSHĪDIDS**	935—969

After a brief interval, during which the governors of the 'Abbāsid Caliphs again held precarious sway in Egypt and Syria, Moḥammad -Ikhshīd established another quasi-independent dynasty. -Ikhshīd was the generic title of the rulers of Farghāna, beyond the Oxus, and Ṭughj, the father of Moḥammad, was the son of a Farghāna officer in the service of the Caliph of Baghdād. Ṭughj rose to be governor of Damascus, but was disgraced and died in prison. Moḥammad retrieved his father's misfortune and became in turn governor of Damascus in *318*, and in *321* governor of Egypt. He did not take over the office, however, till 935 (*323*). In 938 (*327*) he assumed the title of -Ikhshīd, and in 941 (*330*) Syria was added to his dominions, together with Mecca and Medīna in the following year.

A.H.		A.D.
323	Moḥammad -Ikhshīd h. Ṭughj . . .	935
334	Abū-l-Ḳāsim Ūngūr h. -Ikhshīd . .	946
349	Abū-l-Ḥasan 'Alī b. -Ikhshīd . . .	960
355	Abū-l-Misk Kāfūr [a eunuch] . .	966
357	Abū-l-Fawāris Aḥmad b. 'Alī . . .	961
—358		—969

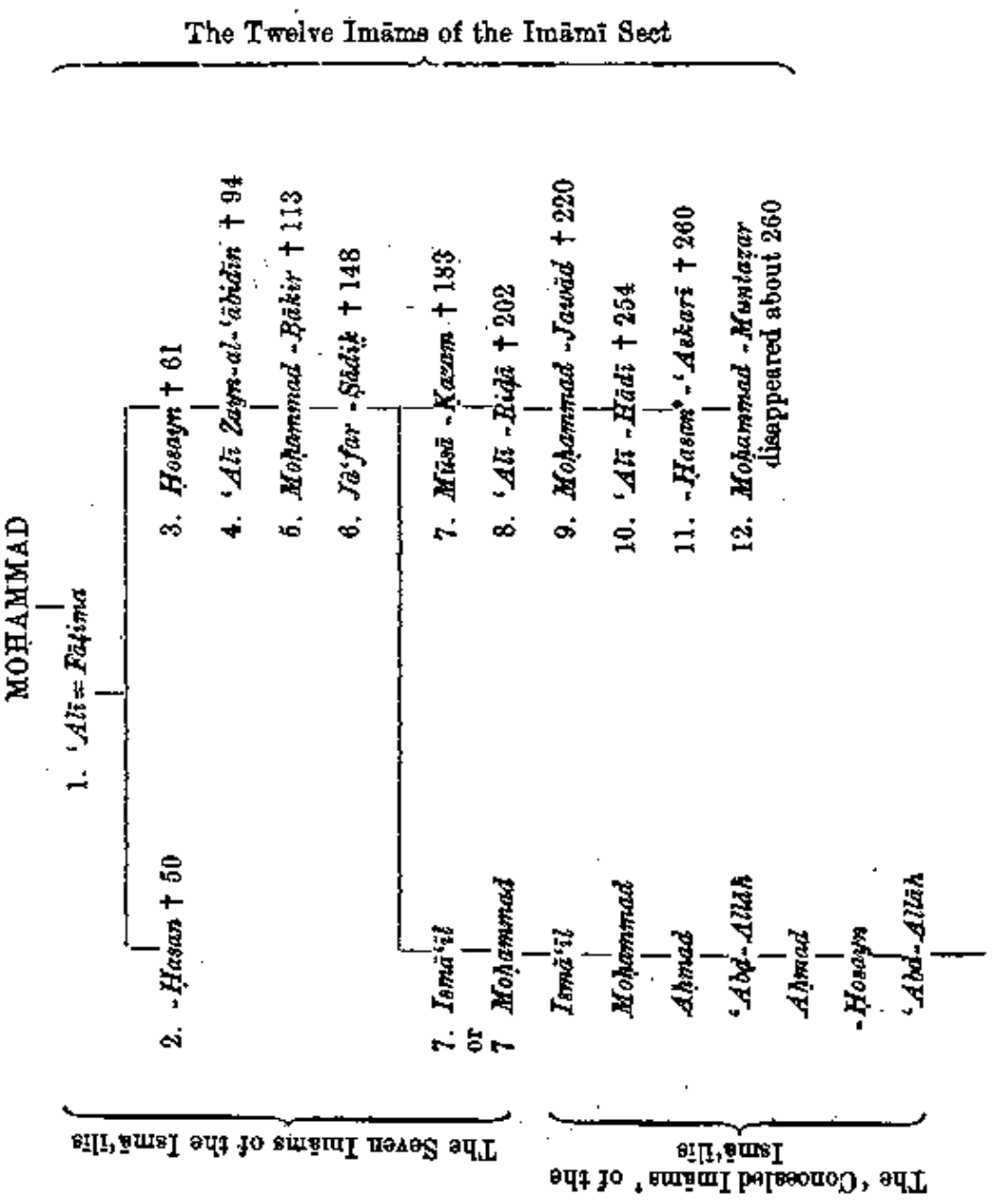
A.H.		A.D.
297—567	27. FĀṬIMIDS	909—1171

The Fāṭimids, like the Idrīsids, were (or pretended to be) descendants of Fāṭima the daughter of the Prophet (see the genealogical table, p. 72). The Idrīsids had prepared the way for them, and numerous *dā'īs* or missionaries had impregnated the Berbers with Shi'ite doctrine, until the task of the new Prophet 'Obayd-Allāh, who took the title of Al-Mahdī, and claimed to be Caliph and Prince of the Faithful, became simple: in 909 (*297*) he suppressed the effete remnant of the Aghlabids and soon made himself master of all North Africa, with the exception of the Idrīsid kingdom in Morocco. The Fāṭimid capital was the city of -Mahdīya (the 'Africa' of Froissart) near Tunis. Half a century later they added Egypt and Syria to their dominions. Jawhar the Fāṭimid general conquered the former country from the boy-king of the Ikhshīdid dynasty in 969 (*356*), and founded the fortified palace of -Ḳāhira, which developed into the city of Cairo. Southern Syria was taken at the same time, and Aleppo was incorporated in 991 (*381*) in the Fāṭimid Empire, which now stretched from the Syrian desert and the Orontos to the

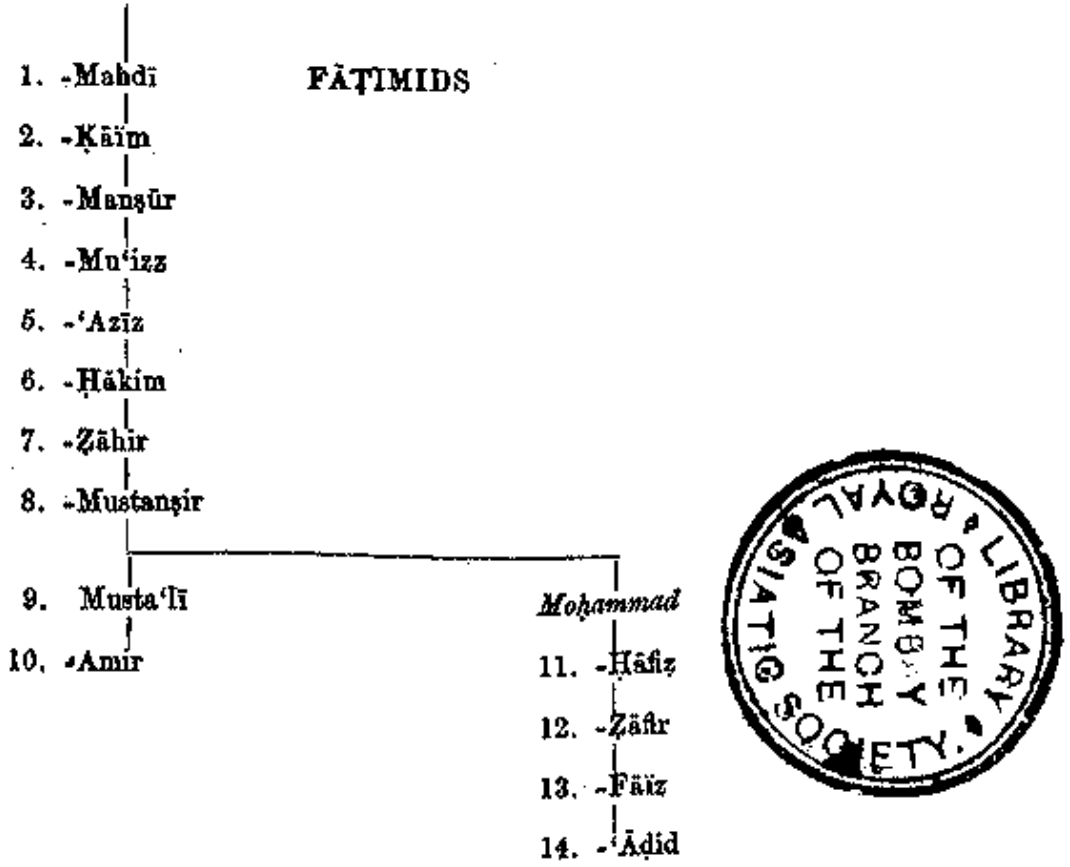
borders of Morocco. The removal of the seat of government from Ḳayruwān and -Mahdīya to Cairo, however, cost the Fāṭimids the loss of their western provinces (see p. 39); and the Normans gained Sicily in 1071, Malta in 1098, Tripoli in 1146 and -Mahdīya and Ḳayruwān in 1148: but the power of the Fāṭimid Caliphs in Egypt and Syria long continued undiminished and their wealth and commerce spread throughout the Mediterranean lands. Saladin supplanted the last Fāṭimid Caliph in 1171 (*567*).

A.H.		A.D.
297	-Mahdī Abū-Moḥammad ʻObayd-Allāh .	909
322	-Ḳāïm Abū-l-Ḳāsim Moḥammad . .	934
334	-Manṣūr Abū-Ṭāhir Ismāʻīl . . .	945
341	-Muʻizz Abū-Tamīm Maʻadd . . .	952
365	-ʻAzīz Abū-Manṣūr Nazār . . .	975
386	-Ḥākim Abū-ʻAlī -Manṣūr . . .	996
411	-Ẓāhir Abū-l-Ḥasan ʻAlī . . .	1020
427	-Mustanṣir Abū-Tamīm Maʻadd . .	1035
487	-Mustaʻlī Abū-l-Ḳāsim Aḥmad . .	1094
495	-Āmir Abū-ʻAlī -Manṣūr . . .	1101
524	-Ḥāfiẓ Abū-l-Maymūn ʻAbd-al-Majīd .	1130
544	-Ẓāfir Abū-l-Manṣūr Ismāʻīl . . .	1149
549	-Fāïz Abū-l-Ḳāsim ʻĪsā	1154
555	-ʻĀḍid Abū-Moḥammad ʻAbd-Allāh .	1160
—567		—1171

[*Ayyūbids*]


The Twelve Imāms of the Imāmī Sect
MOḤAMMAD
1. 'Alī = Fāṭima
2. -Ḥasan † 50
3. Ḥosayn † 61
4. 'Alī Zayn-al-'ābidīn † 94
6. Moḥammad -Bākir † 113
6. Ja'far -Ṣādiḳ † 148
7. Mūsā -Kazim † 183
8. 'Alī -Riḍā † 202
9. Moḥammad -Jawād † 220
10. 'Alī -Hādi † 254
11. -Ḥasan* -'Askarī † 260
12. Moḥammad -Muntaẓar disappeared about 260
7. Ismā'īl or 7 Moḥammad
Ismā'īl
Moḥammad
Aḥmad
'Abd-Allāh
Aḥmad
-Ḥosayn
'Abd-Allāh
The Seven Imāms of the Ismā'īlīs
The 'Concealed Imāms' of the Ismā'īlīs

FĀṬIMIDS



ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY. LIBRARY OF THE BOMBAY BRANCH OF THE

A.H.		A.D.
564—648	28. AYYŪBIDS	1169—1250

Ṣalāḥ-al-dīn, or Saladin, the son of Ayyūb (Job), was of Kurdish extraction, and served under Nūr-al-dīn (Nouredin) Maḥmūd b. Zangī, who had lately made himself king of Syria (see IX.). By him Saladin and his uncle Shīrkūh were sent to Egypt, where a civil war invited interference. Friendly assistance developed into annexation, and after the death of Shīrkūh Saladin became virtual master of Egypt in 1169 (*564*), though the last Fāṭimid Caliph did not die till three years later. In the first month of 567 (Sept. 1171) Saladin caused the *Khutba* or public prayer to be said at Cairo in the name of the contemporary 'Abbāsid Caliph -Mustaḍī, instead of the Fāṭimid -'Āḍid, who lay on his death-bed. The change was effected without disturbance, and Egypt became once more Sunnite instead of Shī'ite. The Holy Cities of the Ḥijāz generally formed part of the dominion of the ruler of Egypt; and in 1173 (*569*) Saladin sent his brother Tūrān-Shāh to govern the Yaman (see

V.). Tripoli was taken from the Normans in 1172 (*568*). The death of his former master Nūr-*al*-dīn in the same year laid Syria open to invasion, and in 1174 (*570*) Saladin entered Damascus and swept over Syria (*570–572*) up to the Euphrates in spite of the opposition of the Zangids. He did not annex Aleppo until 1183 (*579*), after the death of Nūr-*al*-dīn's son, -Ṣāliḥ. He reduced -Mōṣil and made the various princes of Mesopotamia his vassals in 1185–6 (*581*). He was now master of the country from the Euphrates to the Nile, except where the Crusaders retained their strongholds. The battle of Ḥittīn, 4 July, 1187, destroyed the Christian kingdom of Jerusalem; the Holy City was occupied by Saladin within three months; and hardly a castle, save Tyre, held out against him. The fall of Jerusalem roused Europe to undertake the Third Crusade. Richard I. of England and Philip Augustus of France set out for the Holy Land in 1190, and joined in the siege of Acre in 1191. After a year and a half's fighting, peace was concluded in 1192 for three years without any advantage having been gained by the Crusaders. In March 1193 (*589*) Saladin died.

On his death, his brothers, sons, and nephews, divided the

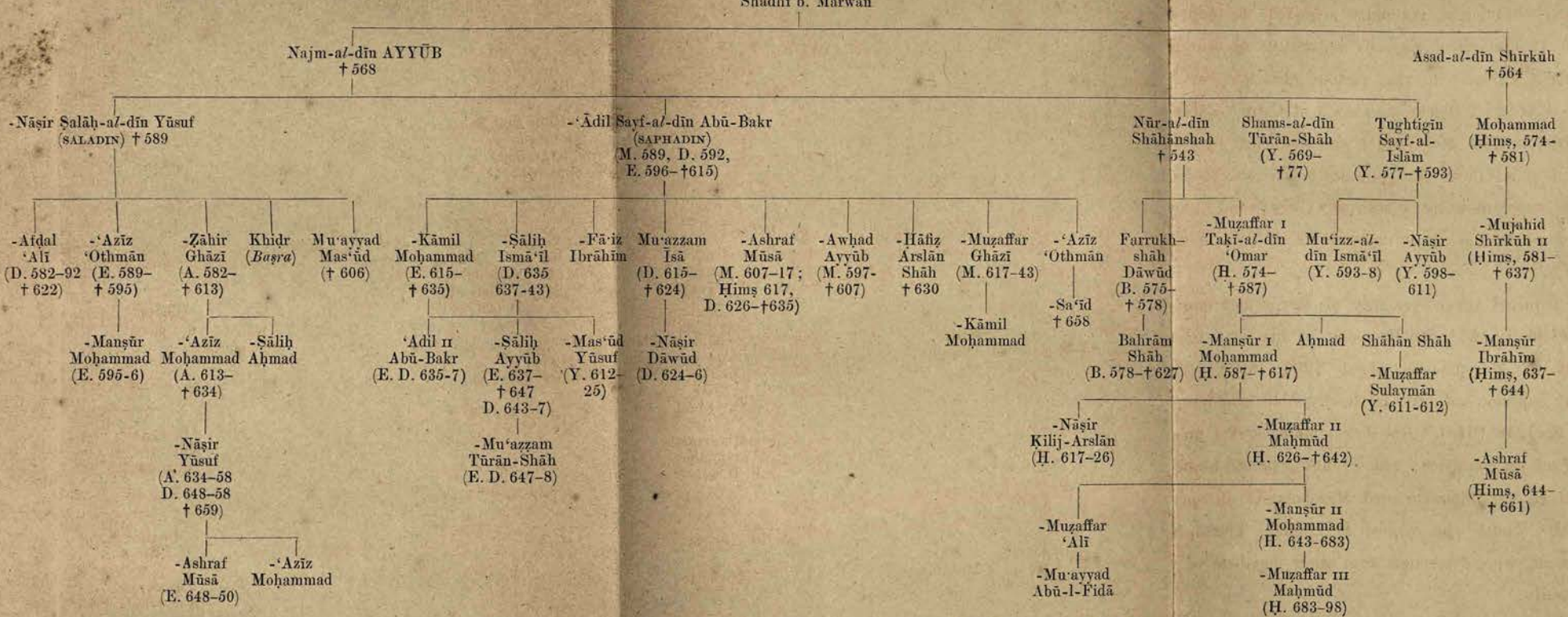
various provinces of his wide kingdom, but one amongst them, his brother Sayf-al-dīn -'Ādil, the Saphadin of the Crusader chroniclers, gradually acquired the supreme authority. At first Saladin's sons naturally succeeded to their father's crowns in the various divisions of the kingdom:— -Afḍal at Damascus, -'Azīz at Cairo, -Ẓāhir at Aleppo. But in 1196 (*592*) -Afḍal was succeeded by -'Ādil at Damascus; in 1199 (*596*) -Manṣūr the successor of -'Azīz was supplanted by -'Ādil at Cairo; and Aleppo alone remained to the direct descendants of Saladin until 1260 (*648*).

Having acquired the sovereignty of Egypt and most of Syria in 1196–9, and appointed one of his sons to the government of Mesopotamia about 1200 (*597*), -'Ādil enjoyed the supreme authority in the Ayyūbid kingdom till his death in 1218 (*615*). His descendants carried on his rule in the several countries; and we find separate branches reigning in Egypt, Damascus, and Mesopotamia, all sprung from -'Ādil. Those who reigned at Ḥamāh, Emesa, and in the Yaman, were descended from other members of the Ayyūbid family.

In 1250 (*648*) the 'Ādilī Ayyūbids of Egypt, the chief branch of the family, who also frequently held Syria,

(*To face p. 76*)

AYYŪBIDS


Shādhī b. Marwān
Najm-al-dīn AYYŪB † 568
Asad-al-dīn Shīrkūh † 564
-Nāṣir Ṣalāḥ-al-dīn Yūsuf (SALADIN) † 589
-ʿĀdil Sayf-al-dīn Abū-Bakr (SAPHADIN) (M. 589, D. 592, E. 596–†615)
Nūr-al-dīn Shāhānshah † 543
Shams-al-dīn Tūrān-Shāh (Y. 569–†77)
Tughtigīn Sayf-al-Islām (Y. 577–†593)
Moḥammad (Ḥimṣ, 574–† 581)
-Afḍal ʿAlī (D. 582–92 † 622)
-ʿAzīz ʿOthmān (E. 589–† 595)
-Manṣūr Moḥammad (E. 595-6)
-Ẓāhir Ghāzī (A. 582–† 613)
-ʿAzīz Moḥammad (A. 613–† 634)
-Nāṣir Yūsuf (A. 634–58 D. 648–58 † 659)
-Ashraf Mūsā (E. 648–50)
-ʿAzīz Moḥammad
-Ṣāliḥ Aḥmad
Khiḍr (*Baṣra*)
Muʿayyad Masʿūd († 606)
-Kāmil Moḥammad (E. 615–† 635)
ʿĀdil II Abū-Bakr (E. D. 635-7)
-Ṣāliḥ Ismāʿīl (D. 635 637-43)
-Ṣāliḥ Ayyūb (E. 637–† 647 D. 643–7)
-Muʿazzam Tūrān-Shāh (E. D. 647–8)
-Fāʾiz Ibrāhīm
-Masʿūd Yūsuf (Y. 612–25)
Muʿazzam Īsā (D. 615–† 624)
-Nāṣir Dāwūd (D. 624–6)
-Ashraf Mūsā (M. 607–17; Ḥimṣ 617, D. 626–†635)
-Awḥad Ayyūb (M. 597–† 607)
-Ḥāfiẓ Arslān Shāh † 630
-Muẓaffar Ghāzī (M. 617–43)
-Kāmil Moḥammad
-ʿAzīz ʿOthmān
-Saʿīd † 658
Farrukh-shāh Dāwūd (B. 575–† 578)
Bahrām Shāh (B. 578–†627)
-Nāṣir Kilij-Arslān (Ḥ. 617–26)
-Muẓaffar ʿAlī
-Muʾayyad Abū-l-Fidā
-Muẓaffar I Taḳī-al-dīn ʿOmar (Ḥ. 574–† 587)
-Manṣūr I Moḥammad (Ḥ. 587–† 617)
Aḥmad
Shāhān Shāh
-Muẓaffar Sulaymān (Y. 611-612)
-Muẓaffar II Maḥmūd (Ḥ. 626–†642)
-Manṣūr II Moḥammad (H. 643-683)
-Muẓaffar III Maḥmūd (Ḥ. 683–98)
Muʿizz-al-dīn Ismāʿīl (Y. 593–8)
-Nāṣir Ayyūb (Y. 598–611)
-Mujāhid Shīrkūh II (Ḥimṣ, 581–† 637)
-Manṣūr Ibrāhīm (Ḥimṣ, 637–† 644)
-Ashraf Mūsā (Ḥimṣ, 644–† 661)

[A. = Aleppo; B. = Baʿalbakk; D. = Damascus; E. = Egypt; Ḥ. = Ḥamāh; M. = Mesopotamia; Y. = Yaman.]

made way for the Baḥrī Mamlūks or Slave Kings. The Damascus branch, after contesting the sovereignty of Syria with the Egyptian and Aleppo branches, was incorporated with Aleppo, and both were swept away in the Tatar avalanche of Chinghiz Khān in 1260 (*658*). The same fate had overtaken the Mesopotamian successors of -'Ādil in 1245 (*643*). The Mamlūks absorbed Emesa in 1262 (*661*). The Ayyūbids had given place to the Rasūlids in Arabia as early as 1228 (*625*). But at Hamāh a branch of the family of Saladin continued to rule with slight intermission until 1341 (*742*), and numbered in their line the well-known historian Abū-l-Fidā.

A.H.		A.D.
	A. EGYPT	
564	-Nāṣir Ṣalāḥ-al-dīn Yūsuf (*Saladin*)	1169
589	-'Azīz 'Imād-al-dīn 'Othmān	1193
595	-Manṣūr Moḥammad	1198
596	-'Ādil Sayf-al-dīn Abū-Bakr * (*Saphadin*)	1199
615	-Kāmil Moḥammad *	1218
635	-'Ādil II Sayf-al-dīn Abū-Bakr *	1238
637	-Ṣāliḥ Najm-al-dīn Ayyūb *	1240
647	-Mu'aẓẓam Tūrān-Shāh *	1249
648	-Ashraf Mūsā	1250
—650		—1252
	[*Mamlūks*]	

* These Sulṭāns also ruled at Damascus.

A.H.		A.D.
	B. DAMASCUS	
582	-Afḍal Nūr-*al*-dīn ʿAlī	1186
592	-ʿĀdil Sayf-*al*-dīn Abū-Bakr (*see Egypt*) .	1196
615	-Muʿaẓẓam Sharaf-*al*-dīn ʿĪsā . . .	1218
624	-Nāṣir Ṣalāḥ-*al*-dīn Dāwūd . . .	1227
626	-Ashraf Mūsā (*of Mesopotamia*) . .	1226
635	-Ṣāliḥ Ismāʿīl.	1237
636	-Kāmil (*of Egypt*)	1237
635	-ʿĀdil (,,)	1238
637	-Ṣāliḥ (,,)	1240
637	-Ṣāliḥ Ismāʿīl (restored)	1240
643	-Ṣāliḥ (*of Egypt*)	1245
647	-Muʿaẓẓam (*of Egypt*)	1249
648	-Nāṣir Ṣalāḥ-*al*-dīn Yūsuf (*of Aleppo*) .	1250
—658		—1260
	[*Tatars*]	
	C. ALEPPO	
582	-Ẓāhir Ghiyāth-*al*-dīn Ghāzī . . .	1186
613	-ʿAzīz Ghiyāth-*al*-dīn Moḥammad . .	1216
634	-Nāṣir Ṣalāḥ-*al*-dīn Yūsuf (*see Damascus*)	1236
—656		—1260
	[*Tatars*]	
	D. MESOPOTAMIA	
597?	-Awḥad Najm-*al*-dīn Ayyūb . . .	1200?
607	-Ashraf Muẓaffar-*al*-dīn Mūsā (*see Damascus*)	1210
628	-Muẓaffar Ghāzī	1230
—643		—1245
	[*Tatars*]	

A.H.		A.D.
	E. ḤAMĀH	
574	-Muẓaffar I Taḳī-al-dīn 'Omar . .	1178
587	-Manṣūr I Moḥammad	1191
617	-Nāṣir Ḳilij-Arslān.	1220
626	-Muẓaffar II Taḳī-al-dīn Maḥmūd . .	1229
642	-Manṣūr II Moḥammad	1244
683	-Muẓaffar III Maḥmūd	1284
—698		—1298
	[*Governors under the Mamlūk Sulṭāns*]	
710	-Mu'ayyad Abū-l-Fidā Ismā-'īl (*the historian*)	1310
733	-Afḍal Moḥammad	1332
—742		—1341
	[*Mamlūks*]	
	F. EMESA (ḤIMṢ)	
574	-Moḥammad b. Shīrkūh	1178
581	-Mujāhid Shīrkūh	1185
637	-Manṣūr Ibrāhīm	1239
644	-Ashraf Muẓaffar-al-dīn Mūsā . .	1245
—661		—1262
	[*Mamlūks*]	
	G. ARABIA	
569	-Mu'aẓẓam Ṭūrān-Shāh b. Ayyūb . .	1173
577	-Sayf-al-Islām Tughtakīn b. Ayyūb .	1181
593	-Mu'izz-al-dīn Ismā'īl	1196
598	-Nāṣir Ayyūb.	1201
611	-Muẓaffar Sulaymān	1214
612	-Mas'ūd Ṣalāḥ-al-dīn Yūsuf . . .	1215
—625 or 626		—1228
	[*Rasūlids*]	

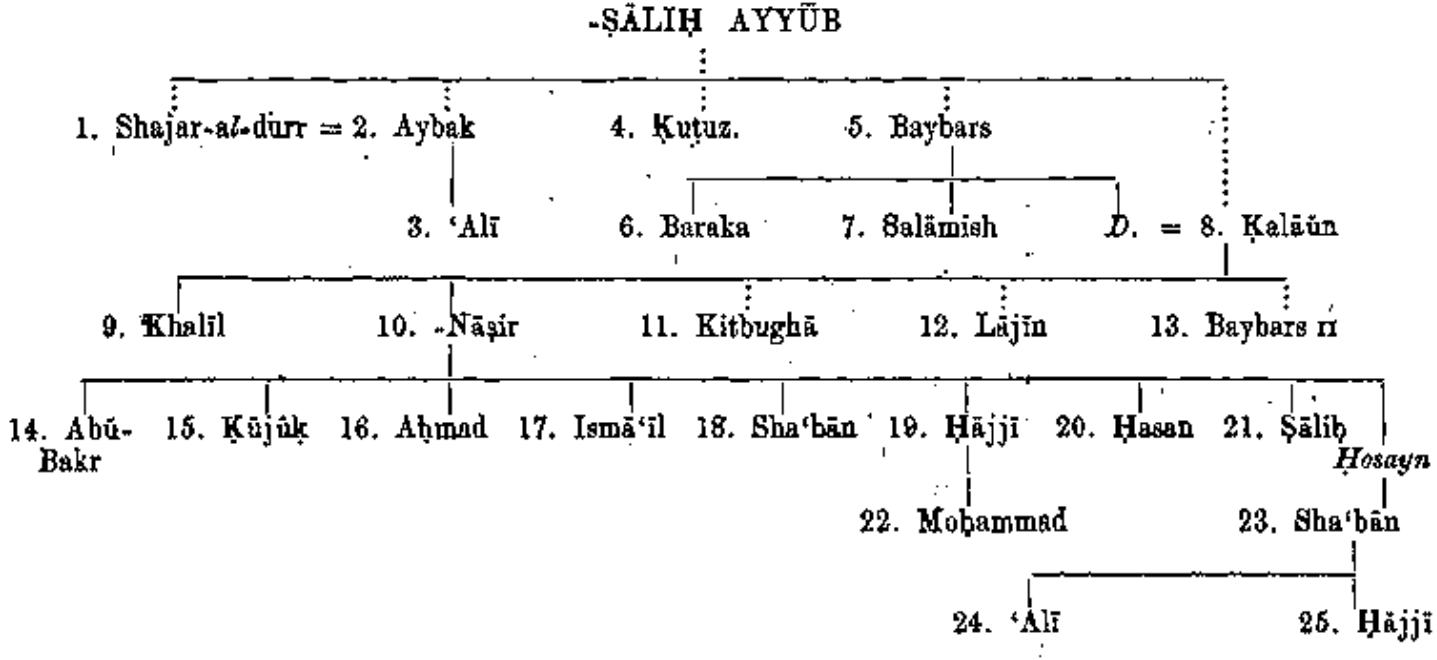
A.H. A.D.
650—922 **29. MAMLŪK SULTĀNS** 1252—1517

Mamlūk means 'owned,' and was generally applied to a white slave. The Mamlūk Sulṭāns of Egypt were Turkish and Circassian slaves, and had their origin in the purchased body-guard of the Ayyūbid Sulṭān -Ṣāliḥ Ayyūb. The first of their line was a woman, Queen Shajar-*al*-durr, widow of -Ṣāliḥ; but a representative of the Ayyūbid family (Mūsā) was accorded the nominal dignity of joint sovereignty for a few years. Then followed a succession of slave kings, divided into two dynasties, the Baḥrī ('of the River') and the Burjī ('of the Fort') who ruled Egypt and Syria down to the beginning of the 16th century. In spite of their short reigns and frequent civil wars and assassinations, they maintained as a rule a well-organized government, and Cairo is still full of proofs of their appreciation of art and their love of building.* Their warlike qualities were no less conspicuous in their successful resistance to the Crusaders, and to the Tatar hordes that overran Asia and menaced Egypt in the 13th century.

* See my *Cairo* (1892) chap. iii, and *Art of the Saracens of Egypt* (1886) chap. i.

A.H	A. BAḤRĪ MAMLŪKS	A.D.
648—792		1250—1390
648	Shajar-*al*-durr	1250
648	-Mu'izz 'Izz-*al*-dīn Aybak	1250
655	-Manṣūr Nūr-*al*-dīn 'Alī	1257
657	-Muẓaffar Sayf-*al*-dīn Ḳuṭuz	1259
658	-Ẓāhir Rukn-*al*-dīn Baybars -Bundukdārī	1260
676	-Sa'īd Nāṣir-*al*-dīn Baraka Khān	1277
678	-'Ādil Badr-*al*-dīn Salāmish	1279
678	-Manṣūr Sayf-*al*-dīn Ḳalāūn	*1279*
689	-Ashraf Ṣalāḥ-*al*-dīn Khalīl	*1290*
693	-Nāṣir Nāṣir-*al*-dīn Moḥammad	*1293*
694	-'Ādil Zayn-*al*-dīn Kitbughā	*1294*
696	-Manṣūr Ḥusām-*al*-dīn Lājīn	*1296*
698	-Nāṣir Moḥammad (again)	1298
708	-Muẓaffar Rukn-*al*-dīn Baybars -Jāshankīr	1308
709	-Nāṣir Moḥammad (third time)	1309
741	-Manṣūr Sayf-*al*-dīn Abū-Bakr	1340
742	-Ashraf 'Alā-*al*-dīn Ḳūjūḳ	1341
742	-Nāṣir Shihāb-*al*-dīn Aḥmad	*1342*
743	-Ṣāliḥ 'Imād-*al*-dīn Ismā'īl	1342
746	-Kāmil Sayf-*al*-dīn Sha'bān	1345
747	-Muẓaffar Sayf-*al*-dīn Ḥājjī	1346
748	-Nāṣir Nāṣir-*al*-dīn Ḥasan	1347
752	-Ṣāliḥ Ṣalāḥ-*al*-dīn Ṣāliḥ	1351
755	-Nāṣir Ḥasan (again)	1354
762	-Manṣūr Ṣalāḥ-*al*-dīn Moḥammad	1361
764	-Ashraf Nāṣir-*al*-dīn Sha'bān	1363
778	-Manṣūr 'Alā-*al*-dīn 'Alī	1376
783	-Ṣāliḥ Ṣalāḥ-*al*-dīn Ḥājjī	1381
784	*Barḳūḳ* (*see Burjis*)	1382
791	Ḥājjī again, with title of -Muẓaffar	1389
—792		—1390

BAḤRĪ MAMLŪKS



*** *Dotted* lines indicate the relation between master and slave.

A.H.		A.D.
784—922	**B. BURJĪ MAMLŪKS**	1382—1517
784	-Ẓāhir Sayf-*al*-dīn Barḳūḳ	1382
	[*Interrupted by Ḥājjī* 791-2.]	
801	-Nāṣir Nāṣir-*al*-dīn Faraj	1398
808	-Manṣūr ʿIzz-*al*-dīn ʿAbd-al-ʿAzīz	1405
809	-Nāṣir Faraj (again)	1406
815	-ʿĀdil -Mustaʿīn (ʿAbbāsid Caliph)	1412
815	-Muʾayyad Shaykh	1412
824	-Muẓaffar Aḥmad	1421
824	-Ẓāhir Sayf-*al*-dīn Ṭaṭār	1421
824	-Ṣāliḥ Nāṣir-*al*-dīn Moḥammad	1421
825	-Ashraf Sayf-*al*-dīn Barsbey	1422
842	-ʿAzīz Jamāl-*al*-dīn Yūsuf	1438
842	-Ẓāhir Sayf-*al*-dīn Jaḳmaḳ	1438
857	-Manṣūr Fakhr-*al*-dīn ʿOthmān	1453
857	-Ashraf Sayf-*al*-dīn Ināl	1453
865	-Muʾayyad Shihāb-*al*-dīn Aḥmad	1460
865	-Ẓāhir Sayf-*al*-dīn Khūshḳadam	1461
872	-Ẓāhir Sayf-*al*-dīn Bilbey	1467
872	-Ẓāhir Timurbughā	1468
873	-Ashraf Sayf-*al*-dīn Ḳāït-Bey	1468
901	-Nāṣir Moḥammad	1495
904	-Ẓāhir Ḳānṣūh	1498
905	-Ashraf Jānbalāt	1499
906	-Ashraf Ḳānṣūh -Ghūrī	1500
922	-Ashraf Tūmān-Bey	1516 —1517

[*Ottoman Sulṭāns.*]

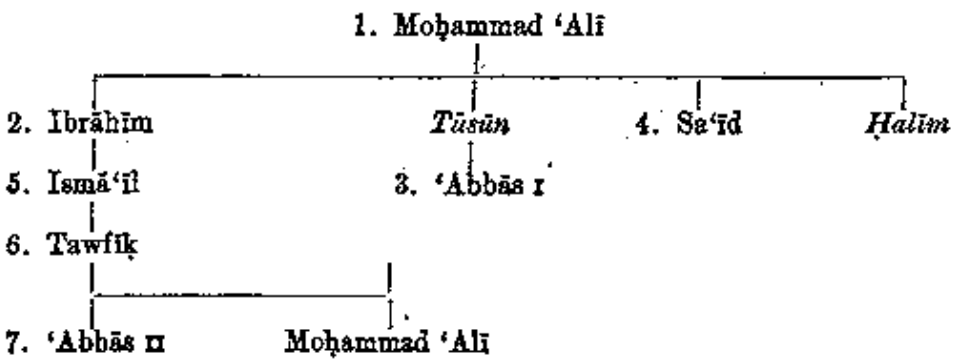
As there are seldom more than two kings of a family in the above list a genealogical table is unnecessary.

A.H. A.D.
1220—1311 **30. KHEDIVES** 1805—1893

After the conquest by Salīm I in 1517 (*922*) Egypt remained for three centuries a Turkish Pāshālik, where, however, the authority of the Pasha sent from Constantinople was minimized by a council of Mamlūk Beys. The arrival of Napoleon in 1798 put an end to this divided system; but after the victories of England at Abū-kīr and Alexandria and the consequent retreat of the French in 1801, the old dissensions revived. In 1805, however, Moḥammad ʿAlī, the commander of an Albanian regiment in the Turkish army of Egypt, after massacring a number of the Mamlūk chiefs, made himself master of Cairo. A second massacre in 1811 completed the work, and henceforward Egypt has been governed, in nominal subordination to the Porte, by the dynasty of Moḥammad ʿAlī, whose fourth successor, Ismāʿīl Pasha, in 1866, adopted the official title of Khedive. Syria was annexed in 1831, but restored to Turkey under pressure of England in 1841. The Sūdān was conquered in successive expeditions, down to the time of Ismāʿīl, but abandoned after

the death of General Gordon in 1885. The southern boundary of Egypt is now drawn near the second cataract of the Nile, and since the suppression of 'Arābī's military revolt by English troops in 1883, the administration of Egypt has been conducted under the advice of English officials.

A.H.		A.D.
1220	Moḥammad 'Alī	1805
1264	Ibrāhīm	1848
1264	'Abbās I	1848
1270	Sa'īd	1854
1280	Ismā'īl	1863
1300	Tawfīḳ	1882
1309	'Abbās II (regnant)	1892



V. ARABIA FELIX (YAMAN)

SÆC. IX—XVIII

33. ZIYĀDIDS (ZABĪD)

34. YA'FURIDS (ṢAN'Ā, JANAD)

35. NAJĀḤIDS (ZABĪD)

36. ṢULAIḤIDS (ṢAN'Ā)

37. HAMDĀNIDS (ṢAN'Ā)

38. MAHDIDS (ZABĪD)

39. ZURAY'IDS ('ADEN)

AYYŪBIDS (*See EGYPT*)

40. RASŪLIDS (YAMAN)

41. ṬĀHIRIDS (YAMAN)

42. RASSID IMĀMS (SA'DA)

43. IMĀMS OF ṢAN'Ā

V. THE YAMAN

SÆC. IX—XVIII

The history of Arabia after the Moḥammadan revolution bore a close resemblance to its pre-Islamic annals. The Arabs under the Caliphate were very like the Arabs of 'the Days of Ignorance,' a people of many disconnected tribes headed by chiefs, and many towns and districts governed by Shaykhs, who were sometimes under control, and at others asserted their independence and styled themselves Amīrs or Imāms. The Caliphs appointed a governor of the Yaman, and a sub-governor of Mecca or Medīna; but the outlying towns recognized chiefly the authority of their local Shaykhs. In the beginning of the third century of the Hijra, which saw the dismemberment of the great Islamic empire by the rise of powerful dynasties on its skirts, the governor of the Yaman followed the example of the Idrīsids and Aghlabids in North Africa; and about the time when the Ṭāhirids were amputating the right hand of the 'Abbāsid empire in Khurāsān, Moḥammad the *Ziyādid* established his authority at Zabīd, the city he had founded in the Tihāma, and thus inaugurated the rule of independent dynasties in Arabia, though the Caliphs still continued to appoint governors at intervals.

A.H.		A.D.
204—409	33. ZIYĀDIDS*	819—1018

(ZABĪD)

The Ziyādids, or Banū Ziyād, ruled at Zabīd for two centuries, and their kingdom included a considerable part of the Yaman. As their power waned, various independent rulers and dynasties sprang up: the *Ya'furids* established themselves at Ṣan'ā and Janad; Sulaymān b. Ṭarf subdued a wide territory bordering the northern coast of the Yaman, with 'Aththar for its capital; and the Carmathian 'Alī b. -Faḍl even plundered Zabīd itself shortly after 904 (*292*). Under the last Ziyādid, the government of their province fell entirely into the hands of a succession of slaves, until Najāḥ, an Abyssinian slave of Marjān, the last Ziyādid *Maire du palais*, substituted his own dynasty, the *Najāḥids*, at Zabīd in 1021 (*412*).

* The history of the Arabian dynasties may be read in H. C. Kay's comprehensive work *Yaman, its early mediæval history*, 1892, which includes a translation of the Arabic history of 'Omāra and other important and interesting materials.

A.H.		A.D.
204	Moḥammad b. ʿAbd-Allāh b. Ziyād . .	819
245	Ibrāhīm b. Moḥammad	859
289	Ziyād b. Ibrahīm	901
291?	Abū-l-Jaysh Isḥāḳ b Ibrāhīm . . .	903?
371	ʿAbd-Allāh (*or* Ziyād, *or* Ibrāhīm) b Isḥāḳ .	981
—409		—1018

Vezīrs

371	Rushd	981
c. 373	Ḥosayn b Salāma	983
402	Marjān	1011
—412		—1021

Nafīs, 407—12

[*Najāḥids*]

A.H.		A.D.
247—345	**34. YAʿFURIDS**	861—956
	(ṢANʿA AND JANAD)	
247	Yaʿfur b. ʿAbd-al-Raḥmān	861
259	Moḥammad b Yaʿfur	872
279	ʿAbd al-Ḳādir b. Aḥmad b. Yaʿfur . .	892
279	Ibrāhīm b. Moḥammad	892
c. 285	Asʿad b. Ibrāhīm	*c.* 898
288	*Rassid Imām -Hadī*	900
299	*Carmathian ʿAlī b. -Faḍl*	911
303	Asʿad *restored*	915
332	Moḥammad b. Ibrāhīm	943
352	ʿAbd-Allāh b. Kaḥṭān	963
—387		—997

[Dynasty becomes insignificant]

A.H.		A.D.
412—553	35. NAJĀḤIDS	1021—1158

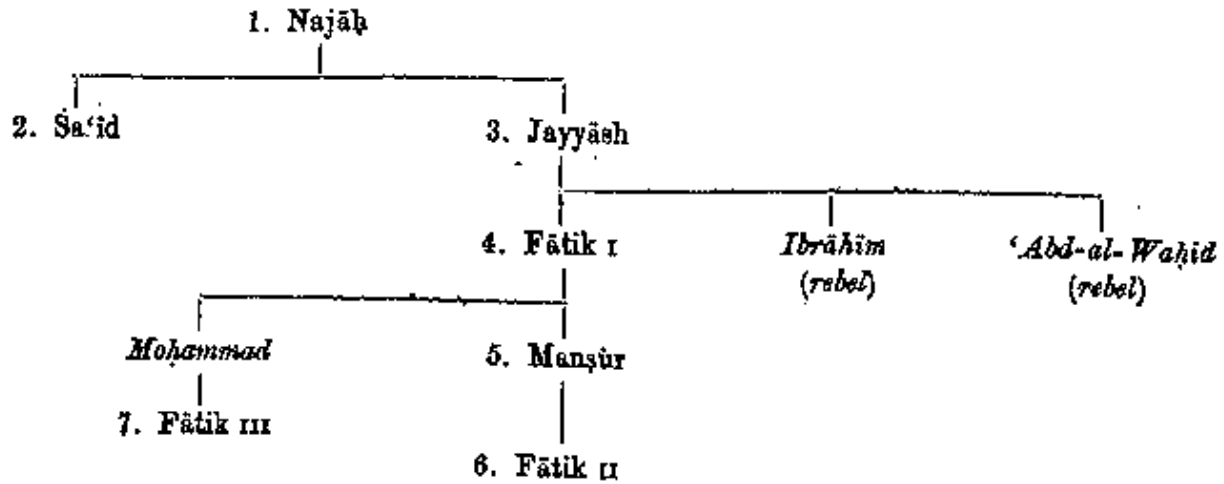
(ZABĪD)

Najāḥ, the Abyssinian slave of the last Mayor of the Palace of the Ziyādid dynasty, ruled Zabīd till his death in 1060 (*452*); the town was then (*454*) seized by the Ṣulayḥids and formed part of their dominions until *473*, when the son of Najāḥ recovered it, though it changed hands between the two dynasties several times during his life (see p. 94). After 1089 (*482*) Zabīd remained continuously with the Najāḥids, until their dynasty (which had fallen, like the Ziyādids, under the influence of vezīrs) gave place to the *Mahdids* in 1059 (*554*).

A.H.		A.D.
412	-Mu'ayyad Najāḥ (+452)	1021
454	*'Alī -Dā'ī, Ṣulayḥid*	1062
473	Sa'īd -Aḥwal b. Najāḥ	1080
482	Jayyāsh h. Najāḥ	1089
498	-Fātik I h. Jayyāsh	1104
503	-Manṣūr b. -Fātik	1109
c. 517	-Fātik II b. -Manṣūr	*c.* 1123
531	-Fātik III b. Moḥammed b. -Mansūr . .	1136
—554		—1159

[*Mahdids.*]

NAJAḤIDS

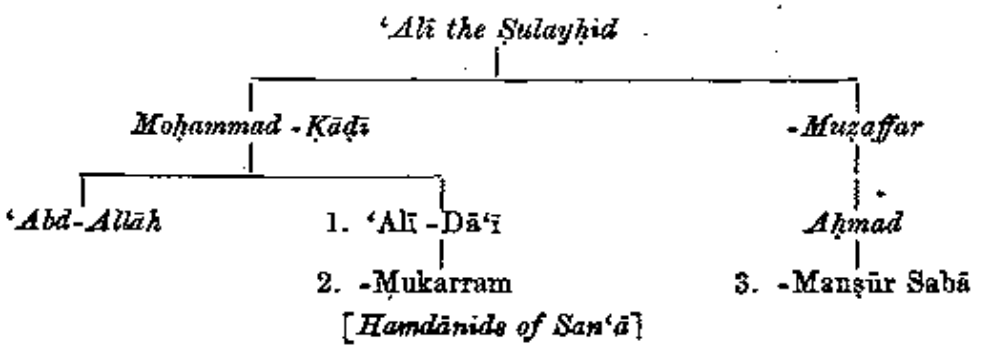

1. Najāḥ
2. Sa'īd
3. Jayyāsh
4. Fātik I
Ibrāhīm
(rebel)
'Abd-al-Waḥid
(rebel)
Moḥammad
5. Manṣūr
7. Fātik III
6. Fātik II

A.H. 420—495 | 36. ṢULAYḤIDS | A.D. 1037—1101

(ṢAN'Ā)

The *dā'ī* (missionary) 'Alī b. Moḥammad, founder of the Shī'ite dynasty of the Ṣulayḥids, or Banū Sulayḥ, made himself independent at Masār in 1037 (*429*), annexed Zabīd after the death of Najāḥ, in 1062 (*454*), conquered Ṣan'ā and all the Yaman by 1063 (*455*), and took possession of Mecca *455–6*. His capital was Ṣan'ā; but he also held Zabīd until his death in 1080 (*473*), and his son -Mukarram recovered it in *475*, but lost it in *479*, took it again about 1088 (*481*), and almost immediately lost it for the last time. In *480* -Mukarram removed his capital from Ṣan'ā to Dhū-Jibla in Mikhlāf Ja'far.

A.H.		A.D.
429	Abū-Kāmil 'Alī b. Moḥammad . . .	1037
473	-Mukarram Aḥmad	1080
484	-Manṣūr Abū-Himyar Sabā	1091
—492		—1098



[*Hamdānids of San'ā*]

A.H.		A.D.
492—569	37. HAMDĀNIDS	1098—1173

(ṢAN'Ā)

The various branches of the Banū Hamdān were descended from the tribes of Ḥāshid and Bakīl, which held a high rank among the Yaman Arabs, and occupied the country about Ṣan'ā and Sa'da. They supplied rulers to Ṣan'ā after the Ṣulayḥids for three quarters of a century, up to the Ayyūbid invasion.

A.H.		A.D.
492	Ḥātim b. -Ghasbīm	1098
502	'Abd-Allāh b. Ḥātim	1108
504	Ma'n b. Ḥātim	1110
c. 510	Hīshām b. -Ḳubbayt	*c.* 1116
	-Ḥamās b. -Ḳubbayt	
	Ḥātim b. -Ḥamās	
545	Ḥātim b. Aḥmad	1150
556	'Alī -Waḥīd b. Ḥātim	1160
—569		—1171

[*Ayyūbids.*]

A.H.		A.D.
554—569	**38. MAHDIDS**	1159—1173

(ZABĪD)

The Mahdids, or Banū-l-Mahdī, succeeded the Najāḥids at Zabīd. 'Alī b. -Mahdī was a devotee and prophet in the Tihāma, who acquired a following whom he named -Anṣār and Muhājirūn, or Helpers and Refugees (after the example of Moḥammad), and eventually 1150 (*545*) began to occupy forts and subdue the country, till at length he was able to attack and conquer Zabīd 1159 (*554*). His successors held the Tihāma, together with some districts and towns beyond, until the Ayyūbid conquest.

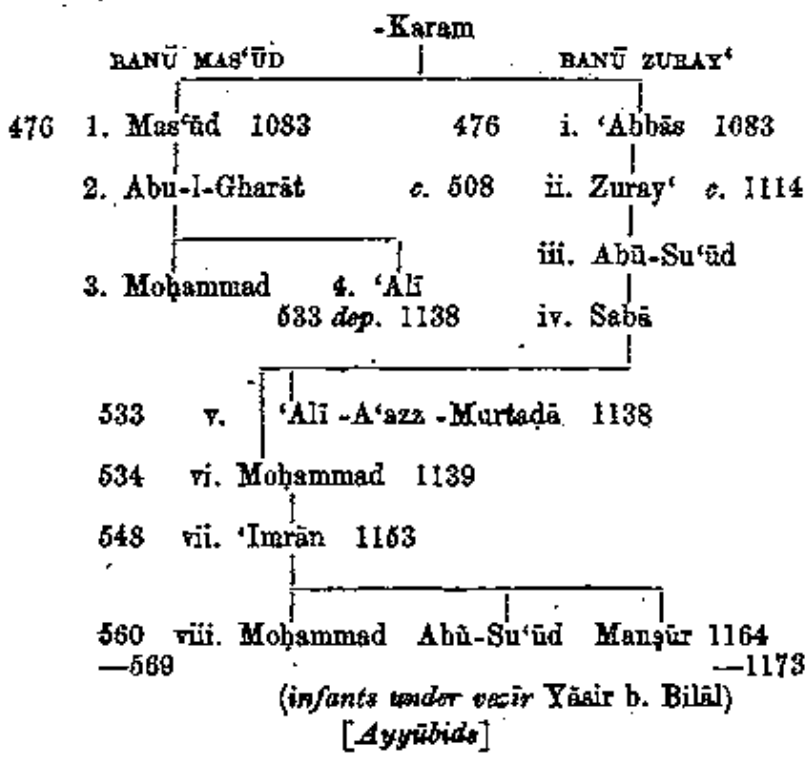
A.H.		A.D.
554	'Alī b. -Mahdī	1159
554	-Mahdī b. 'Alī	1159
558	'Ahd-al-Nabī b. 'Alī	1162
—*569*		—1173

[*Ayyūbids.*]

A.H. 476—569 **39. ZURAY'IDS** A.D. 1083—1173

('ADEN)

The two sons of -Karam, 'Abbās and Mas'ūd, were appointed joint governors of 'Aden in 1083 (*476*) by the Ṣulayḥid -Mukarram, and the joint system of government continued for several generations. The 'Aden princes Abū-Su'ūd and Abū-Gharāt asserted their independence of the king of Ṣan'ā, but were not always able to maintain it. The dynasty was, next to the Ṣulayḥids, the most important in the Yaman, and survived till the Ayyūbid conquest.*



* The list is taken from H. C. Kay's *Yaman* (Edw. Arnold, 1892), p. 307.

A.H.		A.D.
569—625	**AYYŪBIDS**	1173—1228

(YAMAN)

The Ayyūbid conquest in 1173 (*569*) is the great crisis in the mediæval history of Arabia. The kinsmen of Saladin swept over the Yaman and overturned its dynasties with the same uncompromising thoroughness as they displayed in Egypt, Syria, and Mesopotamia. The Hamdānids of Ṣan'ā, the Mahdids of Zabīd, and the Zuray'ids of 'Aden, were alike suppressed by the Kurdish conqueror Tūrān Shāh, son of Ayyūb, and for half a century, 1173–1227 (*569–625*) the Yaman remained in the hands of the great family which ruled Egypt and Syria. The list of the Ayyūbids of Arabia has already been given (p. 79) in connexion with the leading branch of Egypt, but is here repeated for convenience.

A.H.		A.D.
569	-Mu'aẓẓam Tūrān -Shāh	1173
577	Sayf-al-Islām Tughtigīn	1181
593	Mu'izz-*al*-dīn Ismā'īl	1196
598	-Nāṣir Ayyūb	1201
611	-Muẓaffar Sulaymān	1214
612	-Mus'ūd Yūsuf	1215
—625		—1228

[*Rasūlids*]

A.H. A.D.

626—858 40. RASŪLIDS 1229—1454

(YAMAN)

The Rasūlids succeeded the Ayyūbids in the government of all the Yaman, from Ḥaḍramawt to Mecca, and their power was maintained for over two centuries. They took their name from an envoy (*rasūl*) of the 'Abbāsid caliph, whose son, 'Alī b. Rasūl, was appointed governor of Mecca by the last Ayyūbid Sulṭān of Arabia, -Mas'ūd, in 1222 (*619*). On the death of Mas'ud in 1228 (*625*) 'Alī's son Nūr-*al*-dīn 'Omar established his authority over the Yaman.

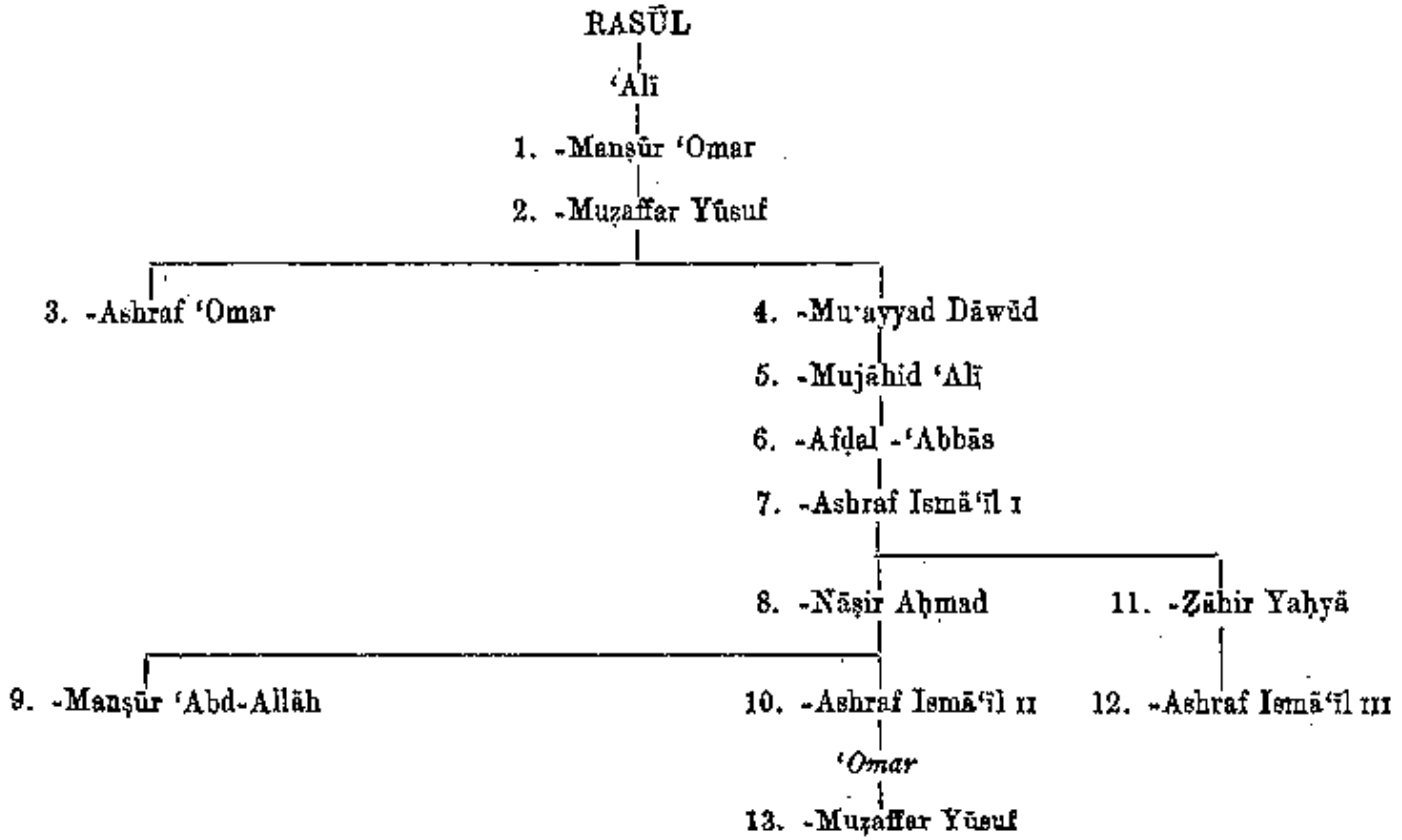
626	-Manṣūr 'Omar b. 'Alī	1229
647?	-Muẓaffar Yūsuf	1249
694	-Ashraf 'Omar	1295
696	-Mu'ayyad Dāwūd	1297
721	-Mujāhid 'Alī	1321
764	-Afḍal -'Abbās	1363
778	-Ashraf Ismā'īl I	1376
803	-Nāṣir Aḥmad	1400
829	-Manṣūr 'Abd-Allāh	1426
830	-Ashraf Ismā'īl II	1427
831	-Ẓāhir Yaḥyā	1428
842	-Ashraf Ismā'īl III	1438
845	-Muẓaffar Yūsuf	1441

Rival claimants:

846	-Mufaḍḍal Moḥammad	1442
846	-Nāṣir 'Abd-Allāh	1442
854-8	-Mas'ūd	1450-4
855	-Mu'ayyad -Ḥosayn	1451

[*Ṭāhirids.*]

RASŪLIDS


RASŪL
ʿAlī
1. -Manṣūr ʿOmar
2. -Muẓaffar Yūsuf
3. -Ashraf ʿOmar
4. -Muʾayyad Dāwūd
5. -Mujāhid ʿAlī
6. -Afḍal -ʿAbbās
7. -Ashraf Ismāʿīl I
8. -Nāṣir Aḥmad
11. -Ẓāhir Yaḥyā
9. -Manṣūr ʿAbd-Allāh
10. -Ashraf Ismāʿīl II
12. -Ashraf Ismāʿīl III
ʿOmar
13. -Muẓaffar Yūsuf

A.H.
850—923

41. ṬĀHIRIDS

(YAMAN)

The Ṭāhirids, or Banū Ṭāhir, succeeded to the Yaman on the break-up of the Rasūlids, and maintained their authority until the conquest of Arabia by the last but one of the *Mamlūk Sulṭāns* of Egypt, Ḳānsūh Ghūrī. The *'Othmānlī Turks* then occupied the country, thus made ready for their rule, in 1517 (*923*), but were forced to abandon it in 1633, in favour of the native Imāms.

850	{ Ẓāfir Ṣalāḥ-*al*-dīn 'Āmir I (*Zabīd*, †870) . }	1446
	{ -Mujāhid Shams-*al*-dīn 'Alī (*'Aden*, †883) . }	
883	-Manṣūr Ṭāj-*al*-dīn 'Abd-al-Waḥḥāb . .	1478
894	-Ẓāfir Ṣalāḥ-*al*-dīn 'Āmir	1488
—923		—1517

TĀHIR

1*a*. -Ẓāfir I — 1*b*. -Mujāhid — *Dāwūd*

2. -Manṣūr

3. -Ẓāfir II

[*Mamlūks*; *'Othmānlīs*]

35871

A.H.		A.D.
280—*c.* 700	42. RASSID IMĀMS	893—*c.* 1300

SA'DA)

A line of Imāms of the Zaydite sect of the Shī'ites was founded at Sa'da in the Yaman by -Hādī Yaḥyā, grandson of -Ḳāsim -Rassi, a schismatic of the time of -Ma'mūn the 'Abbāsid Caliph, and lasted down to the present day. The series is confused and the dates often uncertain, but the following list and genealogical table give the results of the latest researches.*

* 246	-Ḳāsim -Rassi Tarjumān-*al*-dīn . . .	† 860
280	-Hādī-ilā-l-ḥaḳḳ Yaḥyā	893
293	-Murtaḍā Abū-l-Ḳāsim Moḥammad . .	910
301	-Nāṣir Aḥmad	913
324	-Ḳāsim -Mukhtār	935
	Yūsuf -Dā'ī	
	-Ḳāsim -Manṣūr	
393	-Mahdī -Ḥosayn † 404	1003
426	Abū-Hāshim -Ḥasan	1035
430	*-Nāṣir Abū-l-Fatḥ -Daylamī* . . .	1038
532	-Mutawakkil Aḥmad † 566	1137
593	-Manṣūr 'Abd-Allāh † 614	1196
614-23	-Nāṣir 'Izz-*al*-dīn Moḥammad . . .	1217-1226
614	-Hādī Najm-*al*-dīn Yaḥyā	1217
623?	-Mahdī Aḥmad b. -Ḥosayn	1226?
656	-Mutawakkil Shams-*al*-dīn Aḥmad . .	1258
680	-Muntaṣir Dāwūd	1281

* See H. C. Kay's *Yaman*, 1892, for further details.

RASSID IMÂMS

A.H. A.D.

c. 1000— **43. IMĀMS OF SAN'Ā** c. 1591—

The preceding Imāms had their chief seat at Sa'da, but they frequently succeeded in taking Ṣan'ā. It was not, however, until the expulsion of the 'Othmānlī Turks in 1633 (*1043*) that Ṣan'ā became the permanent capital of the Imāmate of the Yaman. The Imāms who ruled there are generally distinguished by the title of Imāms of Ṣan'ā, but they were really only a continuation of the previous line of Sa'da, since their founder was -Ḳāsim -Manṣūr, a descendant of Yūsuf -Dā'ī, great-grandson of -Hādī Yaḥya, the founder of the Rassid Imāmate. The following list, chiefly after Niebuhr, is incomplete, for representatives of the same family still possess authority in the Yaman.

c. 1000	-Ḳāsim -Manṣūr	c. 1591
1029	-Mu'ayyad Moḥammad	1620
1054	-Mutawakkil Ismā'īl	1644
1087	-Majīd Moḥammad	1676
	-Mahdī Aḥmad	
1093	-Hādī Moḥammad	1682
1095	-Mahdī Moḥammad	1684
1126	-Naṣir Moḥammad	1714
1128	-Mutawakkil -Ḳāsim	1716
1139	-Manṣūr -Ḥosayn	1726
1139	-Hadī -Majīd Moḥammad	1726
1140	-Manṣūr (*restored*)	1727
1160	-Mahdī -'Abbās	1747
c. 1190	-Manṣūr	c. 1776

BOMBAY BRANCH OF THE ROYAL ASIATIC

VI. SYRIA AND MESOPOTAMIA

(ARAB PERIOD)

SÆC. X—XII

44. ḤAMDĀNIDS (=MOṢIL, ALEPPO)

45. MIRDĀSIDS (ALEPPO)

46. ʿOḲAYLIDS (=MŌṢIL, ETC.)

47. MARWĀNIDS (DIYĀR-BAKR)

48. MAZYADIDS (=ḤILLA)

VI. SYRIA AND MESOPOTAMIA

(ARAB PERIOD)

SÆC. X—XII.

In classifying the Moḥammadan dynasties of Asia, the purely geographical system adopted for Africa must be modified, in order to present the various groups of dynasties in historical sequence. These dynasties fall naturally into the following divisions:—VI. The Arab dynasties of Syria and Mesopotamia previous to the invasion of the Seljūḳ Turks; VII. The Persian and Transoxine dynasties before the Seljūḳs; VIII. The Seljūḳ family in all its ramifications; IX. The dynasties founded by officers who had served in the Seljūḳ armies, and subsisting between the decay of the Seljūḳ power and the invasion of the Mongols; X. The western successors of the Seljūḳs, especially the ʿOthmānlī Turks; XI. The Mongol family of Chingiz Khān in all its branches; XII. The dynasties which sprang up in Persia on the decline of the Mongol power; XIII. The dynasties which sprang from Tīmūr

(Tamerlane) in Transoxiana on the decay of the older branch of the Mongols; XIV. The dynasties of India (including Afghānistān).

In this arrangement the geographical progress from west to east is still generally preserved. We have first Syria and Mesopotamia down to the great sweep of the Seljūḳ invasion; then Persia and Transoxiana to the same epoch. The Seljūḳs and their officers and successors in the west follow. A new power, that of the Mongols, then comes to sweep away for a time all these lesser dynasties, save the 'Othmānlīs. The Mongols in turn grow weak, and their Persian supplantors, notably the several dynasties of Shāhs, to the present day, are placed next. Further north and east, the Mongols were continued in a new line, that of Tīmūr; and the dynasties sprung from this renowned chief, together with their Uzbeg successors in Transoxiana, are brought down to the present day. Still moving eastward, we arrive at India, and begin the series of Moḥammadan dynasties of Hindūstān with their historical source, the Ghaznawids of Afghānistān, and carry them down to the fall of the Mogul Empire and the establishment of British supremacy in India.

The first of these groups is formed of the dynasties founded by Arab tribes in Syria and Mesopotamia. The geographical division is not arbitrary, for the mountains of Kurdistān and the Zagros range form a natural boundary between Persia and Mesopotamia, which, at least in the earlier centuries of Moḥammadan history, was seldom over-stepped. The Buwayhids indeed combined lower Mesopotamia with their Persian empire, but as a rule a dynasty which ruled in Diyār-Bakr or -Jazīra did not extend its sway beyond the mountains to the east, though it frequently spread into Syria. The first group is not only distinct geographically; it is also an ethnological class. With the exception of the Marwānids, who were Kurds, the dynasties classed in this group were all pure Arabs. The Arab tribes which had migrated from their native deserts northwards into Syria and Mesopotamia had always been a political power with which the Caliphs had to reckon, and on the rapid decay of the central authority at Baghdād the various clans which roamed the Syrian desert and the valley of the Euphrates began to form permanent settlements, to occupy towns and forts, and found dynasties. Thus the Taghlib tribe furnished the *Ḥamdānid* dynasty in -Mōṣil, Aleppo, and other cities;

the Banū Kilāb set the *Mirdāsids* on the throne of Aleppo; the *Banū 'Oḳayl* established their rule in Diyār-Bakr and -Jazīra (Mesopotamia) and part of -'Irāḳ (Chaldaea); and the Banū Asad set up the powerful *Mazyadid* dynasty at -Ḥilla. Yet while they exercised authority over cities, districts, and even whole provinces, these Arab chiefs did not abandon their national life, but for the most part continued to dwell in tents with their tribesmen, and wander as the needs of their flocks or their predatory instincts suggested.

A.H. 317—394 **44. ḤAMDĀNIDS** A.D. 929—1003

(-MŌṢIL, ALEPPO, ETC.)

The Ḥamdānid family, descended from the Arab tribe of Taghlib, had settled in the neighbourhood of -Mōṣil, and Ḥamdān b. Ḥamdūn had taken a prominent part in the political events of that city as early as 873 (*260*). In 894 (*281*) Moḥammad b. Ḥamdān was in possession of Māridīn, but was expelled by the Caliph -Mu'taḍid; in 904 (*292*) Abū-l-Hayjā 'Abd-Allāh b. Ḥamdān was appointed governor of -Mōṣil and its dependencies; and from this time the power of the Ḥamdānids greatly increased. In 919 (*307*) Ibrāhīm b. Ḥamdān was made governor of Diyār-Rabī'a, where he was succeeded by his brother Dāwūd in 921 (*309*); Sa'īd b. Ḥamdān became governor of Nahāwand in 924 (*312*), and several other members of the family received appointments. 'Abd-Allāh made his son -Ḥasan his lieutenant at -Mōṣil, which, with an interval, (*317—319*), the latter held, together with Diyār-Rabī'a, and Diyār-Bakr, until his deposition by his son Abū-Taghlib in 968 (*358*). In 941 (*330*) he was given the title of Nāṣir-*al*-dawla by the Caliph; and at the same time his brother 'Alī was named Sayf-*al*-dawla.

The latter, after governing Wāsiṭ, took Aleppo from the Ikhshīdids in 944 (*333*), and won a great reputation in his wars against the Greeks. The Ḥamdānids were Shī'ites, and Sayf-*al*-dawla paid homage to the Fāṭimid Caliphs. After the deaths of these two brothers, the power of the dynasty rapidly declined. The *Fāṭimids* absorbed the dominions of Sayf-*al*-dawla's grandsons in Syria, and the *Buwayhids* ousted Abū-Taghlib from Mesopotamia in 977–9 (*367–9*). The recovery of -Mōṣil by his brothers -Ḥosayn and Abū-Ṭāhir was but a temporary and brief revival.

I. OF -MŌṢIL

317	Nāṣir-*al*-dawla Abū-Moḥammad -Ḥasan	929
358	'Uddat-*al*-dawla Abū-Taghlib -Ghaḍanfar	968
—369		—979
371	Abū-Ṭāhir Ibrāhīm	981
—380	Abū-'Abd-Allāh -Ḥosayn . . .	—991

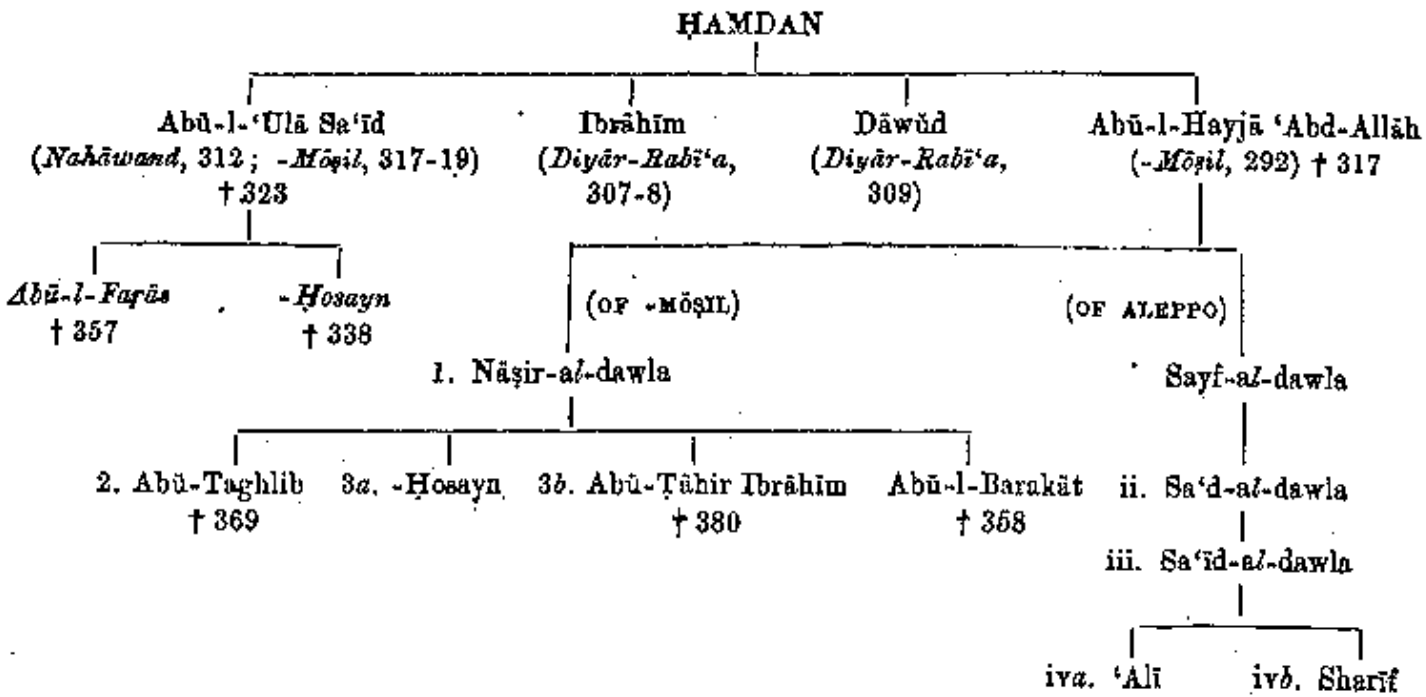
[*Buwayhids, 'Oḳaylids*]

II. OF ALEPPO

333	Sayf-*al*-dawla Abū-l-Ḥasan 'Alī . .	944
356	Sa'd-*al*-dawla Abū-l-Ma'ālī Sharīf .	967
381	Sa'īd-*al*-dawla Abū-l-Faḍā'il Sa'īd .	991
382	Abū-l-Ḥasan 'Alī.	1001
394	Abū-l-Ma'ālī Sharīf	1003

[*Fāṭimids*]

ḤAMDANIDS


ḤAMDAN
Abū-l-'Ulā Sa'īd
(Nahāwand, 312; -Mōṣil, 317-19)
† 323
Ibrāhīm
(Diyār-Rabī'a, 307-8)
Dāwūd
(Diyār-Rabī'a, 309)
Abū-l-Hayjā 'Abd-Allāh
(-Mōṣil, 292) † 317
Abū-l-Faṛās
† 357
-Ḥosayn
† 338
(OF -MŌṢIL)
(OF ALEPPO)
1. Nāṣir-al-dawla
Sayf-al-dawla
2. Abū-Taghlib
† 369
3a. -Ḥosayn
3b. Abū-Ṭāhir Ibrāhīm
† 380
Abū-l-Barakāt
† 358
ii. Sa'd-al-dawla
iii. Sa'īd-al-dawla
iva. 'Alī
ivb. Sharīf

A.H.		A.D.
414—472	45. MIRDĀSIDS	1023—1079

(ALEPPO)

Asad-*al*-dawla Abū-'Alī Ṣāliḥ b. Mirdās, of the Arab tribe of the Banū Kilāb, raided the neighbourhood of Aleppo (Ḥalab) with his Bedouins as early as 1011; and in 1023 (*414*) the inhabitants revolted against the Fāṭimid governor, and delivered the city to Ṣāliḥ, who ruled Aleppo until killed in a battle with the Egyptians in 1029 (*420*). His son Shibl-*al*-dawla Naṣr succeeded him, but was also killed by the Fāṭimid army in 1037 (*429*), and it was not until five years later that another son, Mu'izz-*al*-dawla Tamāl, who had governed -Raḥba, recovered Aleppo from the Egyptians. In 1057 (*449*) Tamāl again abandoned Aleppo to Egypt, whilst his brother 'Aṭīya occupied -Raḥba. This fresh Fāṭimid rule was terminated in 1060 (*452*) by the conquest of the city by Rashīd-*al*-dawla, son of Shibl-*al*-dawla; but he was expelled in the following year by his uncle Mu'izz-*al*-dawla, who died in *454*, and bequeathed Aleppo to his brother 'Aṭīya. Rashīd-*al*-dawla, however, recovered the city in the same year,

and ʿAṭīya seized -Raḳḳa, whence he was expelled by the ʿOḳaylid Muslim b. Ḳuraysh in 1070 (*463*). Rashīd-*al*-dawla was succeeded in *468* by his son Jalāl-*al*-dawla, who took Manbij from the Greeks, and whose brother Sābiḳ (or Shabīb) held Aleppo until its conquest by the ʿOḳaylid Muslim in 1079 (*472*).*

414	Ṣāliḥ b. Mirdās	1023
420	Shibl-*al*-dawla Abū -Kāmil Naṣr . . .	1029
429	*Fāṭimids*	1037
434	Muʿizz-*al*-dawla Abū ʿUlwān Tamāl . .	1042
449	*Fāṭimids*	1057
452	Rashīd-*al*-dawla Maḥmūd	1060
453	Muʿizz-*al*-dawla *restored*	1061
454	Abū-Duʿāba ʿAṭīya	1062
454	Rashīd-*al*-dawla *restored*	1062
468	Jalāl-*al*-dawla (Ṣamṣām-*al*-dawla) Naṣr .	1075
468	Abū-l-Faḍāʾil Sābiḳ	1076
—472		—1079

MIRDĀS

1. Ṣāliḥ

2. Shibl-*al*-dawla — 3. Muʿizz-*al*-dawla — 5. Abū-Duʿāba ʿAṭīya

4. Rashīd-*al*-dawla

6. Jalāl-*al*-dawla — 7. Sābiḳ

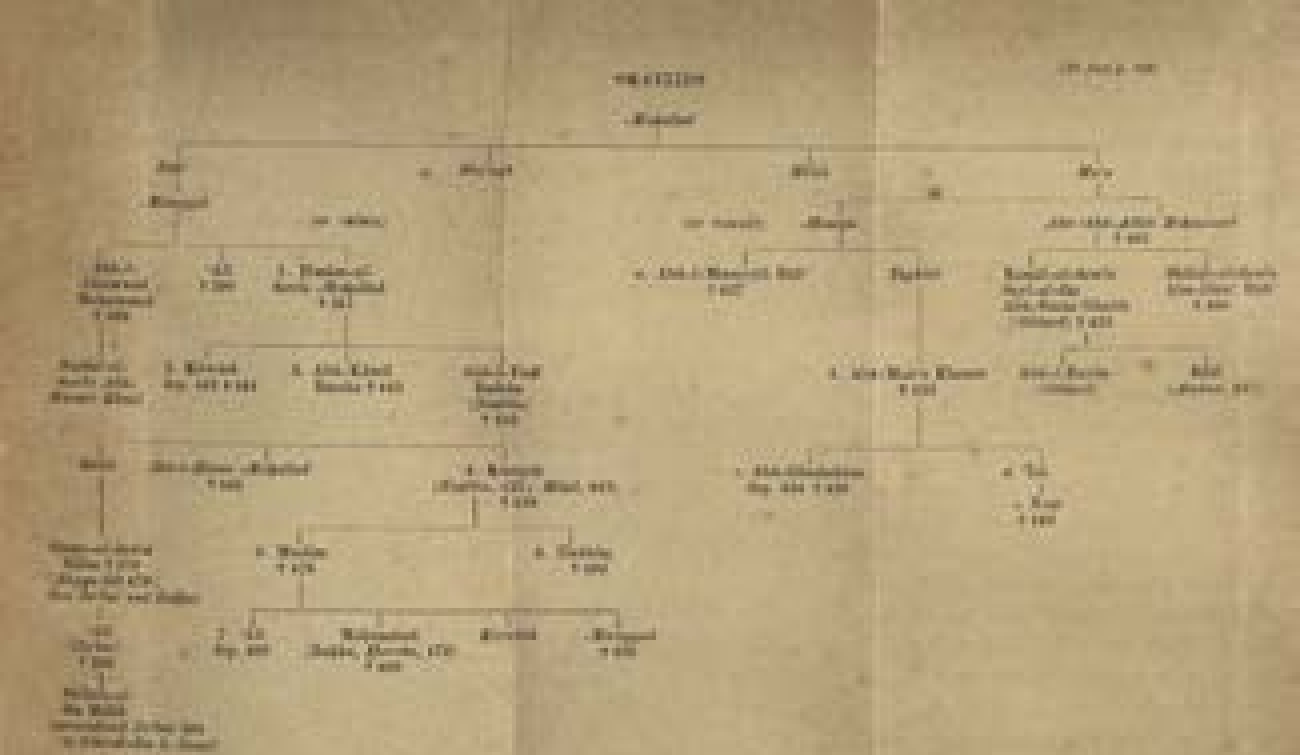
[*ʿOḳaylids*]

* See H. Sauvaire, *A Dinar of Salih ebn Merdas of Alepp* (*Numismatic Chronicle*, 1873).

A.H. 386—489 | 46. 'OḲAYLIDS | A.D. 996—1096

(-MŌṢIL, ETC.)

The Banū 'Oḳayl, or 'Oḳaylids, a very large Arab clan, formed one of the five divisions of the Banū Ka'b, of the Modarite tribes of Arabia; and after their adoption of Islām their sub-clans spread over parts of Syria, -'Irāḳ, and even North Africa and Andalusia. In the early days of the 'Abbāsid Caliphate, -'Irāḳ was full of 'Oḳaylids. The Banū Muntafiḳ, one of their sub-clans, migrated to the marshy country about -Baṣra, called the Baṭīḥa or Baṭā'iḥ ('The Swamps'), under the family of Ma'rūf; the Banū Khafāja for centuries occupied themselves in looting caravans in the deserts of -'Irāḳ, as late as 1327; while the Banū 'Obāda inhabited, with the Banū Muntafiḳ, the country between -Kūfa, Wāsiṭ, and -Baṣra, and eventually furnished the line of 'Oḳaylid princes of -Mōṣil. In the fourth century of the Hijra, the 'Oḳaylids of Syria and -'Irāḳ were tributary to the powerful Arab dynasty of Ḥamdānids, but on the fall of these princes, the 'Oḳaylids attained independent sovereignty. Abū-Dhawwād Moḥammad was granted by the last of the Ḥamdānids the cities of Naṣībīn and Balad in 989 (*379*), to which he added -Mōṣil in *380*, but



was expelled by the Buwayhids in *381*. His brother Muḳallad was more successful; he took -Mōṣil in 996 (*386*), and was confirmed in the government, together with -Kūfa, -Ḳaṣr, and -Jāmi'ān, by Bahā-*al*-dawla the Buwayhid, on condition of tribute; to which were presently added -Anbār, -Madā'in, and Daḳūḳā. In the time of Muslim b. Ḳuraysh, the dominions of the 'Oḳaylid of -Mōṣil extended from the neighbourhood of Baghdād to Aleppo. On his death, the principality speedily decayed in power, and -Mōṣil, its capital, was conquered by a Turkish adventurer, Ḳawām-*al*-dawla Karbuḳā in 1096, (*489*), and merged in the Seljūḳ empire. Other branches, or individual chiefs, of the 'Oḳaylids, who governed various small towns in Syria and Mesopotamia, are indicated in the genealogical table. After the destruction of their power in Mesopotamia the 'Oḳaylids returned to their old camping grounds in -Baḥrayn.

386	Ḥusām-*al*-dawla -Muḳallad	996
391	Mu'tamid-*al*-dawla Ḳirwāsh . . .	1000
442	Za'īm-*al*-dawla Abū-Kāmil Baraka . .	1050
443	'Alam-*al*-dīn Abū-l-Ma'ālī Ḳuraysh . .	1051
453	Sharaf-*al*-dawla Abū-l-Makārim Muslim .	1061
478	Ibrāhīm	1085
486	'Alī	1093
—489	[*Seljūḳs*]	—1096

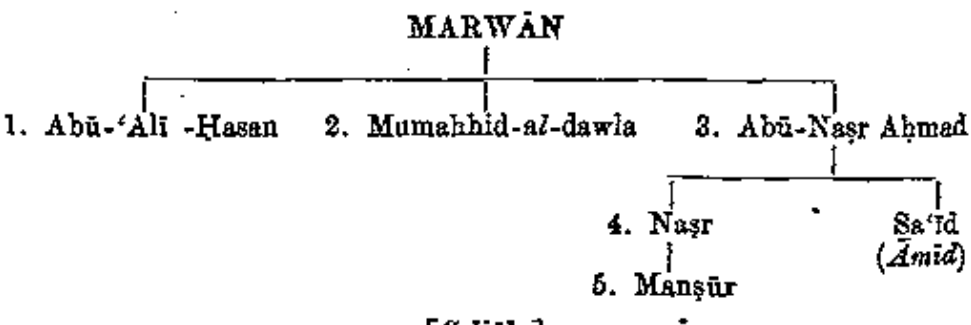
A.H. A.D.

380—489 47. MARWĀNIDS 990—1096

(DIYĀR-BAKR)

On the death of Bād, governor of Ḥiṣn Kayfā, in 990 (*380*) his sister's son, Abū-'Alī b. Marwān, a Kurd by race, succeeded to his dominions, which included the chief towns of Diyār-Bakr, such as Āmid, Arzan, Mayyāfāriḳīn, and Kayfā. His successor paid homage to the Fāṭimid Caliph of Egypt, and was rewarded with the government of Aleppo, as the Caliph's officer, for a time, in succession to the expelled Ḥamdānids. The Marwānids also acknowledged the suzerainty of the Buwayhids; but vanished upon the invasion of the Seljūḳs.

380	Abū-'Alī -Ḥasan	990
387	Mumahhid-*al*-dawla Abū-Manṣūr . .	997
402	Naṣr-*al*-dawla Abū-Naṣr Aḥmad . . .	1011
453	Niẓām-*al*-dawla Naṣr	1061
472	Manṣūr	1079
—489		—1096



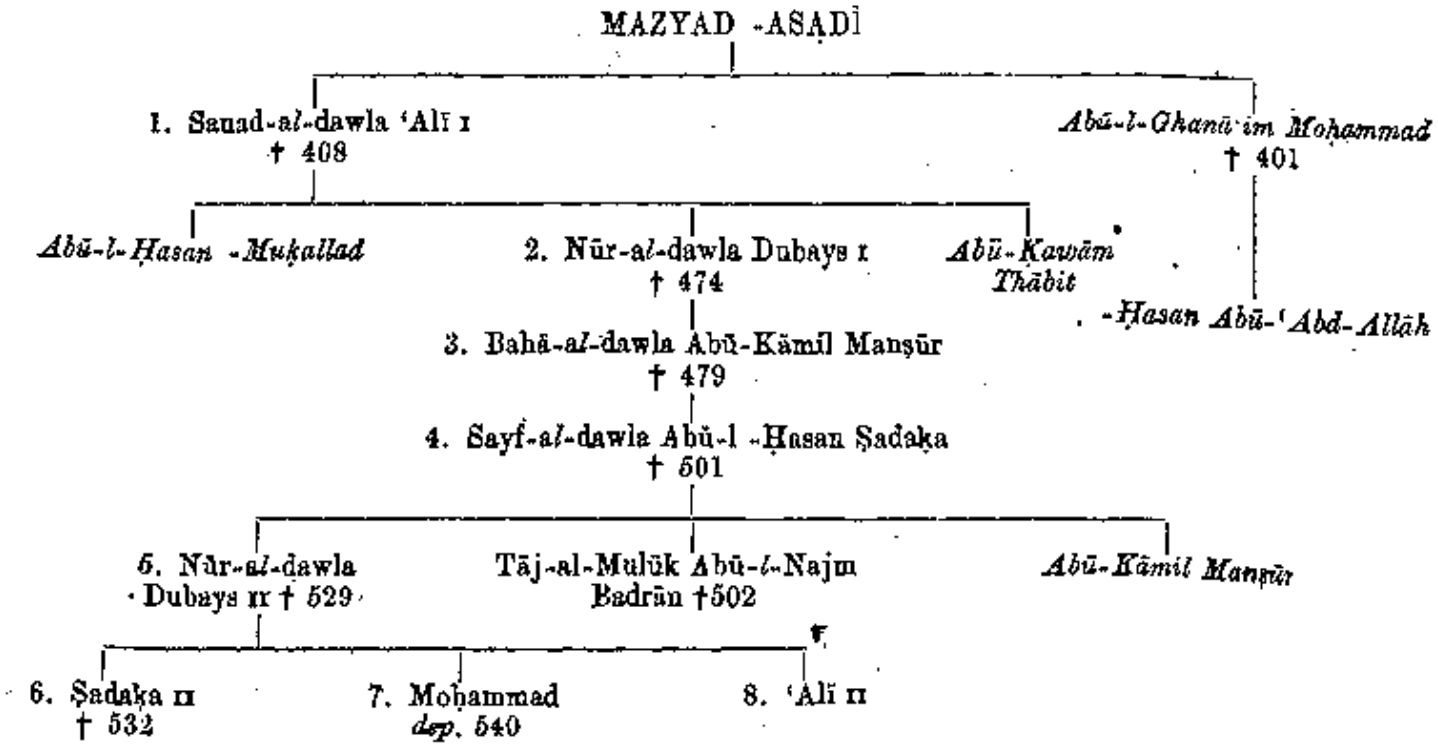
A.H. 403—545 | **48. MAZYADIDS** | A.D. 1012—1150

(-ḤILLA)

The Banū Mazyad, a tribe of the Banū Asad, after leaving Arabia, spread over the deserts to -Ḳādisīya on the left bank of the Tigris. The fourth of the dynasty, Ṣadaḳa, built his new capital of -Ḥilla on the site of the town of -Jāmi'ān in 1101 (*495*), and the beauty of its buildings and extent of its trade were long celebrated. Ṣadaḳa is one of the great heroes of Arab history, extolled by poets and chroniclers. The dynasty declined after his death, and in 1162 (*558*) the Caliph -Mustanjid attacked the tribes of the Banū Asad in -'Irāḳ, and killed 4000 of their fighting men, so that they disappeared from the Euphrates country. The Banū Muntafiḳ of the Baṭīḥa succeeded to part of their territory; the Zangids replaced them in power.

403	Sanad-*al*-dawla 'Alī I	1012
408	Nūr-*al*-dawla Dubays I	1017
*474	Bahā-*al*-dawla Abū-Kāmil Manṣūr	1081
479	Sayf-*al*-dawla Ṣadaḳa I	1086
501	Nūr-*al*-dawla Dubays II	1107
529	Ṣadaḳa II	1134
532	Moḥammad	1137
540	'Alī II	1145
—545		—1150

[*Zangids*]


MAZYAD -ASADĪ
1. Sanad-al-dawla ʿAlī I † 408
Abū-l-Ghanāʾim Moḥammad † 401
Abū-l-Ḥasan -Muḳallad
2. Nūr-al-dawla Dubays I † 474
Abū-Kawām Thābit
-Ḥasan Abū-ʿAbd-Allāh
3. Bahā-al-dawla Abū-Kāmil Manṣūr † 479
4. Sayf-al-dawla Abū-l -Ḥasan Ṣadaḳa † 501
5. Nūr-al-dawla Dubays II † 529
Tāj-al-Mulūk Abū-l-Najm Badrūn †502
Abū-Kāmil Manṣūr
6. Ṣadaḳa II † 532
7. Moḥammad dep. 540
8. ʿAlī II

VII. PERSIA AND TRANSOXIANA

(PERSIAN PERIOD)

SÆC. IX—XI

49. DULAFIDS (KURDISTĀN)

50. SĀJIDS (ĀDHARBĪJĀN)

51. 'ALIDS (ṬABARISTĀN)

52. ṬĀHIRIDS (KHURĀSĀN)

53. ṢAFFĀRIDS (PERSIA)

54. SĀMĀNIDS (TRANSOXIANA AND PERSIA

55. ĪLAK KHĀNS (TURKISTĀN)

56. ZIYĀRIDS (JURJĀN)

57. ḤASANWAYHIDS (KURDISTĀN)

58. BUWAYHIDS (SOUTHERN PERSIA AND 'IRĀḲ)

59. KĀKWAYHIDS (KURDISTĀN)

VII. PERSIA AND TRANSOXIANA

(PERSIAN PERIOD)

SÆC. IX—XI

The following group of dynasties ruling in Persia and the province of *Mā-warā-l-nahr* ('Beyond the River' Oxus), or Transoxiana, up to the inroad of the Seljūḳs, belongs to the period of Persian revival. The Caliph -Ma'mūn, whose mother was a Persian slave, attained to the Caliphate, and dethroned his brother -Amīn, by the aid of Persian troops raised in Khurāsān; his power was maintained by his Persian adherents; and his policy was unlimited conciliation of Persian national aspirations. The result was a revival of Persian influences at the expense of the old Arab polity, and the consequent weakening of the State. The great officers, governors, and generals, in the provinces began to acquire a dangerous degree of power, which -Ma'mūn and his successors in the Caliphate were unable to curb, and various Persian dynasties, professing a merely nominal

dependence upon the Caliphs, sprang up, just as the Arab tribes of Mesopotamia further west asserted their authority against the decrepit Caliphate. Some dynasties, such as the Buwayhids, were not even orthodox, but professed the Shī'ite tenets, which have always been popular in Persia, as they are at this day. Although the period is characteristically Persian, it is not to be assumed that all the dynasts were Persians by race. Abū-Dulaf, for example, was an Arab, Ḥasanwayh a Kurd, whilst the Īlak Khāns were Turks. The chief dynasties, however, were of Persian origin.

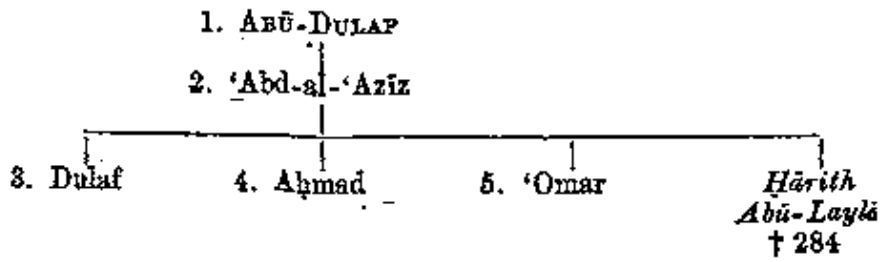
A.H. A.D.

c. 210—*c.* 281 **49. DULAFIDS** *c.* 825—*c.* 898

(KURDISTĀN)

Abū-Dulaf -'Ijlī was an officer of the Caliph -Amīn, and received the government of Hamadhān, in which he was succeeded by his son 'Abd-al-'Azīz and his grandsons. 'Omar b. 'Abd-al-'Azīz increased his dominions by the acquisition of Iṣpahān and Nahāwand in 281. They were succeeded by other governors of the Caliphs.

c. 210	Abū-Dulaf -Ḳāsim b. Idrīs -'Ijlī . . .	*c.* 825
228	'Abd-al-'Azīz	842
260	Dulaf	873
265	Aḥmad	878
280	'Omar	893
—*c.* 285		—*c.* 898



A.H.		A.D.
266—*c.* 318	50. SĀJIDS	879—*c.* 930

(ADHARBĪJAN)

Abū-*l*-Sāj Dīvdād was governor of -Kūfa and -Ahwāz at the time of his death, 879 (*266*). At that date his son Moḥammad was governor of the Hijāz; but was transferred to -Anbār in *269*; and then to Adharbījān in *276*, to which was added Armenia in 898 (*285*). On his death his brother Yūsuf, who had been Wālī of Mecca in 884 (*271*), succeeded to the government of Armenia and Adharbījān, setting aside Moḥammad's son Dīvdād. Yūsuf invaded -Rayy in 918 (*306*) and was imprisoned by the Caliph in the following year, but was restored to his appointments in 922 (*310*). He annexed -Rayy in *311*, and waged war upon the Carmathians. In 931 (*319*) the government of Adharbījān was vested in Muflih, a freedman of Yūsuf's.

266	Abū-*l*-Sāj Dīvdād *died* . . .	879
276	Moḥammad -Afshīn b. Dīvdād .	889
288	Yūsuf b Dīvdād	900
315	Abū-l-Musāfir -Fatḥ b. Moḥammad	927
—*c.* 318		—*c.* 930

A.H.		A.D.
250—316	51. 'ALIDS	864—928

(ṬABARISTĀN)

The branch of 'Alid, or Zaydite, Imāms who ruled at Sa'da in the Yaman has already been noticed (p. 102). Other members of the same family, descendants of either -Ḥasan or -Ḥosayn, the grandsons of the prophet Moḥammad, long maintained their rights to the Imāmate or Caliphate in the provinces bordering the southern shore of the Caspian, Daylam, Ṭabaristān, and Gīlān. A list of merely spiritual pontiffs, or sporadic rebels, is beyond the present purpose, hut in 864 (*250*) the 'Alids gained possession of Ṭabaristān, became a power, struck coins, and held the province for sixty-four years, until expelled hy the *Sāmānids*. After this event, several rival houses of 'Alids continued to maintain themselves in Gīlān and Daylam, and at least one of them, Abū-l-Faḍl Ja'far -Thā'ir fī-llāh, exercised the royal privilege of coinage.

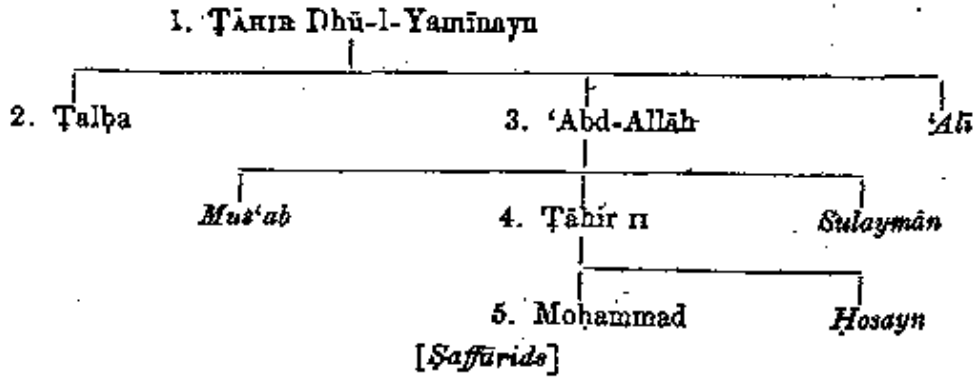
250	-Ḥasan b. Zayd	864
270	Moḥammad b. Zayd	883
287	*Sāmānid government*	900
301	-Nāṣir Ḥasan b. 'Alī -Uṭrūsh . . .	913
304	-Ḥasan b. -Ḳāsim	916
—316		—928

[*Sāmānids*; *Ziyārids*.]

A.H.		A.D.
205—259	52. ṬĀHIRIDS (KHURĀSĀN)	820—872

Ṭāhir Dhū-l-Yamīnayn ('Ambidexter'), the celebrated general of -Ma'mūn, descended from a Persian slave, was appointed by that Caliph to the government of Khurāsān in 820 (*205*), where he and his dynasty became practically independent, though holding their authority by patent of the Caliphs and with express acknowledgment of vassalage. They did not attempt to extend their power much beyond the borders of their province, and after half a century collapsed tamely before the attack of Ya'ḳūb b. Layth the *Ṣaffārid*.

205	Ṭāhir Dhū-l-Yamīnayn	820
207	Ṭalḥa	822
213	'Abd-Allāh	828
230	Ṭāhir II	844
248	Moḥammad	862
—259		—872



A.H.		A.D.
254—290	53. ṢAFFĀRIDS	867—903

(PERSIA)

Ya'ḳūb, the son of -Layth the Ṣaffār ('Coppersmith'), was by a freak of fortune promoted from the leadership of a band of outlaws to a post of trust at the Court of the Caliph's governor of the province of Sijistān (Sīstān, or Nīmrūz), whom he eventually succeeded, sometime before 868 (*255*). By that year he had annexed Herāt and occupied Fārs, including the capital Shīrāz, to which he soon added Balkh and Tukhāristān, and in 872 (*259*) took Khurāsān from the Ṭāhirids. After an expedition in Ṭabaristān, where he defeated Ḥasan b. Zayd the 'Alid, he openly revolted against the Caliph -Mu'tamid, and advanced through Shīrāz and -Ahwāz upon Baghdād; but was routed by the Caliph's brother -Muwaffaḳ, and died in 878 (*265*). His brother and successor 'Amr was confirmed in the governments of Khurāsān, Fārs, Kurdistān, and Sijistān. The Caliph, however, distrusting 'Amr's increasing power, induced Ismā'īl the *Sāmānid* to attack him in 900 (*287*), when the

Ṣaffārid was defeated and made prisoner. His grandson Ṭāhir succeeded him in Sijistān, but, endeavouring to re-establish the power of his house in Fārs, was imprisoned 903 (*290*). Two other members of the family vainly sought to recover its lost territory. In *296* Sijistān was granted to the Sāmānids, but the Ṣaffārids continued for nearly a century to aim at the possession of this province, and several of them succeeded in holding it for a time.*

254	Ya'ḳūb b. -Layth	868
265	'Amr b. -Layth	878
287	Ṭāhir b. Moḥammad b. 'Amr	900
—290		—903

[*Sāmānids*]

* See H. Sauvaire, *Sur un fels Saffâride inédit de la Collection de M. Ch. de l'Écluse* (*Numismatic Chronicle*, 1881) for an account of the later Ṣaffārids of Sijistān.

A.H. A.D.

261—389 **54. SĀMĀNIDS** 874—999

(TRANSOXIANA AND PERSIA)

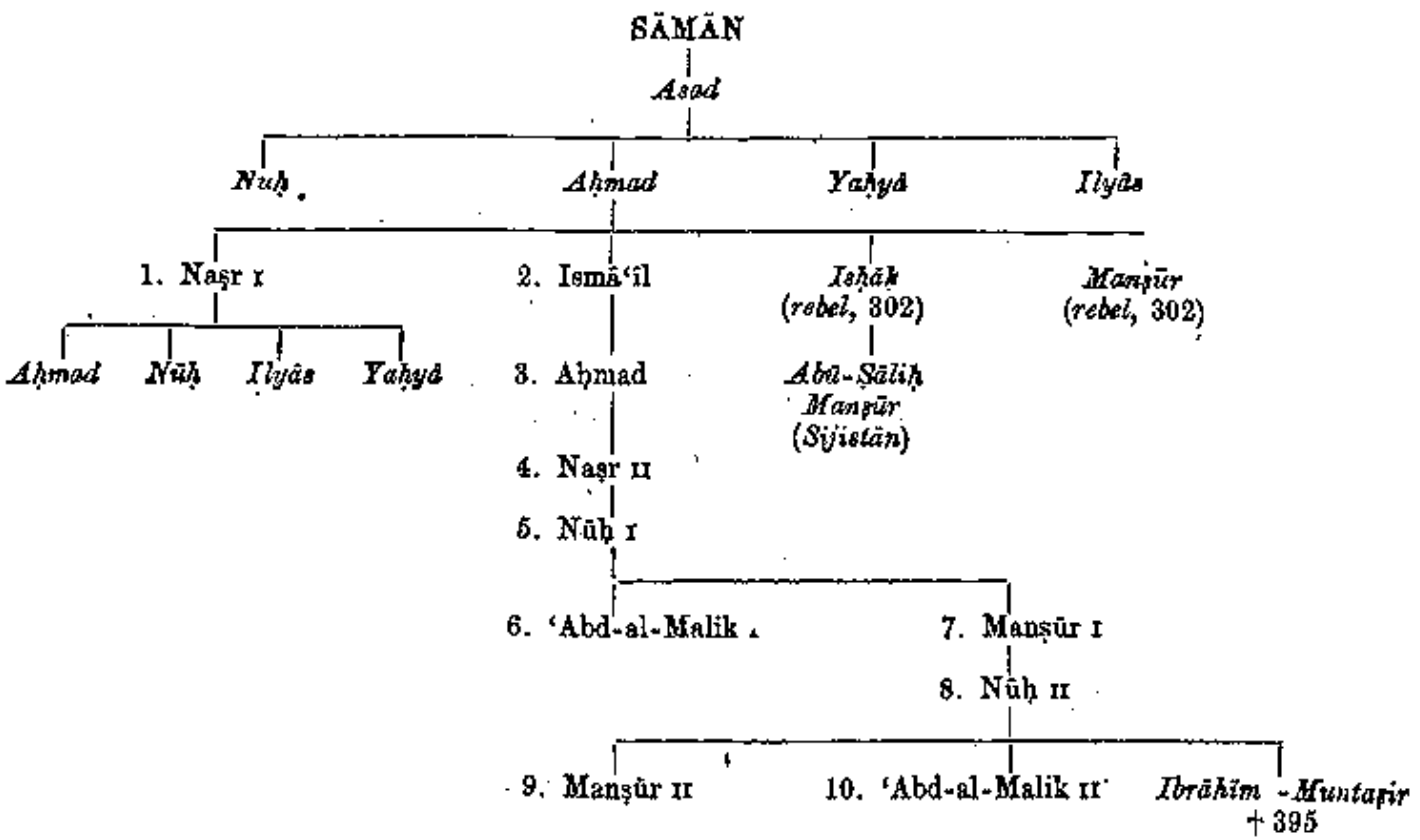
Sāmān, a Persian noble of Balkh, being aided by Asad b. 'Abd-Allāh, the governor of Khurāsān, renounced Zoroastrianism, embraced Islām, and named his son Asad after his protector. Asad's four sons all distinguished themselves in the service of the Caliph -Ma'mūn, and were rewarded about 819 (*204*) with provincial governments: Nūḥ had Samarḳand; Aḥmad, Farghāna; Yaḥyā, -Shāsh; and Ilyās, Herāt. Aḥmad took the lead among his brothers, and not only succeeded Nūḥ at Samarḳand, but incorporated Kāshghar in his dominions. His second son Ismā'īl took Khurāsān from the Ṣaffārids in 903 (*290*), defeated Moḥammad b. Zayd the 'Alid of Ṭabaristān, and brought under his sway the whole territory from the Great Desert to the Persian Gulf, and from the borders of India to near Baghdād. His power was most firmly established in Transoxiana, where Bukhārā and Samarḳand became the centre of civilisation, learning, art, and scholarship for a large part of the Moḥammadan world. His successors were weakened by rebellions in Khurāsān and Sijistān and by the growing power of

the *Buwayhids*. In half a century they were restricted to little more than Transoxiana and Khurāsān, whilst the real power fell more and more into the hands of the Turkish slaves with whom they filled their Court. One of these, Alptigīn, founded the dynasty of the *Ghaznawids*, which in 994 (*384*) succeeded to the Sāmānid territory south of the Oxus. North of the river their power was curtailed by the *Īlak Khāns* of Turkistān, who had acquired the leadership of the Turkish tribes from Farghāna to the borders of China, and after invading Transoxiana and taking Bukhārā in 990 (*380*), finally put an end to the Sāmānid dynasty in 999 (*389*); though Ibrāhīm -Muntaṣir continued to fight for the throne till 1104 (*395*).

A.H.		A.D.
261	Naṣr I b. Aḥmad	874
279	Ismā'īl b. Aḥmad	892
295	Aḥmad b. Ismā'īl	907
301	Naṣr II b. Aḥmad	913
331	Nūḥ I b. Naṣr	942
343	'Abd-al-Malik I b. Nūḥ	954
350	Manṣūr I b. Nūḥ	961
366	Nūḥ II b. Manṣūr	976
387	Manṣūr II b. Nūḥ II	997
389	'Abd-al-Malik II b. Nūḥ II	999

[*Khāns of Turkistān; Ghaznawids*]

SĀMĀNIDS


SĀMĀN
Asad
Nūḥ
Aḥmad
Yaḥyā
Ilyās
1. Naṣr I
2. Ismā'īl
Isḥāḳ (rebel, 302)
Manṣūr (rebel, 302)
Aḥmad
Nūḥ
Ilyās
Yaḥyā
3. Aḥmad
Abū-Ṣāliḥ Manṣūr (Sijistān)
4. Naṣr II
5. Nūḥ I
6. 'Abd-al-Malik I
7. Manṣūr I
8. Nūḥ II
9. Manṣūr II
10. 'Abd-al-Malik II
Ibrāhīm
Muntaṣir
† 395

A.H. A.D.

c. 320—c. 560 **55. ĪLAḴ KHĀNS OF TURKISTĀN** c. 932—c. 1165

The history of these Khāns is very meagrely recorded. They appear to have united the Turkish tribes east of Farghāna under their authority towards the end of the tenth century, when they had already become Muslims. Their capital was at first Kāshghar, but after the conquest of Transoxiana from the Sāmānids in 999 (*389*) Īlak Naṣr ruled his tribesmen, who roamed from the Caspian as far as the borders of China, from Bukhārā. An attempt to seize the provinces south of the Oxus was signally defeated by Maḥmūd of Ghazna in 1007 (*398*), and henceforward the Īlak Khāns were restricted to Transoxiana, Kāshghar, and Eastern Tartary. Under their rule, many tribes established themselves in Transoxiana and were afterwards pressed forward into Persia: such as the celebrated Turkomān tribe of the *Seljūks*. The succession and chronology of the Khāns of Turkistān are exceedingly uncertain, and the following list is merely tentative.*

* From Dorn, *Inventaire des Monnaies de l'Institut des langues orientales du Ministère des Affaires Étrangères*, Appendice (*Petersburg*, 1881).

'Abd-al-Ḳarīm Satuḳ
Mūsā b. Satuḳ
† 383—4 Shihāb-al-dawla Hārūn Bughrā Khān b. Sulaymān
c. 389—400 Abū-l-Ḥosayn Naṣr I b. 'Alī
c. 401—407 Ḳuṭb-al-dawla Abū-Naṣr Aḥmad I b. 'Alī
c. 403—408 Sharaf-al-dīn Ṭughān Khān b. 'Alī
Abū-l-Muẓaffar Arslān Khān I b. 'Alī
† 423 Yūsuf Ḳadr Khān I
c. 421—425 Sharaf-al-dawla Abū-Shujā' Arslān Khān
c. 425—435 Maḥmūd I Bughrā Khān

In the West

Chaghratigīn
c. 440—460 Abū-l-Muẓaffar 'Imād-al-dawla Ibrāhīm Tufghāj or Tafḳāj Khān b. Naṣr
† 472 Shams-al-Mulk Naṣr II b. Tafḳāj
Khiḍr Khān b. Tafḳāj
† 488 Aḥmad Khān II b. Khiḍr
† 490-5 Maḥmūd Khān II
† 495 Ḳādr Khān II b. 'Omar b. Aḥmad
Maḥmūd Arslān Khān III b. Sulaymān
Abū-l-Ma'ālī Ḥasan Tigīn b. 'Alī
Rukn-al-dīn Maḥmūd Khān III b. Arslān
c. 553 Ḳilij Tafghāj Khān b. Moḥammad
Jalāl-al-dīn 'Alī Gūrkān b. Ḥasan Tigīn

In the East.

439—55 Ṭughril Khān b. Yūsuf Ḳadr Khān
455 Tigbril Tigīn b. Ṭughril
455?—496 Hārūn Bughrā Khān b. Yūsuf Ḳadr Khān
Nūr-al-dawla Aḥmad b. Arslān Khān

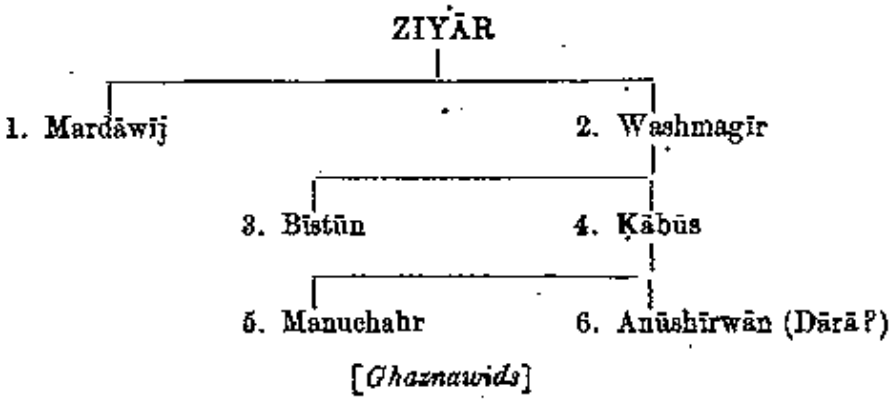
A.H.		A.D.
316—434	56. ZIYĀRIDS	928—1042

(JURJĀN)

The southern shore of the Caspian had never been well affected to the Caliphate, and the followers of 'Alī had repeatedly established their heterodox power in these regions (see p. 127); nor were the Sāmānids more successful than the Caliphs in maintaining their authority there. Taking advantage of this, Mardāwīj b. Ziyār, descended from a long line of princes, made himself independent in Ṭabaristān and Jurjān, and even occupied Iṣpahān and Hamadhān, and pushed his forces as far as Ḥulwān, on the Mesopotamian frontier, between the years 928—931 (*316—319*). He was the patron of the Buwayhids, and gave 'Alī b. Buwayh his first appointment as governor of Karaj. Mardāwīj held his dominions as titular vassal of the 'Abbāsid Caliph: his brother and successor Washmagīr paid nominal homage to the Sāmānids as well. After the rise of the *Buwayhids* in 932 (*320*), the authority of the Ziyārids scarcely extended beyond the borders of Jurjān and Ṭabaristān;

and Ḳābūs was even exiled for 18 years (*371—389*) by the Buwayhid Mu'ayyid-*al*-dawla. On his return, however, he recovered Gīlān as well as his former provinces, in which his sons succeeded him, until dispossessed by the *Ghaznawids*.

316	Mardāwīj b. Ziyār	928
323	Ẓahīr-*al*-dawla Abū-Manṣūr Washmagīr .	935
356	Bīstūn	967
366	Shams-al-Ma'ālī Ḳābūs	976
403	Fulak-al-Ma'ālī Manuchahr	1012
420	Anūshīrwān (Dārā?)	1029
—434		—1042



H. A.D.

c. 348—406 **57. ḤASANWAYHIDS** c. 959—1015

(KURDISTĀN)

Ḥasanwayh b. -Ḥosayn -Barzikānī was the chief of one of the Kurdish tribes, which, like the Marwānids, began to make themselves prominent in the tenth century; before the middle of which he had possessed himself of a large part of Kurdistān, including the towns of Dīnawār, Hamadhān, Nahāwand, the fortress of Sarmāj, etc. His power was so considerable that the Buwayhids did not disturb him, and at his death 'Aḍud-*al*-dawla of that dynasty, after annexing his dominions, appointed Badr b. Ḥasanwayh as governor over his late father's province. Badr still further enhanced the dignity and authority of his family, and was decorated by the Caliph with the title of Nāṣir-*al*-dawla. His grandson Zāhir, who succeeded him in 1014 (*405*), only kept his position for a year, after which he was expelled by Shams-*al*-dawla the *Buwayhid*, and was shortly afterwards killed.

c. 348	Ḥasanwayh b. -Ḥosayn	c. 959
369	Nāṣir-*al*-dīn Abū-*l*-Najm Badr b. Ḥasanwayh	979
405	Zāhir b. Hilāl († 405) b. Badr . . .	1014
—406		—1015

A.H. A.D.
320—447 58. BUWAYHIDS 932—1055
(SOUTHERN PERSIA AND 'IRĀḲ)

Buwayh, reputed to be a descendant of the ancient Kings of Persia, was the chief of a warlike clan of the highlanders of Daylam, and like most of his countrymen had taken part in the frequent wars which disturbed the provinces bordering on the Caspian. Like them, also, he had transferred his services from the Sāmānids to the rising chieftain Mardāwīj the Ziyārid about 930 (*318*), and his eldest son 'Alī ('Imād-*al*-dawla) had been granted by Mardāwīj the government of Karaj. 'Alī, with the help of troops from Daylam and Gīlān, soon extended his authority southwards, occupied Iṣpahān for a time, and annexed Arrajān 932 (*320*) and Nubandijān (*321*), whilst his brother Ḥasan (Rukn-*al*-dawla) drove the Arab garrison out of Kāzirūn. The two brothers then pushed on to the eastward, and joined by the third, Aḥmad (Mu'izz-*al*-dawla), seized Shīrāz (*322*). The Caliph was forced to recognize them as his lieutenants, and when Mu'izz-*al*-dawla, working his way westward from Kirmān,

and reducing the province of -Ahwāz (or Khūzistān), entered Baghdād itself in 945 (*334*), the Caliph -Mustakfī not only bestowed the honorific titles of 'Imād, Rukn, and Mu'izz *al*-dawla on the three brethren, but granted Mu'izz the rank and style of *Amīr-al-Umarā*, or Premier Noble, a dignity which was held by many subsequent members of the family. It is a mistake to say that they were ever given the title of *Sulṭān*, for they never styled themselves so on their coinage, but used the titles *Amīr* and *Malik*. Their authority, nevertheless, was as absolute as any Sulṭān's in Baghdād, and the Caliphs were their abject puppets, though treated with outward homage, in spite of the Buwayhids' Shī'ite proclivities. How the brothers and their descendants divided Persia and -'Irāḳ among themselves is shown in the following tables, as well as the intricate history of the dynasty permits. Division among the princes encouraged aggression, and the wide dominions of the Buwayhids fell peacemeal to the *Ghaznawids*, *Kākwayhids*, and *Seljūks*.

I. OF FĀRS

320	'Imād-*al*-dawla Abū-l-Ḥasan 'Alī . .	932
338*	'Aḍud-*al*-dawla Abū-Shujā' Khusrū . .	949
372*	Sharaf-*al*-dawla Abū-l-Fawāris Shīr Zayd .	982
379	Ṣamṣām-*al*-dawla Abū-Kālinjār -Marzubān .	989
388*	*Bahā-al-dawla* (of -'Irāḳ)	998
403*	Sulṭān-*al*-dawla Abū-Shujā' . . .	1012
415*	'Imād-*al*-dīn Abū-Kālinjār -Marzubān .	1024
440*	Abū-Naṣr Khusrū Fīrūz -Raḥīm . . .	1048
—447		—1055

* Also ruling -'Irāḳ, etc., see next list.

II. OF -'IRĀḲ, -AHWĀZ, AND KIRMĀN

320	Mu'izz-*al*-dawla Abū-l-Ḥosayn Aḥmad. .	932
356	'Izz-*al*-dawla Bakhtiyār	967
367	*Aḍud-al-dawla (of Fārs)*	977
372	*Sharaf-al-dawla (of Fārs)*	982
379	Bahā-*al*-dawla Abū-Naṣr Fīrūz . . .	989
403	*Sulṭān-al-dawla (of Fārs)*	1012

DIVIDED PROVINCES:

-'IRĀḲ

411	Musharrif-*al*-dawla	1020
416	Jalāl-*al*-dawla	1025
435	*'Imad-al-dīn (of Fārs)*	1043
440	*Abū-Naṣr Khusrū Fīrūz (of Fārs)* . .	1048
—447		—1055

KIRMĀN

403	Ḳawām-*al*-dawla Abū-l-Fawāris . . .	1012
419	*'Imād-al-dīn (of Fārs)*	1028
440	Abū-Manṣūr Fullād Sattūn	1048
—448		—1056

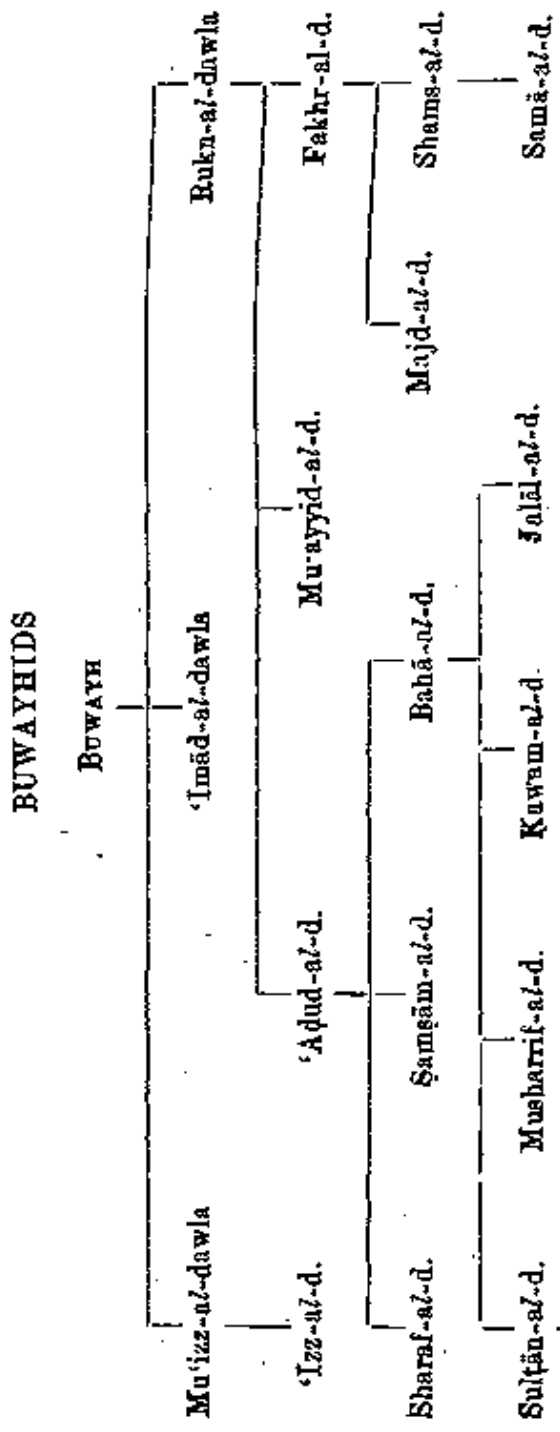
III. OF -RAYY, HAMADHĀN, AND IṢPAHĀN

320	Ruḳn-*al*-dawla Abū-'Alī Ḥasan	932
366-	Mu'ayyid-*al*-dawla Abū-Manṣūr (*Iṣpahān only*)	976
—373		—983
366	Fakhr-*al*-dawla Abū-l-Ḥasan 'Alī (*adding Iṣpahān* 373)	976
387	Majd-*al*-dawla Abū-Ṭālib Rustam (*deposed by Maḥmūd of Ghazna*)	997
—420		—1029
387	Shams-*al*-dawla Abū-Ṭāhir (*Hamadhān only*)	997
c. 412	Samā-*al*-dawla Abū-l-Ḥasan (*deposed by Ibn-Kākwayh*)	*c.* 1021
—414		—1023

[*Kākwayhids; Ghaznawids; Seljūḳs*]

GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION OF THE BUWAYHIDS

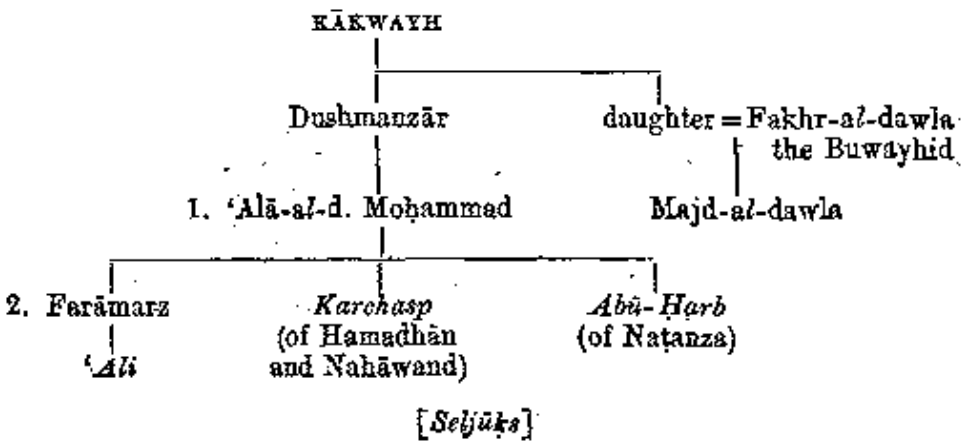
FĀRS	KIRMĀN, ʿAHWAZ, ʿIRĀḲ	-RAYY, HAMADHĀN	IṢPAHAN
320 ʿImād-*al*-dawla	320. Muʿizz-*al*-dawla	320 Rukn-*al*-dawla	
338 ʿAḍud-*al*-dawla			
	356 ʿIzz-*al*-dawla		
	367 (ʿAḍud)	366 Fakhr-*al*-dawla	366 Murayyid-*al*-dawla
372 Sharaf-*al*-dawla		373	
379 Samsām-*al*-dawla	379 Bahā-*al*-dawla		
388 (Bahā)		387 Shams-*al*-dawla	387 Majd-*al*-dawla
403 Sulṭān-*al*-dawla	(KIRMĀN) 403 Ḳawām-*al*-d.		398 (*Kākwayhids*)
	411 Musharrif-*al*-d.	412 Samā-*al*-dawla	
415 ʿImād-*al*-dīn	416 Jalāl-*al*-d.	414 (*Kākwayhids*)	420 (*Ghaznawids*)
	419 (ʿImād)		
	435		
440 Khusrū Fīrūz —447 (*Seljūḳs*)	440 Fullād — Sattūn 448		


BUWAYHIDS
Buwayh
'Imād-al-dawla
Rukn-al-dawla
Mu'izz-al-dawla
'Aḍud-al-d.
Mu'ayyid-al-d.
Fakhr-al-d.
'Izz-al-d.
Ṣamṣām-al-d.
Bahā-al-d.
Majd-al-d.
Shams-al-d.
Sharaf-al-d.
Kuwām-al-d.
Jalāl-al-d.
Samā-al-d.
Sulṭān-al-d.
Musharrif-al-d.
'Imād-al-dīn
Fullād Sutūn
Abū-'Alī Khusrū
Khusrū Fīrūz

A.H.		A.D.
398—443	59. KĀKWAYHIDS (KURDISTĀN)	1007—1051

Moḥammad b. Dushmanzār, known as Ibn-Kākwayh, was first cousin to Majd-*al*-dawla the Buwayhid, of Hamadhān, whose dominions he annexed by the deposition of Samā-*al*-dawla in 1023 (*414*). He had previously taken Iṣpahān in 1007 (*398*). The family continued to rule in Iṣpahān, Hamadhān, Yazd, Nahāwand, etc., until their conquest by the *Seljūḳ* Ṭughril Beg in 1051 (*443*).

A.H.		A.D.
398	ʿAlā-*al*-dawla Abū-Jaʿfar Moḥammad	1007
433	Ẓahīr-*al*-dīn Abū-Manṣūr Farāmarz	1041
—443		—1051



VIII. THE SELJŪḲS

SÆC. XI—XII

60. A GREAT SELJŪḲS OF PERSIA

B SELJŪḲS OF KIRMĀN

C SELJŪḲS OF SYRIA

D SELJŪḲS OF -'IRĀḲ

E SELJŪḲS OF -RŪM

60A. DĀNISHMANDIDS (CAPPADOCIA)

A.H. A.D.

429—700 **60. THE SELJŪḲS** 1037—1300

(WESTERN ASIA)

The advent of the Seljūḳian Turks forms a notable epoch in Moḥammadan history. At the time of their appearance the Empire of the Caliphate had vanished. What had once been a realm united under a sole Moḥammadan ruler was now a collection of scattered dynasties, not one of which, save perhaps the Fāṭimids of Egypt (and they were schismatics) was capable of imperial sway. Spain and Africa, including the important province of Egypt, had long been lost to the Caliphs of Baghdād; northern Syria and Mesopotamia were in the hands of turbulent Arab chiefs, some of whom had founded dynasties; Persia was split up into the numerous governments of the Buwayhid princes (whose Shī'ite opinions left little respect for the puppet Caliphs of their time), or was held by sundry insignificant dynasts, each ready to attack the other and thus contribute to the general weakness. The prevalence of

schism increased the disunion of the various provinces of the vanished Empire. A drastic remedy was needed, and it was found in the invasion of the Turks. These rude nomads, unspoilt by town life and civilised indifference to religion, embraced Islām with all the fervour of their uncouth souls. They came to the rescue of a dying State, and revived it. They swarmed over Persia, Mesopotamia, Syria, and Asia Minor, devastating the country, and exterminating every dynasty that existed there; and, as the result, they once more reunited Moḥammadan Asia, from the western frontier of Afghānistān to the Mediterranean, under one sovereign; they put a new life into the expiring zeal of the Muslims, drove back the re-encroaching Byzantines, and bred up a generation of fanatical Moḥammadan warriors, to whom, more than to anything else, the Crusaders owed their repeated failure. This it is that gives the Seljūḳs so important a place in Moḥammadan history.

The Seljūḳs, or Saljūḳids, were the descendants of Seljūḳ b. Yakāk, a Turkomān chieftain in the service of one of the Khāns of Turkistān. Seljūḳ migrated from the Kirghiz steppes with all his clan to Jand in the province of Bukhārā, where he and his people enthusiastically

embraced Islām. He and his sons and grandsons took part in the wars between the Sāmānids, the Ilak Khāns, and Maḥmūd of Ghazna, and the brothers Ṭughril Beg and Chagar Beg eventually became strong enough to venture upon the invasion of Khurāsān at the head of their wild Turkomān tribes, and after several victories over the Ghaznawid armies succeeded in taking the chief cities. In 1037 (*429*) the public prayer was said in the name of Chagar Beg Dāwūd, 'King of Kings,' in the mosques of Merv, while his brother Ṭughril Beg was similarly proclaimed in Nayshāpūr. Balkh, Jurjān, Ṭabaristān, and Khwārizm were speedily annexed; the Jibāl, Hamadhān, Dīnawār, Ḥulwān, -Rayy, and Iṣpahān followed (*433—7*), and in 1055 (*447*) Ṭughril Beg entered Baghdād itself, and had his name proclaimed as Sulṭān in the city of the Caliph.

Other Turkish tribes came to swell their armies, and the whole of western Asia, from the borders of Afghānistān to the frontier of the Greek Empire in Asia Minor and of the Fāṭimid Caliphate of Egypt, became united under the rule of the Seljūḳs before 1077 (*470*).

Ṭughril Beg, Alp-Arslān, and Malik Shāh held supreme sway over the whole of this vast Empire, but after the

death of the last, civil war sprang up between the brothers Bargiyāruḳ and Moḥammad, and separate branches of the Seljūḳ family attained virtual independence in different parts of the widely scattered dominions, although the main line still preserved a nominal suzerainty down to the death of Sinjar, the last 'Great Seljūḳ' (whose rule was almost confined to Khurāsān) in 1157 (*552*). The Seljūḳs of Kirmān, of -'Irāḳ, of Syria, and of -Rūm or Asia Minor, were the chief sub-divisions of the family, but individual members of it ruled in Adhārbījān, Tukhāristān, and other provinces. In the East, the Seljūḳ empire succumbed before the attack of the Khwārizm Shāh; in Adharbījān, Fārs, Mesopotamia, and Diyār-Bakr it was supplanted by dynasties founded by Seljūḳ officers, or Atābegs, but in -Rūm it survived until the beginning of the power of the 'Othmānlī Turks in 1300.

A.H.		A.D.
429—552	**A. GREAT SELJŪḲS**	1037—1157
429	Rukn-*al*-dīn Abū-Ṭālib Ṭughril Beg . .	1037
455	'Aḍud-*al*-dīn Abū-Shujā' Alp-Arslān . .	1063
465	Jalāl-*al*-dīn Abū-l-Fatḥ Malik Shāh . .	1072
485	Nāṣir-*al*-dīn Maḥmād	1092
487	Rukn-*al*-dīn Abū-l-Muẓaffar Bargiyāruḳ .	1094
498	Malik Shāh II	1104
498*	Ghiyāth-*al*-dīn Abū-Shujā' Moḥammad .	1104
511†	Mu'izz-*al*-dīn Abū-l-Ḥārith Sinjar . .	1117
—552		—1157

[*Shāhs of Khwārizm*]

433—583	**B. SELJŪḲS OF KIRMĀN**	1041—1187
433	'Imād-*al*-dīn Ḳarā-Arslān Ḳāward Beg .	1041
465	Kirmān Shāh	1072
467	Ḥosayn	1074
467	Rukn-*al*-dīn Sulṭān Shāh	1074
477	Tūrān Shāh	1084
490	Irān Shāh	1097
494	Arslān Shāh	1100
536	Mughīth-*al*-dīn Moḥammad I . . .	1141
551	Muḥyī-*al*-dīn Ṭughril Shāh	1156
563	Bahrām Shāh Arslān II Shāh Turkān Shāh (rivals)	1167
583	Moḥammad II	1187

[*Ghuzz Turkomāns*]

* Moḥammad had been at open war with Bargiyāruḳ for many years before the latter's death.

† Sinjar had been governor of Khurāsān for twenty years before his accession as Great Seljūḳ.

A.H.		A.D.
487—511	C. SELJŪḲS OF SYRIA	1094—1117
487	Tutush b. Alp-Aralān	1094
488	Riḍwān b. Tutush (*at Aleppo*)	1095
	(Duḳāḳ b Tutush *at Damascus* 488–497)	
507	Alp-Arslān -Akhras b. Riḍwān	1113
508	Sulṭān Shāh b. Riḍwān	1114
—511		—111

[*Būrids, Ortuḳids*]

A.H.		A.D.
511—590	D. SELJŪḲS OF -'IRĀḲ AND KURDISTĀN	1117—1194
511	Mughīth-*al*-dīn Maḥmūd	1117
526	Ghiyāth-*al*-dīn Dāwūd	1131
526	Ṭughril I	1132
527	Ghiyāth-*al*-dīn Mas'ūd	1133
547	Mu'īn-*al*-dīn Malik Shāh	1152
548	Moḥammad	1153
554	Sulaymān Shāh	1159
556	Arslān Shāh	1161
573	Ṭughril II	1177
—590		—119

[*Shāhs of Khwārizm*]

A.H.		A.D.
470—700	E. SELJŪḲS OF -RŪM (ASIA MINOR)	1077—1300
470	Sulaymān I b. Ḳuṭlumiah	1077
479	*Interregnum*	1086
485	Ḳilij-Arslān Dāwūd	1092
500	Malik Shāh I	1106
510	Mas'ūd I	1116
551*	'Izz-al-dīn Ḳilij-Arslān II	1156
584	Ḳuṭb-al-dīn Malik Shāh II	1188
588	Ghiyāth-al-dīn Kay-Khusrū I	1192
597	Rukn-al-dīn Sulaymān II	1200
600	Ḳilij-Arslān III	1203
601	Kay-Khusrū I *restored*	1204
607	'Izz-al-dīn Kay-Kāwus I	1210
616	'Alā-al-dīn Kay-Ḳubād I	1219
634	Ghiyāth-al-dīn Kay-Khusrū II	1236
643	'Izz-al-dīn Kay-Kāwus II†	1245
655	Rukn-al-dīn Ḳilij-Arslān IV	1257
666	Ghiyāth-al-dīn Kay-Khusrū III	1267
682	Ghiyāth-al-dīn Mas'ūd II‡	1283
696	'Alā-al-dīn Kay-Ḳubād II	1296
—700		—1300

[*Mongols, 'Othmānlī Turks, etc.*]

Ḳilij-Arslān survived till 588, but divided his dominions among his sons some years earlier.

† In conjunction with his brothers Ḳilij-Arslān III and Kay-Ḳubād.

‡ Mas'ūd was allowed by the Mongol Abāgā to govern Sīwās, Arzanjān and Erzerūm, from the death of his father Kay-Kāwus in 677, during the nominal sovereignty of his cousin Kay-Khusrū III, whom he succeeded in 682. Mas'ūd appears to have been restored to his kingdom on the deposition of his nephew Kay-Ḳubād in 700, and to have reigned for four years; but the last four Seljūḳs were merely governors under the Mongols of Persia.

A.H. A.D.

c 490—560 60A. DĀNISHMANDIDS *c* 1097—1165

(SĪWĀS, CAESAREA, MALATĪA)

Whilst the Seljūḳs were extending their empire in Asia Minor, another Turkish chief, Gumishtigīn, son of Dānishmand, established his power in Cappodocia over the cities of Sīwās (Sebaste), Ḳayṣarīya (Caesarea), and Malaṭīya (Melitene), near which last place he inflicted a sanguinary defeat upon the Franks. His successors played a distinguished part in the wars of the Crusades, but the dynasty was soon absorbed in its greater Seljūḳ neighbour.

A.H.		A.D.
	Moḥammad I Gumishtigīn b. Tilū Dānishmand	
499	Ghāzī b. Gumishtigīn	1105
529	Moḥammad II. b. Ghāzī	1134
537	Dhū-*l*-Nūn b. Moḥammad II . . .	1142
	Yaghi (*or* Ya'ḳūb) Arslān b. Ghāzī	
560	Ibrāhīm b. Moḥammad II	1165

[*Seljūḳs of Rūm*]

IX. THE ATĀBEGS

(SELJŪḲ OFFICERS)

SÆC. XII—XIII

61. BŪRIDS ATĀBEGS OF DAMASCUS

62. A ZANGIDS „ „ -MŌṢIL

B „ „ „ ALEPPO

C „ „ „ SINJĀR

D „ „ „ -JAZĪRA

63. BEGTIGĪNIDS „ „ ARBELA

64. A ORTUḲIDS OF KAYFĀ

B „ „ MĀRIDĪN

65. SHĀHS OF ARMENIA

66. ATĀBEGS OF ADHARBĪJĀN

67. SALGHARIDS, ATĀBEGS OF FĀRIS

68. HAZĀRASPIDS, ATĀBEGS OF LŪRISTĀN

69. SHĀHS OF KHWĀRIZM

70. ḲUTLUGH KHĀNS OF KIRMĀN

IX. THE ATÂBEGS

(SELJŪḲ OFFICERS)

SÆC. XII—XIII

The Seljūḳ Empire was a military power, and the army on which it depended was commanded by Turkish slaves. Free men could not be trusted with the highest commands or the rule of distant provinces; it was necessary to rely on the fidelity of purchased slaves brought up at the court in close relations with the Seljūḳ princes. Every Seljūḳ had a following of mamlūks, generally brought from Kipchak, who filled the chief offices of the court and camp, and eventually won their manumission by hard service. The inevitable result of this system was the supplanting of the senile master by the virile slave. As the Seljūḳs grew weak and their empire broke up into sub-divisions, their mamlūks, who had fought their battles for them, became the guardians or regents (Atābegs) of their youthful heirs,

and speedily exchanged the delegated function for the privileges of sovereignty. In this way Ṭughtigīn, a mamlūk of the Seljūḳ Tutush, was appointed Atābeg over his youthful heir Duḳāḳ, and on his death assumed full sovereign powers at Damascus. 'Imād-*al*-dīn Zangī, founder of the Atābegs of -Mōṣil and Aleppo, etc., was the son of a slave of the third Seljūḳ Sulṭān Malik Shāh; the Adharbījān Atābegs sprang from a Kipchak mamlūk of Mas'ūd the Seljūḳ Sulṭān of -'Irāḳ; Anushtigīn, ancestor of the Khwārizm Shāhs, was cupbearer to Sulṭān Malik Shāh; Ortuḳ and Salghar, founders of dynasties in Diyār-Bakr and Fārs, were Seljūḳ officers; and the Begtigīnids, Hazāraspids, and Ḳutlugh Khāns were officers of the slaves of the Seljūḳs. In the twelfth century the whole Seljūḳ empire, save Anatolia, was in the hands of these captains of their hosts, who form a distinct group of dynasties.

A.H. 497—549 **61. BŪRIDS** A.D. 1103—1154

(ATĀBEGS OF DAMASCUS)

Ṭughtigīn—one of the numerous officers who held command in the Seljūḳ armies, became Atābegs or regents of the younger Seljūḳ princes, and eventually usurped their power—was an enfranchised mamlūk of Sulṭān Tutush, and afterwards, 1095 (*488*), was appointed Atābeg of his son Duḳāḳ, the Seljūḳ prince of Damascus, whom he succeeded.

A.H.		A.D.
497	Sayf-al-Islām Ẓahīr-*al*-dīn Ṭughtigīn . .	1103
522	Tāj-al-Mulūk Būrī	1128
526	Shams-al-Mulūk Ismā'īl	1132
529	Shihāb-*al*-dīn Maḥmūd	1134
533	Jamāl-*al* dīn Moḥammad	1138
534	Mujīr-*al*-dīn Abaḳ (or Anaz, † 564) . .	1139
—549		—1154

[*Zangids*]

1. Ṭughtigīn
   - 2. Būrī
   - 3. Ismā'īl
   - 4. Maḥmūd
   - 5. Moḥammad
     - 6. Abaḳ

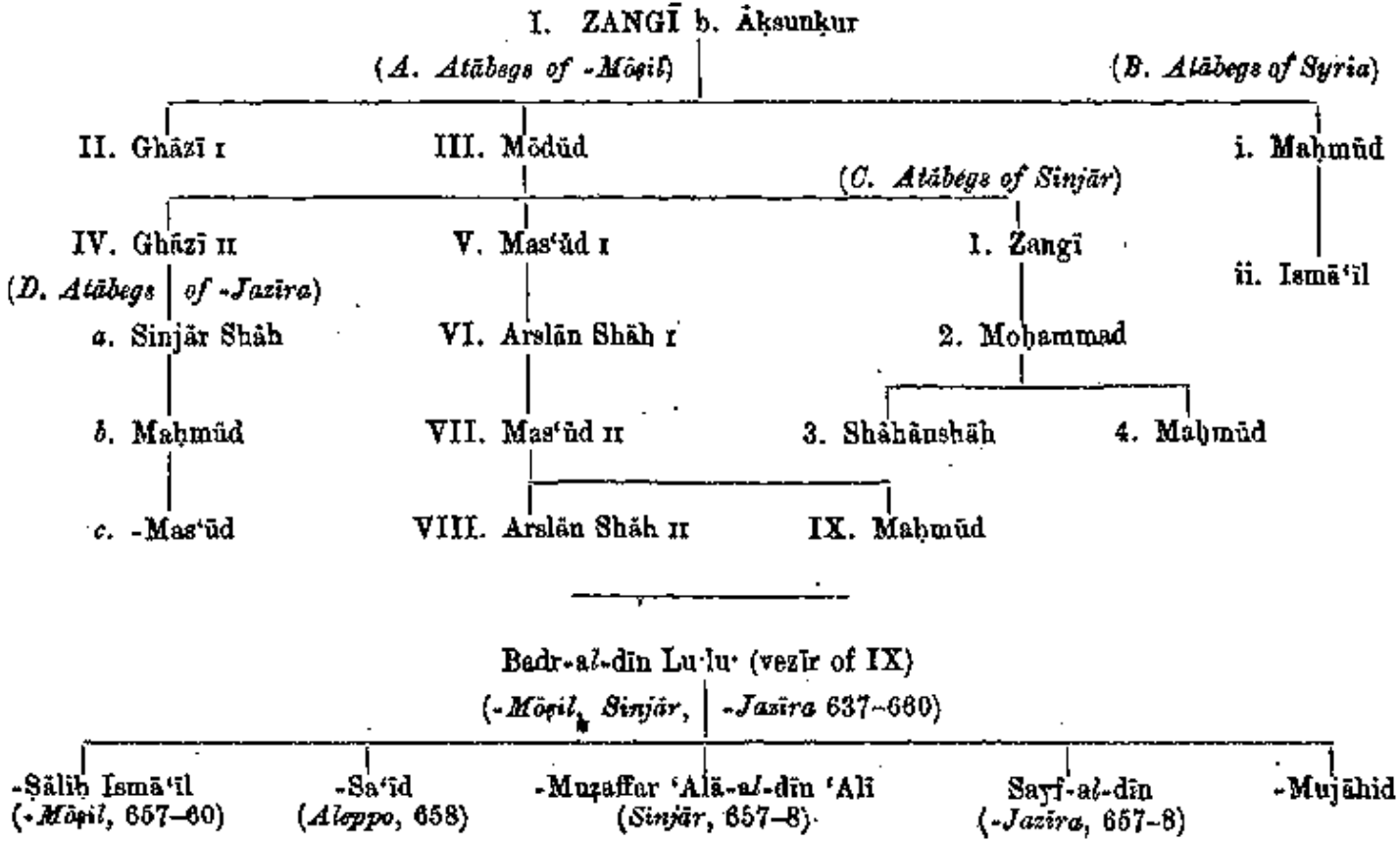
A.H. 521—643 | 62. ZANGIDS | A.D. 1127—1250

(ATĀBEGS OF MESOPOTAMIA AND SYRIA)

The Atābeg 'Imād-*al*-dīn Zangī was the son of Āḳsunḳur the Ḥājib (chamberlain), a Turkish slave of Malik Shāh, and from 1085 to 1094 (*478–487*) lieutenant of Tutush at Aleppo, against whom he rebelled, and was slain. Zangī was appointed governor of -'Irāḳ, including Baghdād, in 1127 (*521*), and in the same year annexed -Mōṣil, Sinjār, -Jazīra and Ḥarrān, and then Aleppo (*522*) and other Syrian cities. He especially distinguished himself as the champion of the Muslims against the Crusaders, and was the true forerunner of Saladin. On his death his dominions were divided between his sons Nūr-*al*-dīn Maḥmūd, another famous anti-crusader, who held Syria, and Sayf-*al*-dīn Ghāzī, who ruled in -Mōṣil and Mesopotamia. In the next generation the Syrian branch died out; but a new offshoot had been established at Sinjār; whilst a fourth sub-dynasty sprang up somewhat later at -Jazīra. The Sinjār line gave place to the Ayyūbids in 1221 (*618*); the others came under the rule of Lu-lu-, the slave and vezīr of the last of the -Mōṣil Zangids, until all were absorbed in the empire of the *Mongols*.

A.H.		A.D.
21—631	**A. ATĀBEGS OF -MŌṢIL**	1127—1234
521	ʿImād-*al*-dīn Zangī (*with Aleppo*)	1127
541	Sayf-*al*-dīn Ghāzī I	1146
544	Ḳuṭb-*al*-dīn Mōdūd	1149
565	Sayf-*al*-dīn Ghāzī II	*1169*
576	ʿIzz-*al*-dīn Masʿūd I	*1180*
589	Nūr-*al*-dīn Arslān Shāh I	*1193*
607	ʿIzz-*al*-dīn Masʿūd II	*1210*
615	Nūr-*al*-dīn Arslān Shāh II	1218
616	Nāṣir-*al*-dīn Maḥmūd	1219
631	Badr-*al*-dīn Luʾluʾ	1233
657	Ismāʿīl b. Luʾluʾ	1259
—660	[*Mongols*]	—1262
541—577	**B. ATĀBEGS OF SYRIA**	1146—1181
541	Nūr-*al*-dīn Maḥmūd b. Zangī	1146
569	-Ṣāliḥ Ismāʿīl	1173
—577		—1181
	[*Atābegs of -Mōṣil and Sinjār*, 577; *then Ayyūbids*, 579]	
566—617	**C. ATĀBEGS OF SINJĀR**	1170—1220
566	ʿImād-*al*-dīn Zangī b. Mōdūd	1170
594	Ḳuṭb-*al*-dīn Moḥammad	1197
616	ʿImād-*al*-dīn Shāhānshāh	1219
616	Maḥmūd (*or* ʿOmar)	1219
—617	[*Ayyūbids*]	—1220
576—648	**D. ATĀBEGS OF -JAZĪRA**	1180—1250
576	Muʿizz-*al*-dīn Sinjār Shāh	1180
605	Muʿizz-*al*-dīn Maḥmūd	1208
6*xx*	-Masʿūd	12*xx*
—648	[*Ayyūbids*]	—1250

ZANGIDS


I. ZANGĪ b. Āḳsunḳur
(A. Atābegs of -Mōṣil)
(B. Atābegs of Syria)
II. Ghāzī I
III. Mōdūd
i. Maḥmūd
(C. Atābegs of Sinjār)
IV. Ghāzī II
V. Mas'ūd I
1. Zangī
ii. Ismā'īl
(D. Atābegs of -Jazīra)
a. Sinjār Shāh
VI. Arslān Shāh I
2. Moḥammad
b. Maḥmūd
VII. Mas'ūd II
3. Shāhānshāh
4. Maḥmūd
c. -Mas'ūd
VIII. Arslān Shāh II
IX. Maḥmūd
Badr-al-dīn Lu'lu' (vezīr of IX)
(-Mōṣil, Sinjār, -Jazīra 637–660)
-Ṣāliḥ Ismā'īl
(-Mōṣil, 657–60)
-Sa'īd
(Aleppo, 658)
-Muẓaffar 'Alā-al-dīn 'Alī
(Sinjār, 657–8)
Sayf-al-dīn
(-Jazīra, 657–8)
-Mujāhid

A.H. A.D.

539—630 **63. BEGTIGĪNIDS** 1144—1232

(ATĀBEGS OF ARBELA, ETC.)

In 1144 (*539*) ʿImād-*al*-dīn Zangī appointed one of his Turkish officers, Zayn-*al*-dīn ʿAlī Kūchuk b. Begtigīn, to be his viceroy at -Mōṣil, and in 1149 (*544*) placed Sinjār and afterwards Ḥarrān, Takrit, Irbil (Arbela), etc., under his authority. On Zayn-*al*-dīn's death at Irbil in 1167 (*563*), his elder son Muẓaffar-*al*-dīn Kūkburī fled to Ḥarrān, whilst Irbil passed to the younger son Zayn-*al*-dīn Yūsuf, under the tutorship of the Amīr Mujāhid-*al*-dīn Ḳāimāz. On Yūsuf's death in 1190 (*586*), Saladin, who then exercised supreme influence over Syria and Mesopotamia, appointed Muẓaffar-*al*-dīn Kūkburī as his brother's successor at Irbil and Shahrazūr, but gave his former governments of Ḥarrān, -Ruhā (Edessa) and Sumaysāṭ to his own nephew Taḳī-*al*-dīn ʿOmar. Kūkburī died in 1232 (*630*), and being without sons bequeathed Irbil to the ʿAbbāsid Caliph.

539	Zayn-*al*-dīn ʿAlī Kūchuk b. Begtigīn . .	1144
563	Zayn-*al*-dīn Yūsuf b. ʿAlī (at Irbil) † 586 .	1167
563	Muẓaffar-*al*-dīn Kūkburī b. ʿAlī (at Ḥarrān).	1167
586	,, ,, ,, ,, ,, (at Irbil)	1190
—630		—1232

[*ʿAbbāsids; then Mongols*]

A.H.		A.D.
495—712	64. ORTUKIDS	1101—1312

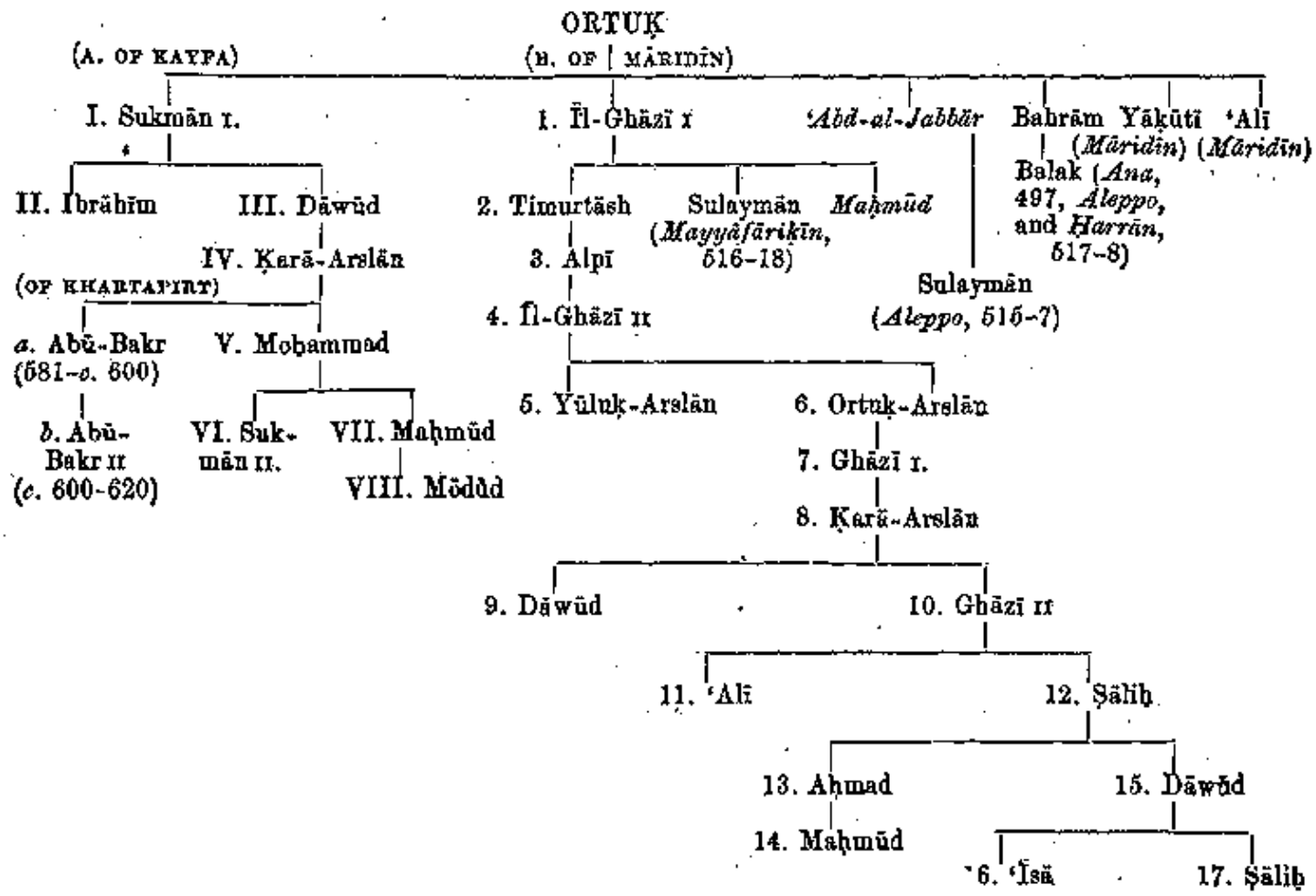
(DIYĀR-BAKR)

Ortuḳ b. Aksab, the founder of this dynasty, was a Turkomān officer in the Seljūḳ armies, and was appointed governor of Jerusalem when the Holy City was conquered by his commander Tutush the Seljūḳ Sulṭān of Damascus. Ortuḳ's sons Sukmān and Īl-Ghāzī, both famous in the wars with the Latin princes of Palestine succeeded to their father's post in 1091 (*484*), until the city was annexed by the Fāṭimid Caliph in 1096 (*489*), when they retired to Edessa (-Ruhā) and -'Irāḳ respectively. In 1101 (*495*) Īl-Ghāzī was appointed prefect of Baghdād by the Seljūḳ Sulṭān Moḥammad, and in the same year Sukmān was made governor of Ḥiṣn Kayfā in Diyār-Bakr, to which he added Māridīn a year or two later. In 1108 (*502*), however, Māridīn was transferred to his brother Īl-Ghāzī, and henceforward there were two collateral lines of Ortuḳids, at Kayfā and at Māridīn. The Kayfā branch, after the warlike exploits of Sukmān against Baldwin and Jocelin, settled down into tranquil obscurity, hastened to

pay homage to Saladīn, when his power became threatening, and were rewarded with the addition of the city of Āmid to their territory in 1183 (*579*), until their line was suppressed by the *Ayyūbid* -Kāmil in 1231 (*629*). A minor branch of the Kayfā family governed Khartapirt (Quart-Pierre) in Diyār-Bakr from 1127 (*521*) to 1223 (*620*). Īl-Ghāzī, the founder of the Māridīn line, and one of the most redoubtable of Muslim warriors against the Crusaders, gained possession of Aleppo in 1117 (*511*), and in 1121 (*515*) was also invested with the government of Mayyāfāriḳīn (in Diyār-Bakr) by the Seljūḳ Sulṭān Maḥmūd. Māridīn and Mayyāfāriḳīn continued to be held by his descendants, the latter until 1184 (*580*), the former until their submission to Tīmūr and absorption by the Ḳarā-Ḳuyunlī in 1408 (*811*); but the Māridīn Amīrs ceased to be of importance after the Ayyūbid supremacy was established in Syria and Mesopotamia. Aleppo fell 1123 (*517*) to another Ortuḳid chief, Balak b. Bahrām, who had also held Āna (*497*) and Khartapirt (*515*), and was a prominent leader in the wars with the Crusaders.

A.H.		A.D.
495—629	A. ORTUḲIDS OF KAYFÁ	1101—1231
495	Mu'īn-al-dawla Sukmān I	1101
498	Ibrāhīm	1104
c. 502	Rukn-al-dawla Dāwūd	1108
c. 543	Fakhr-al-dīn Ḳarā-Arslān	1148
570	Nūr-al-dīn Moḥammad	1174
581	Ḳuṭb-al-dīn Sukmān II	1185
597	Nāṣir-al-dīn Maḥmūd	1200
619	Rukn-al-dīn Mōdūd	1222
—629	[*Ayyūbids*]	—123

A.H.		A.D.
502—712	B. ORTUḲIDS OF MĀRIDĪN	1108—1312
502	Najm-al-dīn Īl-Ghāzī	1108
516	Ḥusām-al-dīn Timurtâsh	1122
547	Najm-al-dīn Alpī	1152
572	Ḳuṭb-al-dīn Īl-Ghāzī	1176
580	Ḥusām-al-dīn Yūluḳ-Arslān	1184
c. 597	Naṣir-al-dīn Ortuḳ-Arslān -Manṣūr	1200
637	Najm-al-dīn Ghāzī I -Sa'īd	1239
658	Ḳarā-Arslān -Muẓaffar	1260
c. 691	Shams-al-dīn Dāwūd	1292
693	Najm-al-dīn Ghāzī II -Manṣūr	1294
712	'Imād-al-dīn 'Alī Alpī -'Ādil	1312
712	Shams-al-dīn Ṣāliḥ	1312
765	Aḥmad -Manṣūr	1363
769	Maḥmūd -Ṣāliḥ	1367
769	Dāwūd -Muẓaffar	1367
778	Majd-al-dīn 'Isā -Ẓāhir	1376
809	Ṣāliḥ	1406
—811	[*Ḳara Ḳuyunlī*]	—1408

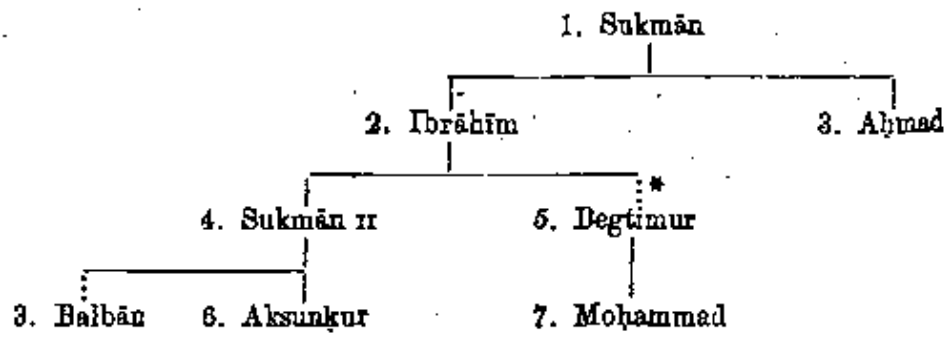

ORTUḲ
(A. OF KAYFA)
(B. OF MĀRIDĪN)
I. Sukmān I.
I. Īl-Ghāzī I
'Abd-al-Jabbār
Bahrām
Yāḳūtī
'Alī
(Māridīn)
(Māridīn)
Balak (Ana, 497, Aleppo, and Ḥarrān, 517-8)
II. Ibrāhīm
III. Dāwūd
2. Timurtāsh
Sulaymān (Mayyāfāriḳīn, 516-18)
Maḥmūd
IV. Ḳarā-Arslān
(OF KHARTAPIRT)
3. Alpī
Sulaymān (Aleppo, 516-7)
a. Abū-Bakr (581-c. 600)
V. Moḥammad
4. Īl-Ghāzī II
b. Abū-Bakr II (c. 600-620)
VI. Sukmān II.
VII. Maḥmūd
VIII. Mōdūd
5. Yūluḳ-Arslān
6. Ortuḳ-Arslān
7. Ghāzī I.
8. Ḳarā-Arslān
9. Dāwūd
10. Ghāzī II
11. 'Alī
12. Ṣāliḥ
13. Aḥmad
14. Maḥmūd
15. Dāwūd
16. 'Īsā
17. Ṣāliḥ

A.H. A.D.

493—604 65. SHĀHS OF ARMENIA 1100—1207

Sukmān -Ḳuṭbī, so called because he was once the slave of Ḳuṭb-*al*-dīn Ismā'īl, the Seljūḳ governor of Marand in Adharbījān, wrested the town of -Khalāṭ in Armenia from the Marwānids in 1100 (*493*), and his descendants and their mamlūks continued to govern this region for a century until their conquest by the *Ayyūbids* in 1207.

A.H.		A.D.
493	Sukmān -Ḳuṭbī	1100
506	Ẓahīr-*al*-dīn Ibrāhīm Shāh-Arman . .	1112
521	Aḥmad	1127
522	Nāṣir-*al*-dīn Sukmān II	1128
579	Sayf-*al*-dīn Begtimur	1183
589	Badr-*al*-dīn Āḳsunḳur	1193
594	-Manṣūr Moḥammad	1198
603	'Izz-*al*-dīn Balbān	1206
—604		—1207



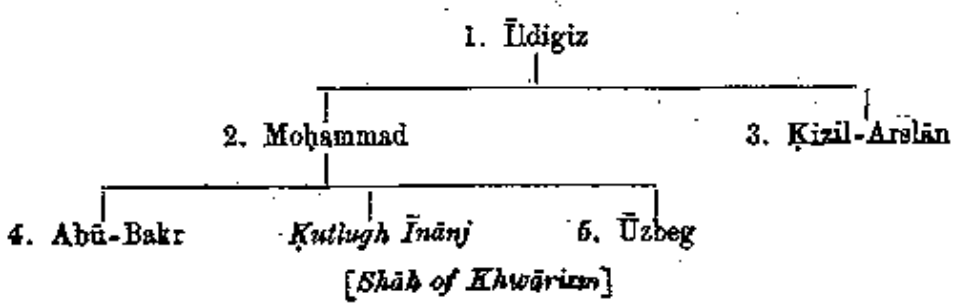
* Dotted lines indicate the relationship between master and slave.

A.H. 531—622 | A.D. 1136—1225

66. ATĀBEGS OF ADHARBĪJĀN

Ildigiz, a Turkish slave from Kipchak, rose in favour at the court of Mas'ūd, the Seljūḳ Sulṭān of -'Irāḳ, and was finally granted the government of Adharbījān, together with the Sultan's widowed sister-in-law. His son Moḥammad was the virtual ruler of the Seljūḳ kingdom of -'Irāḳ as well as of his own province. Moḥammad's brother Ḳizil-Arslān, who had acted as his deputy in Adharbījān, succeeded to his authority, and was created *Amīr-al-Umarā*; but on his claiming sovereign rights, he was assassinated, and his two nephews, who followed him, moderated their ambition.

A.H.		A.D.
531	Shams-al-dīn Īldigiz	1136
568	Moḥammad -Pahlawān Jahān . . .	1172
581	Ḳizil-Arslān 'Othmān	1185
587	Abū-Bakr	1191
607	Muẓaffar-al-dīn Ūzbeg	1210
—622		—1225



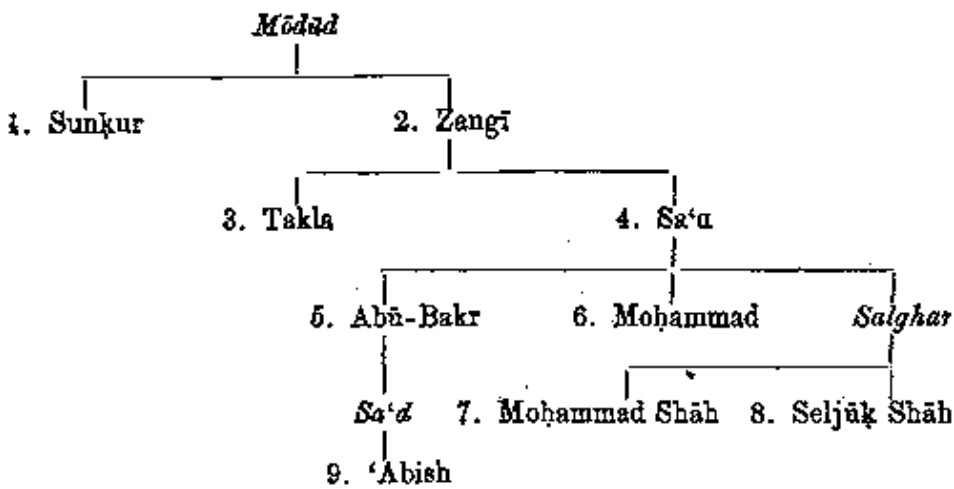
A.H.		A.D.
543—686	67. SALGHARIDS	1148—1287

(ATĀBEGS OF FĀRIS)

Salghar was the chief of a band of Turkomāns who migrated into Khurāsān, and after a career of rapine attached themselves to the Seljūḳ Ṭughril Beg, who appointed Salghar one of his chamberlains. One of his descendants, Sunḳur b. Mōdūd, made himself master of the province of Fārs in 1148 (*543*), and founded a dynasty which lasted nearly a century and a half. Atābeg Sa'd became tributary to the Shāh of Khwārizm, to whom he surrendered Iṣṭakhr and Ashkūrān; and Atābeg Abū-Bakr, in his turn, paid homage to Ogotai Khān the Mongol, and was rewarded with the title of Ḳutlugh Khān. The later Atābegs were merely vassals of the *Mongols of Persia*, and the last of them, the princess 'Abish, was the wife of Mangū-Tīmūr, a son of Hūlāgū. The poet Sa'dī lived at the court of the Atābeg Abū-Bakr.

A.H.		A.D.
543	Sunḳur*	1148
557	Zangī	1162
571	Takla	1176
591	Sa'd	1195
623	Abū-Bakr	1226
658	Moḥammad	1260
660	Moḥammad Shāh	1262
660	Seljūḳ Shāh	1262
662	'Abish	1263
—686		—1287

[*Mongols*]



Most of the Salgharids used the title Muẓaffar-*al*-dīn.

A.H. 543—740 **68. HAZĀRASPIDS** A.D. 1148—1339

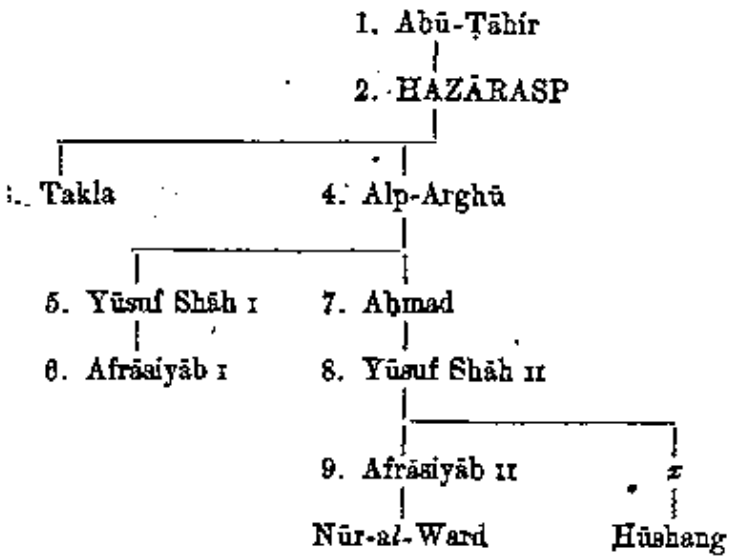
(ATĀBEGS OF LŪRISTĀN)

The founder of this line was Abū-Ṭāhir, a general who was sent by the Salgharid Atābeg to reduce the Greater Lūristān in 1148 (*543*). This original territory was augmented by a grant of the province of Khūzistān by the Mongol Abāgā. The Atābeg Afrāsiyāb I seized Iṣpahān on the death of Arghūn, but was speedily punished. This petty dynasty continued to rule till about 1339 (*740*). Many of the dates are uncertain. Their capital was Īdaj; but Yūsuf Shāh II is recorded to have annexed Shūstar, Ḥuwayza, and -Baṣra. There was also another petty dynasty of Atābegs, who governed the *Lesser* Lūristān from the end of the 12th to the 16th century.*

* For both dynasties see Sir Henry Howorth's *History of the Mongols*, Part III. pp. 140, 406, 751–6.

A.H.		A.D.
543	Abū-Ṭāhir b. Moḥammad	1148
c. 600	Naṣrat-*al*-dīn Hazārasp	*c.* 1203
c. 650	Takla	*c.* 1252
c. 657	Shams-*al*-dīn Alp-Arghū	*c.* 1259
c. 673	Yūsuf Shāh I	*c.* 1274
c. 687	Afrāsiyāb I	1288
696	Naṣrat-*al*-dīn Aḥmad	1296
733	Rukn-*al*-dīn Yūsuf Shāh II	1333
740	Muẓaffar-*al*-dīn Afrāsiyāb II	1339
756	Shams-*al*-dīn Hūshang (*or* Nūr-al-Ward) .	1355
c. 780	Aḥmad	*c.* 1378
c. 815	Abū-Sa'īd	1408
c. 820	Ḥosayn	*c.* 1417
827	Ghiyāth-*al*-dīn	1423

Expelled by Ibrāhīm b. Shāh Rukh



[*Tīmūrīds*]

A.H. A.D.

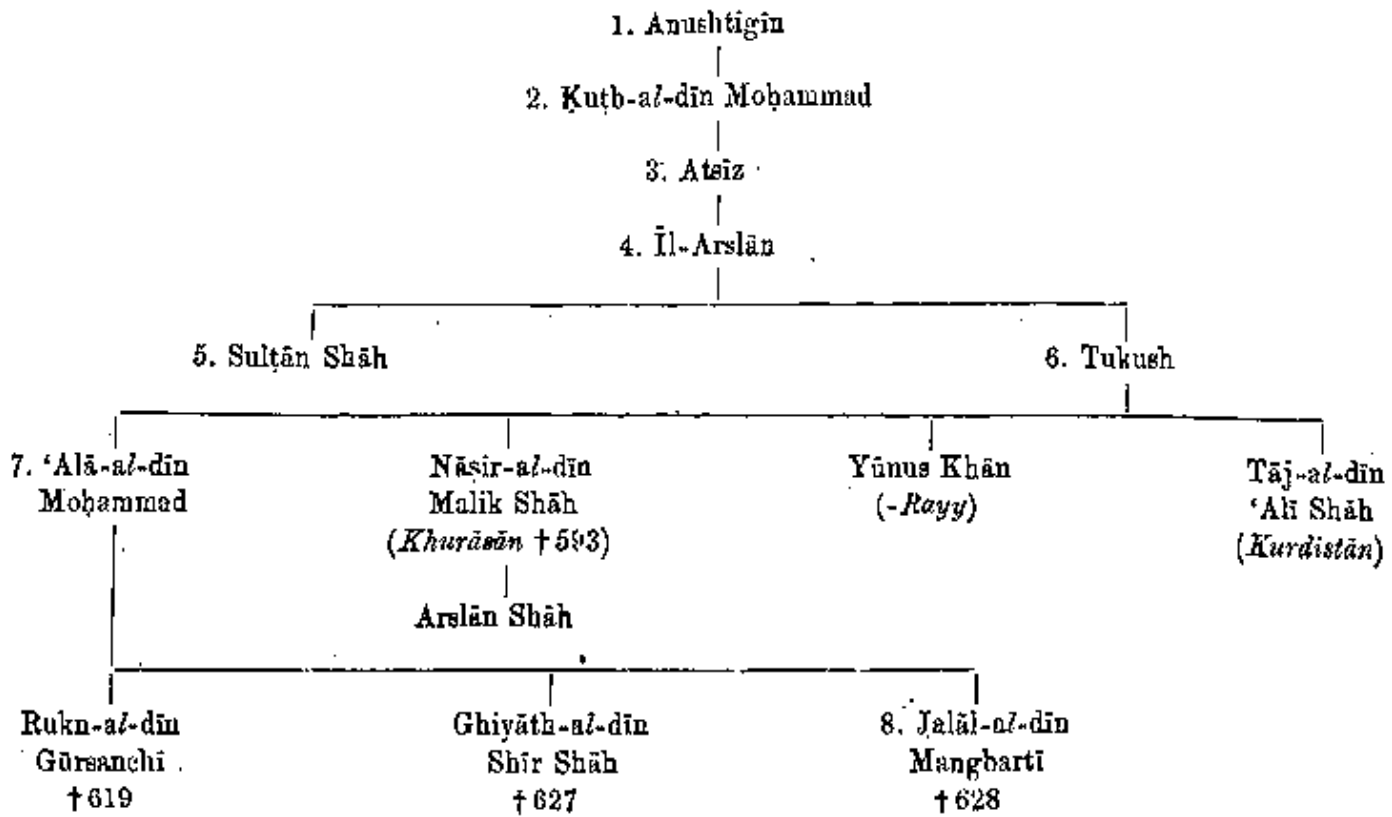
c. 470—628 **69. SHĀHS OF KHWĀRIZM** 1077—1231

A Turkish slave of Balkātigīn of Ghazna, named Anushtigīn, rose to be the cup-bearer of the Seljūḳ Sulṭān Malik Shāh, who made him governor of Khwārizm (Khiva), a post to which his son succeeded with the title of *Khwārizm Shāh*. Atsīz was the first of the line to show any ambition for independence, but his revolt in 1138 (*533*) was punished by his expulsion from Khwārizm by Sulṭān Sinjar. Atsīz, however, shortly returned, and henceforward the Khwārizm Shāhs enjoyed sovereign power. Atsīz extended his authority as far as Jand on the River Sīhūn (Jaxartes). Tukush added Khurāsān, Rayy and Iṣpahān to his dominions 1193–4 (*589–590*), and his son, the celebrated ʿAlā-al-dīn Moḥammad, after a stubborn war with the *Ghūrids* in Khurāsān, reduced the greater part of Persia by the year 1210 (*607*), subdued Bukhārā and Samarḳand, and invading the territory of the Gūr-Khān of Ḳarā-Khitay, seized his capital Otrār. In 1214 (*611*) he entered Afghānistān and took Ghazna, and then, having adopted

the 'Alid heresy (*614*) prepared to put an end to the 'Abbāsid Caliphate. His career of conquest was suddenly cut short by the appearance of the Mongol hordes of Chingiz Khān on his northern borders. Moḥammad fled incontinently before this appalling swarm, and died in despair on an island of the Caspian Sea, 1220 (*617*). His three sons wandered for some time through the provinces of Persia, and one of them, Jalāl-*al*-dīn, even visited India for two years; but after a decade of stirring adventures, during which he contrived to hold Adharbījān from *622–8*, he was finally banished by the Mongols in 1231 (*628*). At one time the rule of the Khwārizm Shāh was almost conterminous with the Seljūḳ empire, but this period of widest extent scarcely lasted a dozen years.

A.H.		A.D.
c. 470	Anushtigīn	*c.* 1077
490	Ḳuṭb-*al*-dīn Moḥammad	1097
521	Atsīz	1127
551	Īl-Arslān	1156
568	Sulṭān Shāh Maḥmūd († 589) . . .	1172
568	Tukush	1172
596	'Alā-*al*-dīn Moḥammad	1199
617	Jalāl-*al*-dīn Mangbarti	1220
—628		—1231

SHÂHS OF KHWÂRIZM



A.H. 619—703 **70. ḲUTLUGH KHĀNS** A.H. 1222—1303

(KIRMĀN)

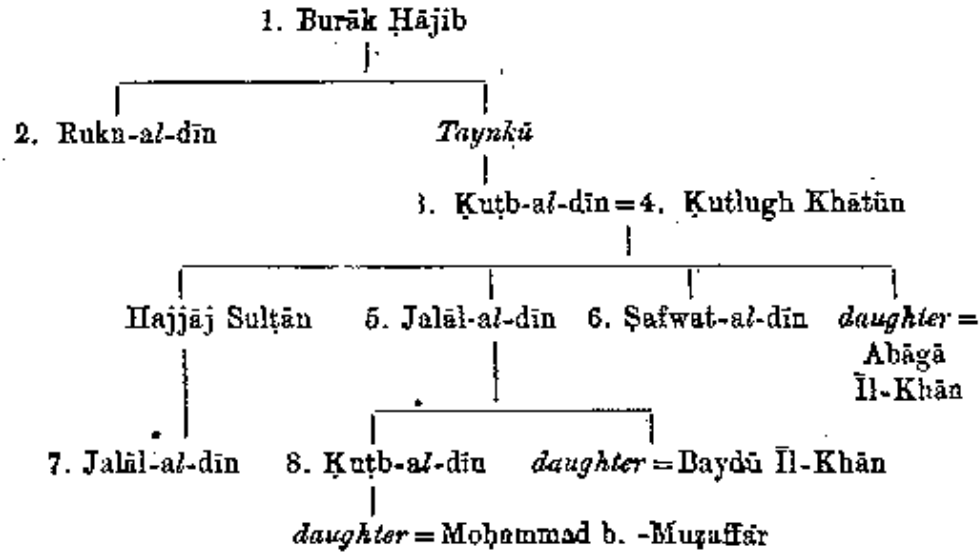
Burāk Ḥājib, a native of Ḳarā-Khitay, and an officer of 'Alā-*al*-dīn the Khwārizm Shāh, succeeding in establishing his power in Kirmān in 1222 (*619*), during the period of anarchy which followed the overthrow of the Khwārizm Shāh by Chingiz Khān; and his authority was confirmed by the Mongol Ogotāy, who conferred upon him the title of *Ḳutlugh Khān*. The dynasty kept within the limits of Kirmān, and were loyal vassals of the *Mongols of Persia*, two of whom married daughters of the family. The daughter of the last of the line married Moḥammad the *Muẓaffarid* of Fārs.

A.H.		A.D.
619	Burāk Ḥājib Ḳutlugh Khān	1222
632	Ruḳn-*al*-dīn Khōjat-al-Ḥaḳḳ . . .	1234
650	Ḳuṭb-*al*-dīn Moḥammad	1252
655	Ḳutlugh Khātūn (*widow of preceding*)* . .	1257
681	Jalāl-*al*-dīn Suyurghātmish	1282
693	Ṣafwat-*al*-dīn Pādishāh Khātūn . . .	1293
694	Jalāl-*al*-dīn Moḥammad Shāh . . .	1294
701	Ḳuṭb-*al*-dīn Shāh-Jahān	1301
—703		—1303

[*Mongol governors* till 741; then *Muẓaffarids*.]

* From 655 to 660 her son Ḥajjāj Sulṭān was the titular ruler.

ḲUTLUGH KHĀNS



X. THE SUCCESSORS OF THE SELJŪḲS IN THE WEST

SÆC. XIV–XIX

AMĪRS OF ASIA MINOR

71. KARĀSĪ (MYSIA)
72. ḤAMĪD (PISIDIA)
73. KARMIYĀN (PHRYGIA)
74. TAKKA (LYCIA)
75. ṢĀRŪ KHĀN (LYDIA)
76. AYDĪN (LYDIA)
77. MANTASHĀ (CARIA)
78. ḲIZIL-AḤMADLĪ (PAPHLAGONIA)
79. ḲARAMĀN (LYCAONIA)

80. 'OTHMĀNLĪ SULṬĀNS OF TURKEY

X. THE SUCCESSORS OF THE SELJŪḲS IN THE WEST

SÆC. XIV—XIX

We have seen how the Atābegs and other officers of the Seljūḳs succeeded to the government of the Persian, Mesopotamian, and Syrian provinces of their wide empire, but, failing to found powerful dynasties, were forced to make way for the Mongols in the thirteenth century. There was, however, one part of the Seljūḳ empire where the Mongols made no lasting impression, and where the Seljūḳs were followed by a dynasty greater than their own, the splendid line of the *'Othmānlī* or *Ottoman Turks*. Before entering upon the Mongol period of Moḥammadan history, these successors of the Seljūḳs in the West must be noticed.

In the second half of the thirteenth century the Seljūḳs of Rūm, or Hither Asia, became the vassals of the Mongols of Persia, who directed affairs in Anatolia through a governor. But the hold of the Mongols upon this distant province was slight and brief. The

decáyed Seljūḳs might submit, but the young dynasties which sprang up among their ruins paid little heed to the remote despots of Persia, who made few efforts to restrain them. Ten States soon divided the Seljūḳ kingdom of -Rūm amongst themselves. The *Karāsī* dynasty occupied Mysia; the families of *Ṣārū Khān* and *Aydīn*, Lydia; the *Mantashā* princes, Caria; those of *Takka*, Lycia and Pamphylia; *Ḥamīd*, Pisidia and Isauria; *Ḳaramān*, Lycaonia; *Karmiyān*, Phrygia; *Ḳizil-Aḥmadlī*, Paphlagonia; whilst the house of *'Othmān* held Phrygia Epictetus.

All these dynasties were gradually absorbed by the rising power of the *'Othmānlīs*, once the least among them. Karāsī was annexed in 1336 (*737*); Ḥamīd was purchased as a marriage dower in 1382 (*783*); and in 1390 (*792*) Bāyazīd (Bajazet) I annexed Karmiyān, Takka, Ṣārū Khān, Aydīn, and Mantashā, in a single campaign, and completed his conquest by adding Ḳaramān and Ḳizil-Aḥmadlī in 1392–3 (*794–5*). Thus at the end of the fourteenth century, not a hundred years after the assumption of independence by 'Othmān I, the arms of his great-grandson had swept away the nine rival dynasties.

After the battle of Angora in 1402 (*804*), when Bāyazīd was defeated and made prisoner by Tīmūr, and the 'Othmānlī power in Asia seemed to be annihilated by the Tatar hordes, seven of these dynasties (but not Karāsī or Ḥamīd) were restored by the conqueror, and enjoyed a renewed vitality for about a quarter of a century. By that time, however, the 'Othmānlīs had recovered from the blow, and in 1426–8 (*829–832*) five of the restored dynasties were re-absorbed by Murād (Amurath) II; and in 1471 (*877*), after the second conquest of Ḳaramān, the rule of the Ottoman Turks, in the strong hands of Moḥammad II, was again supreme over all the provinces which once owned the sway of the Ten Amīrs, as it is at this day.

The following table shows the division of the Seljūḳ kingdom of Rūm among the Ten States, and their absorption by the 'Othmānlīs, and gives the names and (so far as known) the dates of their princes.*

* Details may be consulted in my article on the Successors of the Seljūks, in *Journal* R. As. Soc., N.S. xiv. (1882).

A.H. A.D.

699—1311 80. 'OTHMĀNLĪ OR OTTOMAN 1299—1893
SULṬĀNS OF TURKEY

The 'Othmānlī or Ottoman Turks were a small clan of the Oghuz tribe, who were driven westward from Khurāsān by the Mongol migration, and took refuge in Asia Minor early in the thirteenth century. In recognition of their aid in war, the Seljūḳ Sulṭān allowed them to pasture their flocks in the province anciently known as Phrygia Epictetus (henceforward called Sulṭān-öni) on the borders of the Byzantine Bithynia, with the town of Sugut (Thebasion) for their headquarters. Here 'Othmān, the eponymous founder of a dynasty which numbers thirty-five Sulṭāns in the direct male line, was born in 1258 (*656*). 'Othmān pushed the Byzantine frontier further back, and his son 'Orkhān took Brūsa and Nicæa, absorbed the neighbouring State of Karāsī, and organized the famous corps of Janizaries (*Yanī chari* 'new soldiery'), who for several centuries were the flower of the conquering armies of the 'Othmānlīs. In 1358 (*759*) the Turks crossed the Hellespont, established a

garrison at Gallipoli, and began the conquest of the Byzantine Empire in Europe. Adrianople and Philippopolis fell a few years later, and the victories of the Maritza (1364), Kosovo (1389), and Nicopolis (1394) over the chivalry of all Europe gave the Turks assured possession of the whole Balkan peninsula, except the district surrounding Constantinople. The capital of the Eastern Empire was temporarily saved by the diversion caused by the invasion of Asia Minor by Tīmūr (Tamerlane) and the overwhelming defeat of the Ottoman Sulṭān Bāyazīd I (commonly called Bajazet, from an ignorant pronunciation of the German spelling) in 1402 (*804*) on the field of Angora.

For the moment an empire which had stretched from the Danube to the Orontes appeared to be almost annihilated by a single blow. Its recovery, however, under the wise rule of Moḥammad I, 'The Gentleman,' was scarcely less remarkable, and, after an interval of peace and consolidation, Murād II was able to defend the empire from the attacks of Hunyady, the 'White Knight of Wallachia,' and to avenge a violated treaty by the decisive victory of Varna (1444) over a vast army of Christian crusaders. This signal success secured the

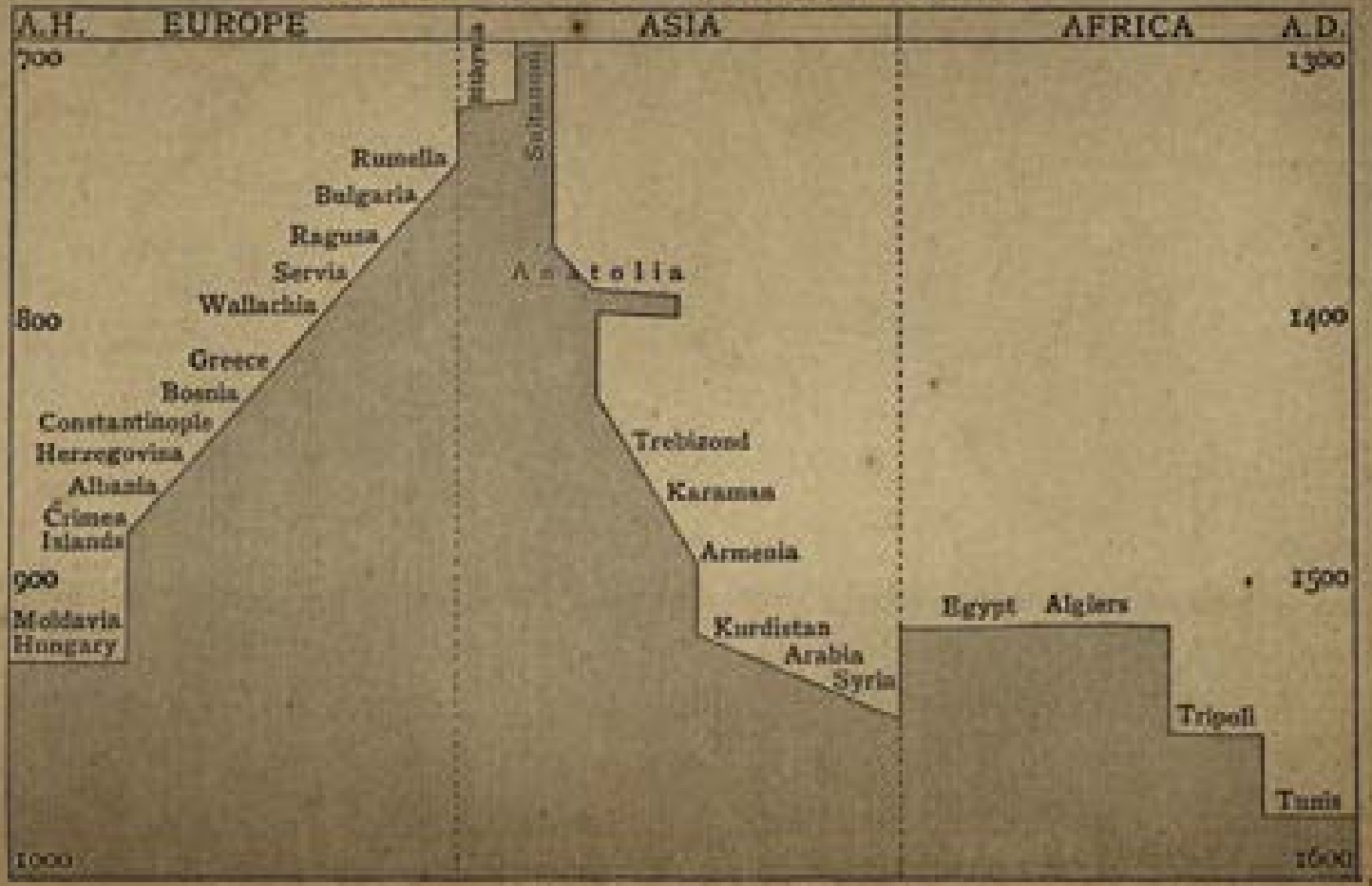
Turks from invasion from the north, and the history of the next two centuries is a long record of triumphs. Constantinople fell to Moḥammad II in 1453, and the last remnant of the Byzantine Empire was thereby destroyed. The Crimea was annexed (1475), the Aegean islands became Ottoman soil, and the Turkish flag waved even in Italy over the castle of Otranto. In his brief reign of eight years, Selīm I, 'the Grim,' defeated the Shāh of Persia, and added Kurdistān and Diyār-Bakr to the Turkish Empire; took Syria, Egypt and Arabia from the Mamlūks (1517); and not only became the master of the Holy Cities of Mecca and -Medīna, but received from the last 'Abbāsid Caliph of Cairo the relics of the Prophet Moḥammad and the right of succession to the Caliphate, in virtue of which the Ottoman Sulṭāns have ever since claimed the homage of the faithful.

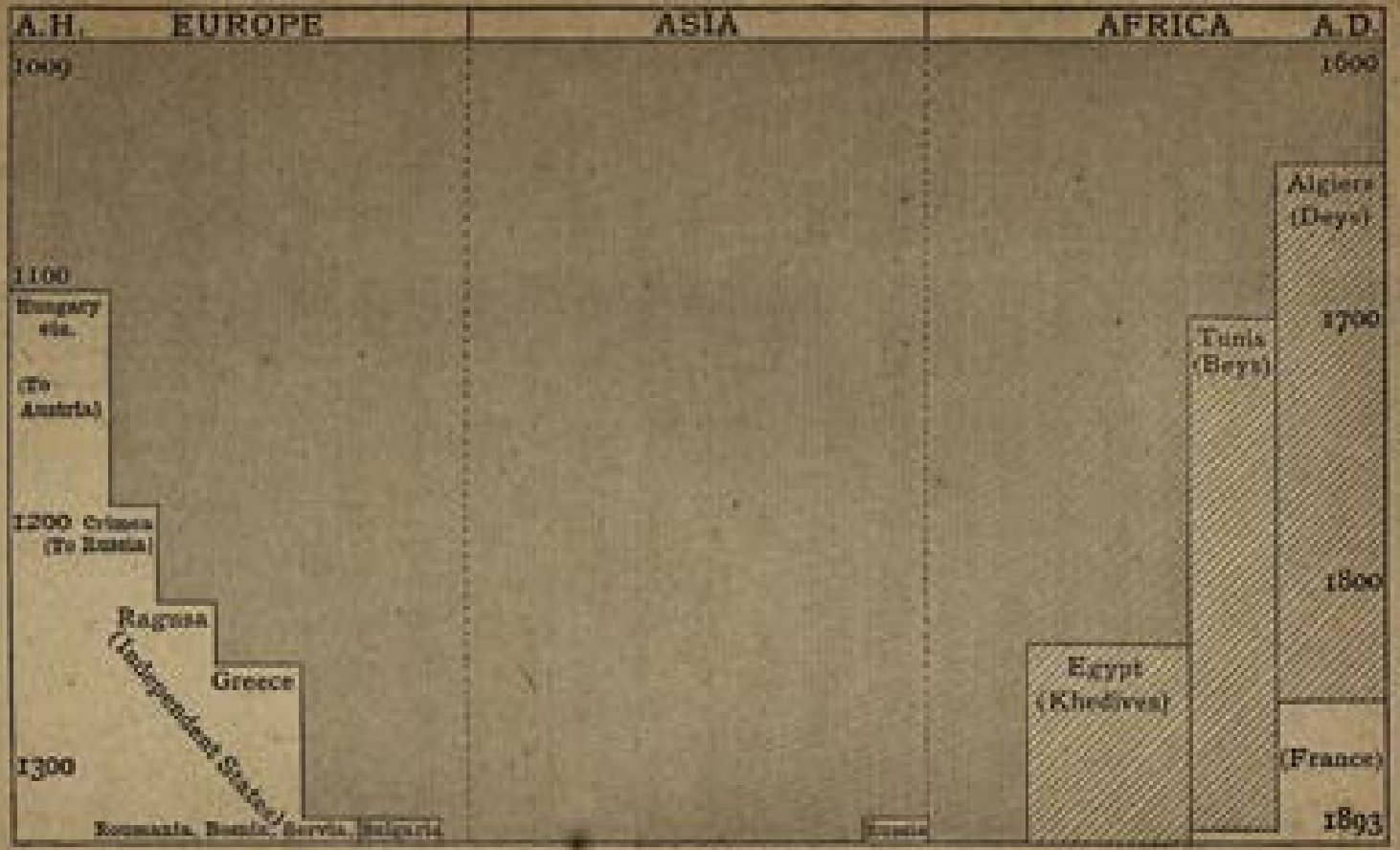
Sulaymān the Great, *patris fortis filius fortior*, overshadowed Selīm's exploits by his own magnificent achievements. In 1522 he expelled the Knights of Rhodes from their corsairs' stronghold. In the north he conquered Belgrade, and in 1526 utterly crushed the Hungarians on the field of Mohács, slaying their king Louis II and 20,000

of his troops. For a century and a half Hungary became a Turkish province. Sulaymān even besieged Vienna (1529), and, though he failed to subdue it, he compelled the Archduke Ferdinand to pay him tribute. 'The Sultan's claim to be called The Great rests not merely upon his undoubted wisdom and ability, and the splendid series of his successes, but upon the fact that he maintained and improved his grand position in an age of surpassing greatness—the age of Charles I, Francis I, Elizabeth, and Leo X—of Colombus, Cortes, and Raleigh. In the great days of Charles he dared to annex Hungary and lay siege to Vienna; and in the epoch of great navies and admirals, of Doria and Drake, he swept the seas to the coasts of Spain, and his admirals Barbarossa, Pialé, and Dragut, created panic fear along all the shores of the Mediterranean, drove the Spaniards out of the Barbary States, and defeated pope, emperor, and doge together at the great sea-fight off Prevesa (1538).'* The empire of Sulaymān stretched from Buda-Pesth on the Danube to Aswān on the Cataracts of the Nile, and from the Euphrates almost to the Straits of Gibraltar.

* See my *History of Turkey*, ch. x (1888).

GROWTH OF THE OTTOMAN EMPIRE.





DECLINE OF THE OTTOMAN EMPIRE.

The reign of Sulaymān the Great is the apogee of Ottoman power. The downward course began with the blow inflicted upon the naval prestige of Turkey by Don John of Austria's signal victory off Lepanto (1571). In spite of the conquest of Cyprus (1571) and such successes on land as the defeat of the Austrians on the Keresztes (1596), the Turks were no longer the terror of Europe. Murād IV added Baghdād to their Asiatic dominions in 1638, and Candia and other islands were wrested from the Venetians in 1645; but on the continent of Europe the defeats at St. Gothard (1664), Choczim (1673), and Lemberg (1675) by John Sobieski, culminating in the fatal siege of Vienna (1682) and the rout at Mohácz, were followed by the total loss of Hungary (1686), and the invasion of Bosnia and Greece by the Austrians and Venetians. Prince Eugene delivered a final blow at the battle of Zenta (1697), and the treaties of Carlovitz (1699) and Passarovitz (1718) mark the end of Turkish supremacy in Hungary, Podolia, and Transylvania.

The frontiers of the empire remained almost unchanged from this epoch of humiliation up to the recent partition of 1878. Russian aggression began in 1736 with the annexa-

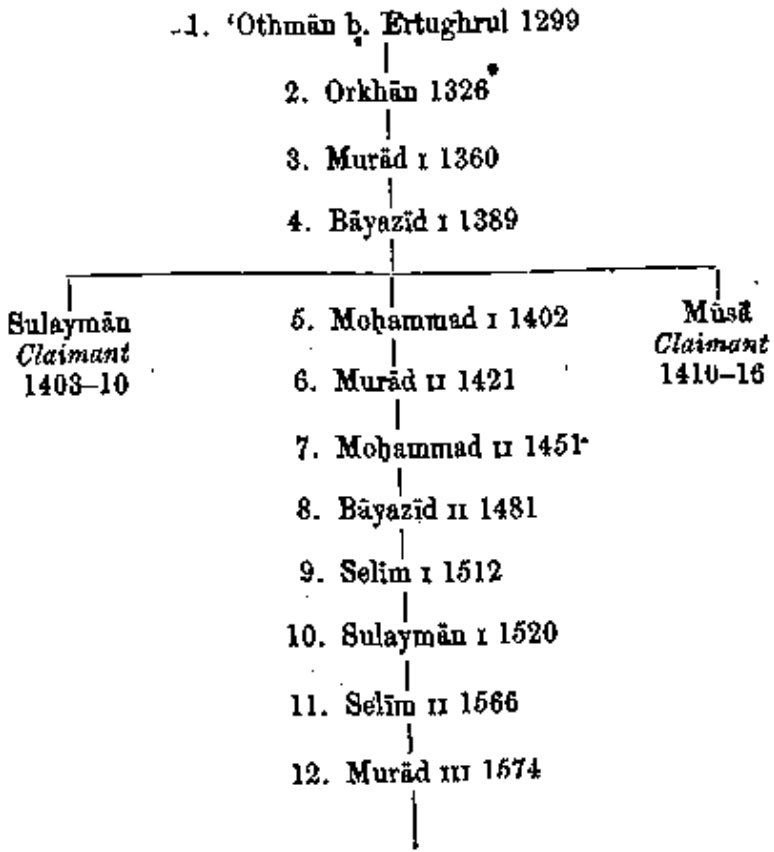
tion of Oczakov and Azov, and continued with the seizure of the Crimea in 1783, besides several invasions of the Danubian Principalities. Turkey itself was a prey to the exactions of a disorderly soldiery, and Maḥmūd II, the greatest of modern Sulṭāns, though he massacred the mutinous Janizaries (1826), could not arrest the process of disintegration which was going on in the Ottoman empire. In Africa, Egypt became practically independent under Moḥammad 'Alī in the first quarter of this century, and since 1883 has been still further removed from the 'sphere of Turkish influence' by the British occupation. Algiers and Tunis became semi-independent under their Deys and Beys in 1659 (*1070*) and 1705 (*1117*) respectively, and France has been the possessor of Algiers since 1830, and of Tunis, in all but name, since 1881. The regency of Tripoli is all that now remains of the Turkish empire in Africa. In Asia, however, it has lost little since the day when Murād IV took Baghdād from the Persians; though Ḳars and Batūm were awarded to Russia in 1878 by the Treaty of Berlin, when the island of Cyprus was hypothecated to Great Britain.

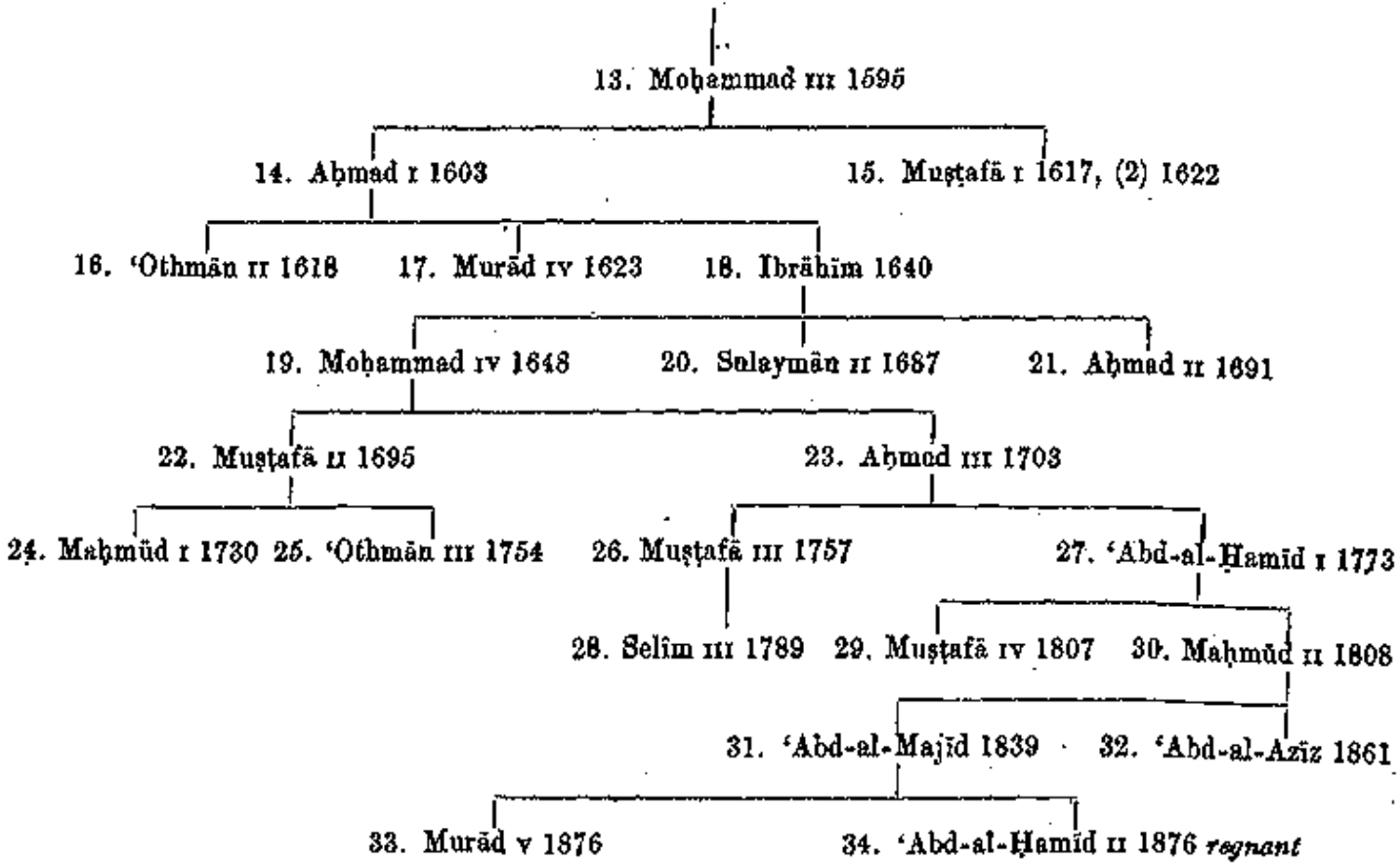
Turkey's most serious losses have been in Europe,

Greece parted from her in 1828; the Danubian Principalities coalesced into the State of Roumania in 1866; and Servia got rid of her Turkish garrisons in 1867. The designs of Russia, which had been checked by England and France in the Crimean War (1854–5), were again manifested in the invasion of Turkey in 1877–8; but the Great Powers did not sanction the aggrandizing ambition of Russia. The Treaty of Berlin (1878), though it gave little to Russia, carried out the partition of Turkey in Europe which had already begun. Roumania and Servia were created separate kingdoms, the independence of Montenegro was recognized, Greece was given Thessaly, Bosnia and Herzegovina were entrusted to Austria, and a new tributary principality of Bulgaria was established, to which Eastern Roumelia was added in 1885, whereby Turkey was virtually deprived of her last possession north of the Balkans. The Ottoman Empire in Europe is now reduced to a strip of territory south of the Balkans, corresponding to ancient Thrace, Macedon, Epirus, and Illyria, instead of stretching almost to the gates of Vienna as it did in the great days of Sulaymān.

A.H.		A.D.
699	'Othmān I	1299
726	Orkhān	1326
761	Murād (Amurath) I	1360
792	Bāyazīd (Bajazet) I	1389
805	Moḥammad I	1402
824	Murād II	1421
855	Moḥammad II	1451
886	Bāyazīd II	1481
918	Selīm I	1512
926	Sulaymān I	1520
974	Selīm II	1566
982	Murād III	1574
1003	Moḥammad III	1595
1012	Aḥmad I	1603
1026	Muṣṭafā I	1617
1027	'Othmān II	1618
1031	Muṣṭafā I (*restored*)	1622
1032	Murād IV	1623
1049	Ibrāhīm I	1640
1058	Moḥammad IV	1648
1099	Sulaymān II	1687
1102	Aḥmad II	1691
1106	Muṣṭafā II	1695
1115	Aḥmad III	1703
1143	Maḥmūd I	1730
1168	'Othmān III	1754
1171	Muṣṭafā III	1757
1187	'Abd-al-Ḥamīd I	1773
1203	Selīm III	1789
1222	Muṣṭafā IV	1807
1223	Maḥmūd II	1808
1255	'Abd-al-Majīd	1839
1277	'Abd-al-'Azīz	1861
1293	Murād V	187[illegible]
1293	'Abd-al-Ḥamīd II *regnant*	187[illegible]

ʿOTHMĀNLĪ OR OTTOMAN TURKS




13. Moḥammad III 1595
14. Aḥmad I 1603
15. Muṣṭafā I 1617, (2) 1622
16. 'Othmān II 1618
17. Murād IV 1623
18. Ibrāhīm 1640
19. Moḥammad IV 1648
20. Sulaymān II 1687
21. Aḥmad II 1691
22. Muṣṭafā II 1695
23. Aḥmad III 1703
24. Maḥmūd I 1730
25. 'Othmān III 1754
26. Muṣṭafā III 1757
27. 'Abd-al-Ḥamīd I 1773
28. Selîm III 1789
29. Muṣṭafā IV 1807
30. Maḥmūd II 1808
31. 'Abd-al-Majīd 1839
32. 'Abd-al-Azīz 1861
33. Murād V 1876
34. 'Abd-al-Ḥamīd II 1876 *regnant*

XI. THE MONGOLS

SÆC. XIII—XVIII

81. GREAT KHĀNS OF MONGOLIA

82. MONGOLS OF PERSIA

83. GOLDEN HORDE OF KIPCHAK

84. KHĀNS OF THE KRIM (CRIMEA)

85. CHAGHATĀY KHĀNS

XI. THE MONGOLS

SÆC. XIII—XVIII

The history of the Mongols begins practically with the great conqueror Chingiz Khān. There are many traditions of his ancestors current among his biographers, but, as in the case of many another man of unexpected fame, his pedigree has been elaborated rather on the ground of natural propriety than of fact. All that can safely be said about the early history of the Mongols is that they were a clan among clans, a member of a great nomad confederacy that ranged the country north of the desert of Gobi in search of water and pasture; who spent their lives in hunting and the breeding of cattle, lived on flesh and sour milk (kumis), and made their profit by bartering hides and beasts with their kinsmen the Khitans, or with the Turks and Chinese, to whom they owed allegiance. The name Mongol was not known abroad until the tenth century, and probably came to be applied to the whole group of clans only when the chief of a particular clan bearing that name acquired an ascendancy over the rest

* The following introduction, and those to the succeeding sections of the Mongol dynasties, are reprinted from my *Catalogue of Oriental Coins in the British Museum*, vol vi. They are of course based upon Sir Henry Howorth's great History.

of the confederacy, and gave to the greater the name of the less. If not the founder of the supremacy of his clan, Yissugāy was a notable maintainer of it, and it was probably he who first asserted the independence of the Mongols from Chinese rule. In spite, however, of conquest and annexation, the people who owned the sovereignty of Yissugāy numbered only forty thousand tents. Yet it was upon this foundation that Yissugāy's son, Chingiz Khān, built up in twenty years the widest empire the world has ever seen. The father died in 1175 A.D., and Temujin his son, a child of thirteen years, and not yet called by the high title of Chingiz Khān, ruled in his stead over the tribes that wandered by the banks of the Onon.

A detailed chronicle of the career of conquest inaugurated by this Asiatic Alexander is no part of the present purpose.* It is sufficient to say that after thirty years of struggle against home-foes, in which he succeeded in firmly establishing his authority over his own and the neighbouring clans, in face of powerful and treacherous conspiracies, Temujin found himself free to devote the twenty years that remained of his life to wider and more ambitious designs. Having reduced all the tribes north of the desert

* See Sir H. H. Howorth's *History of the Mongols*, i. 49—115.

of Gobi, from the Irtish to the Khinggan Mountains, and having incorporated among his subjects the Karaits, who had forfeited their independence by the treachery of their king, Wang Khān (the Prester John of European fable, and an old but perfidious ally of Yissugāy and his son), Temujin summoned, in 1206, a Kuriltāy or Diet of the chiefs of all the tribes; and a *shaman*, or priest, announced to the assembled nobles that a higher title than belonged to others had been decreed by Heaven to Temujin, and henceforward his name should be Chingiz Ḳaān, 'the Very Mighty King.' Thus at the age of forty-four did Chingiz begin his undisputed reign. Three years later, after receiving the submission of the Uighurs, he began his invasion of China, and though it was reserved for his grandson to complete the subjugation of the Celestial Empire, a great part of the northern provinces, the ancient kingdom of Liau-tung, and the Tangut Kingdom of Hia, were added, as subject provinces or feudatory states, to the Mongol dominions during the great Khān's own lifetime. The next obstacle in the path to universal sovereignty was the old Turkish kingdom of Ḳarā-Khitay, which corresponded nearly to the modern limits of Eastern Turkistān, and was ruled by a line of kings called Gūr-

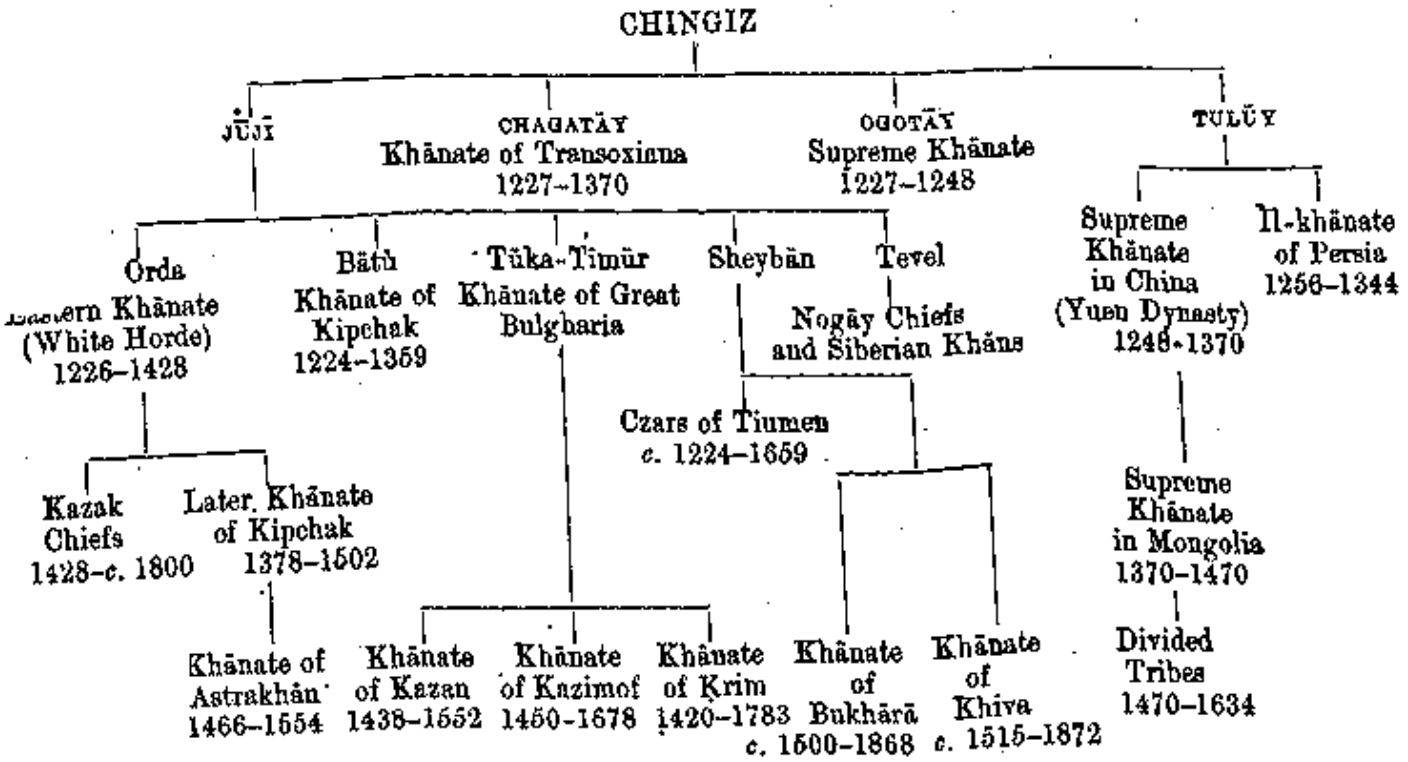
Khāns, who exacted homage from the border states of Persia and Transoxiana. Chingiz and his horsemen, however, instead of paying homage, speedily rode down all resistance, and soon found themselves masters of Kāshghar, Khoten, and Yārkhand, with the rest of the territory of Gūr-Khāns. The Mongol dominions now marched with the wide kingdom which had recently been conquered by the Khwārizm Shāh; and this, therefore, became the next object of attack and the next example of the futility of resistance. The Mongol armies, divided into several immense brigades, swept over Khwārizm, Khurāsān, and Afghānistān, on the one hand, and on the other over Adharbījān, Georgia, and southern Russia, whilst a third division continued the reduction of China. In the midst of these diverging streams of conquest, Chingiz Khān died, in 1227 (*624*), at the age of sixty-four. The territory he and his sons had conquered stretched from the Yellow Sea to the Euxine, and included lands or tribes wrung from the rule of Chinese, Tanguts, Afghāns, Persians, and Turks.

It was the habit of a Mongol chief to distribute the clans over which he had ruled as appanages among his sons; and this tribal rather than territorial distribution

obtained in the division of the empire among the sons of Chingiz. The founder appointed a special appanage of tribes in certain loosely defined camping-grounds to each son, and also nominated a successor to himself in the supreme Khānate. Beginning therefore with the *Khāḳaāns*, or supreme suzerains over all the other Mongol chiefs, the following seems the natural order:

1. *The line of Ogotāy*, ruling the tribes of Zungaria; *Khāḳaāns*, till their extinction by the family of Tulūy.
2. *The line of Tulūy*, ruling the home clans of Mongolistān; *Khāḳaāns* after Ogotāy's line, down to the Manchu supremacy.
3. *The Persian branch of the line of Tulūy*; Hūlāgū and his successors, the Īl-khāns of Persia.
4. *The line of Jūjī*, ruling the Turkish Tribes of the Khānate of Kipchak; the Khāns of the Golden and White Hordes, with the sequel, the Khānate of Astrakhān, and the offshoots, the Khānates of Kazan, Kazimof, and Ḳrim; and finally the Khāns of Khiva and Bukhārā.
5. *The line of Chagatāy*, ruling Mā-warā-*l*-nahr, or Transoxiana.

SKETCH-TREE OF THE DYNASTIES SPRUNG FROM CHINGIZ KHĀN



A.H. A.D.

603—1043 **81. GREAT KHĀNS** 1026—1634

1. *Line of Ogotāy*:—Appanage, Zungaria*; Supreme Khākaāns (1227—1248).

By the will of Chingiz, Ogotāy besides receiving his appanage in Zungaria was appointed to succeed to the supreme authority; and it is a singular testimony to the reverence in which the intentions of the great founder of Mongol power were held that Ogotāy, although neither the eldest nor the most capable of the sons of Chingiz, was suffered quietly to assume the sovereignty over all the chiefs of the family and tributaries, and received their loyal homage at the general Diet held in 1229. His reign was marked by a considerable extension of the Mongol dominions. The Kin empire, or northern half of China, which had only been partially reduced in the lifetime of Chingiz, was now (1234) entirely subdued;* (the southern

* It will be simpler thus to indicate roughly the position of the camping-grounds of Ogotāy's subjects, than to say "the clans camping in or about Zungaria," etc. In this instance the tribes in question were the Naymans and the ancestors of the modern Kalmuks.

half, or Sung empire, resisted the invaders till the time of Khubilāy.) Korea was annexed (1241). The gallant and unfortunate Jalāl-*al*-dīn, son of the late Khwārizm Shāh Moḥammad, was hunted through the wide territory which had once owned his father's rule. A great expedition into Europe was conducted by Bātū, son of Jūjī; the Mongols entered Moscow and Novgorod, penetrated to Hungary, burned Cracow, and laid siege to Pesth. The opportune death of Ogotāy called for a general assembly of the family, and a reverse sustained at Liegnitz, at the hand of the Grand Duke of Austria, saved Europe. Meanwhile the internal affairs of the empire had been organized and ably administered under the wise and just rule of the prime minister Yeliu Chutsāy, a Khitan, who did much to restore order and security to the provinces, in spite of the incapacity of his imperial master, who was given over to the prevailing Mongol vice of habitual drunkenness.

Ogotāy's death in A.D. 1241 (*637*) was followed by an interregnum of several years, during which his widow Turakina governed the empire as regent for her eldest son Kuyuk, until he should return from Europe, where he had been distinguishing himself in the invasion of

Hungary under his cousin Bāṭū. He received the summons in Hungary, and on his return to Karakorum in 1246, was elected Khāḳaān by a general Kuriltāy attended by most of the chiefs of the family, except the sons of Jūjī, who were dissatisfied with the succession and excused themselves. Kuyuk restored the tranquility which had been disturbed during the rule of his mother, and armies were now despatched to continue the work of extension in China and Persia.

Kuyuk was the only member of the family of Ogotāy who succeeded to the supreme throne, and on his death in 1248 the empire passed to the line of Tulūy, and neither Kuyuk's sons nor any of his brothers succeeded him. Under the first Khāḳaān of the new line, the family of Ogotāy offered no opposition to their dethronement; but when Mangū died and Khubilāy was elected to the sovereignty by an informal Diet held in China, the discontent of Ogotāy's descendants manifested itself in immediate and general revolt, and a series of disastrous campaigns ensued.* Kaydū, the grandson of Ogotāy, fought no less than forty-one battles with the supporters of Tulūy on the east, and fifteen with their Kipchak allies on

* See Howorth, i. 173—186.

the west: but the struggle was unequal, and soon after Kaydū's death (about 1301, *701*) the family of Ogotāy did homage to the line of Tulūy; their clans were dispersed among the tribes of Transoxiana and Kipchak, and their chiefs lived in obscurity under the rule of the Chagatāy Khāns. Once and again, in a period of confusion, some representative of Ogotāy's house was raised to the throne of Transoxiana; and it was the fancy of the great Tīmūr to bring again to light the heirs of the heir of Chingiz by setting up Suyurghātmish and his son Maḥmūd in the stead of the deposed house of Chagatāy; but this was only a fictitious revival, and these two *rois fainéants* cannot be said to represent the original Khaḳaāns.

2. *Line of Tulūy*:—Appanage, Mongolistān; Khāḳaāns (1248–1634) in three stages, (1) Yuen dynasty in China (1248–1370), (2) Diminished empire at Karakorum (1370–1543), (3) Divided tribes and gradual submission to Manchus (1543–1634).

Mangū, the son of Tulūy, owed his accession partly to his personal reputation as a warrior and general, and partly to the adherence of the numerous tribes of Mongolia proper, the nucleus of the Mongol armies under Chingiz, which formed the appanage of Tulūy. In 1251 his inauguration took place, and in 1257 he died. Yet in this short reign there was room for the beginning of two important changes. Mangū kept his court at the usual capital Karakorum, north of the desert of Gobi, and appointed his brother Khubilāy governor of the southern provinces: this was the beginning of the transfer of the seat of government from Karakorum to Peking. The other change was the despatch of another brother, Hūlāgū, to Persia, where in place of the shifting rule of provincial governors he established his own dynasty, and thus Persia now possessed a line of kings of the royal house of Chingiz, like the other great divisions of the Mongol empire.

The death of Mangū in 1257 was the signal for a general struggle. The house of Ogotāy laid claim to the supreme sovereignty, as has been said; and Arikbuka, a brother of Mangū and Khubilāy, was the candidate in the Mongol homeland. Khubilāy was saluted Khāḳaān by the chiefs of the army in China; Arikbuka was elected by another Diet at Karakorum; and Kaydū received the like title and homage from the tribes of Ogotāy and Chagatāy further west. Jūjī's line in Kipchak did not attempt to gain the Khāḳaānship, but supported the house of Tulūy. The fine generalship, large resources, and wide personal popularity of Khubilāy—Marco Polo's Great Khān and Coleridge's Kubla Khan—carried him safely through these early complications. Arikbuka was speedily routed, and Kaydu was kept at a distance, though he did not cease from troubling till after Khubilāy's death.

The Khāḳaāns of the blood of Chingiz now became a Chinese dynasty. By 1280 Khubilāy had conquered the southern or Sung empire of China, and, having thus united the whole country under his sole rule, fixed his court at Khān Baligh (Cambaluk) or the 'City of the Khān,' now called Peking; whilst the old capital Karakorum became a provincial centre during the first of the three

periods into which the history of his descendants may be divided. This *first period* includes the century which elapsed between his founding of the Mongol empire in China and the expulsion of the invaders under his tenth successor, Tughān-Tīmūr (1370).* The Mongol Khāḳaāns of this period are known in Chinese annals as the *Yuen Dynasty*. With what sumptuous glory this dynasty began we know from Marco Polo: the causes of its decay—the extravagance of the court, the favouritism of the Lamas, the poverty and sickness of the people, the plagues and famines, earthquakes and other 'signs'—may be read in Sir Henry Howorth's History. The attempts of various pretenders were crowned by the successful attack of Chu Yuen Chang, prince of U, the founder of the Ming Dynasty, who assumed the royal title and seized Peking in 1368. In two years China was rid of the Mongols; and the most prosperous period of the history of the Khāḳaāns was over.

The *second period* extends from the expulsion from China to the temporary revival under Dayan Khān (1370–1543). This is the time of the *Diminished Empire*, when the Mongols were confined to the steppes from which they

* Howorth, i. 284–340

first went forth to conquer, the camping-grounds by the rivers Kerulon and Onon, north of the desert of Gobi. Even here they were not absolutely independent. The Ming armies surprised the Mongols by Lake Buyur and totally routed them, capturing 80,000 prisoners, lifting 150,000 head of cattle, and carrying off an immense booty. This defeat effectually tamed the spirit of the Khāḳaāns, supreme now in name alone; and they became actual vassals of the Ming emperors, who appointed the rulers of the tribes by patents drawn up in Peking. In the 15th century a worse thing happened to them; many of the clans became for a while subject to the Uirats. But at the end of the same century Dayan Khān, the fourteenth Khāḳaān in succession from Tughān-Tīmūr, effected a temporary union among the scattered tribes, and organized them in certain groups.

The *third period* is the history of the disastrous results of Dayan's decentralizing policy—civil war among the *Divided Tribes*, and the consequent absorption of them one by one by the Manchu power which had newly risen on the ruins of the Ming in China. Internal wars, separate dynasties, and universal disunion, soon brought even the nominal sovereignty of the Khāḳaāns to an end; and after 1634 the descendants of Khubilāy were mere vassals of China.

GREAT KHÂNS

A.H.		A.D.
603	Chingiz Khān	1206
624	Ogotāy	1227
639	*Interregnum*: Turakina	1241
644	Kuyuk	1246
646	Mangū	1248

YUEN DYNASTY

655	Khubilāy	1257
693	Ūljā-itū	1294
706	Kuluk	1307
711	Buyantu	1311
720	Gegen	1320
723	Yisun-Tīmūr	1323
728	Rajipeka	1328
729	Kushala	1329
729	Jiyaghatu	1329
732	Rintshenpal	1332
732	Tughān-Tīmūr	1332

DIMINISHED EMPIRE

771	Biliktu	1370
780	Ussukhal	1378
790	Engke Soriktu	1388
794	Elbek	1392
802	Gun-Tīmūr	1400
805	Uljai-Tīmūr	1403
814	Delbek	1411
837	Adsai	1434
843	Taisong	1439
856	Akharji	1452

857	Ukektu	1453
857	Molon	1453
867	Mandaghol	1463
876	Dayan	1470

DIVIDED TRIBES

951	Bodi	1544
955	Kudang	1548
964	Sasaktu	1557
001	Setzen	1593
1013	Lingdan	1604
—1043		—1634

[*Manchu Tatars*]

THE HOUSES OF OGOTÁY AND TELÚY

(To face p. 218)

SUPREME KHÁNS

I. CHINGIZ

Jújí | Chagatáy | II. OGOTÁY | TELÚY

III. Kúyuk | Kúcha | Kashi | IV. Mangú | V. Khubilây (YUAN DYNASTY) | Arikbúka | Hulágú

Kúnja | Shirámun | Kaydú | Chingtin

Chapar | Kúnala | Jíkamúna | VI. Ujáitú Timúr

X. Timm-Timúr | VII. Kúnk | VIII. Bayanta

XI. Bajípeka | XII. Kuduka | XIII. Jíyughatu | IX. Gegen

XV. Toghan Timúr (KARAKÁSH | MS MISSING) | XIV. Bandukrupal

XVI. Ilíkhtu | XVII. Urnkhai

XVIII. Eagha Sentikhi | XIX. Elbek | Kharpatud

XX. Oun-Timúr | XXI. Ujái-Timúr | XXIII. Adai

XXII. Delbek | XXIV. Taisung | XXV. Akburji | XXVIII. Mandaghol

XXVI. Ukhátu | XXVII. Mubun | Kharpatud

Bolkhe Jirung

XXIX. Dayun

(followed by Khalkal Tribes)

A.H. A.D.
654—750 82. MONGOLS OF PERSIA * 1256—1349

It was in the reign of Mangū that Persia was given a royal dynasty in the House of Hūlāgū (of the line of Tulūy), called Īl-khāns, or provincial Khāns, to indicate the homage they owed and invariably acknowledged (very cheaply) to the supreme Khāḳaāns. Hūlāgū had little difficulty in establishing his authority over the country allotted to him. The ambitious Shāh of Khwārizm whom Chingiz had routed had already cleared the way by conquering the better part of Persia, and there were no formidable opponents to meet. Hūlāgū speedily drove before him the small princes who were trying to build their little dynasties on the ruins of the great empire of Khwārizm; came to Baghdād and cruelly murdered Musta'ṣim, the feeble representative of the 'Abbāsid Caliphs; and discovered no serious obstacle in his path till he was checked in Syria by the valiant Mamlūks of Egypt, who kept him successfully at arm's length. Hūlāgū was now master of

all the provinces of Persia and Asia Minor from India to the Mediterranean. His dominions marched with those of Chagatāy and Jūjī on the north, and with the territory of the Egyptian Sulṭāns on the south; and within these limits for nearly a century his dynasty reigned in practical independence, whilst rendering a certain feudal homage to the remote Khāḳaān in China. Save for an occasional contest over the succession, the country was quietly and peaceably governed, and the Īl-khāns showed a praiseworthy desire to emulate the examples of earlier rulers of Persia in the encouragement of science and letters.

In the reign of Abū-Sa'īd, however, the dynasty was undermined by the same causes which had previously destroyed the power of the Caliphs and the Seljūḳs, and were destined at last to bring about the downfall of the Mamlūks in Egypt: rival amīrs, generals, ministers, fanatics, began to take a large share in the government of the country, and in their jealousies and animosities lay the prime danger of the Īl-khāns. After Abū-Sa'īds death the throne of Persia became the toadstool on which the puppet sovereigns set up by rival amīrs seated themselves only to find it crumbling beneath them. Two great houses tore Persia in sunder: that of Amīr Chūpān, a favourite

general of Ghāzān and of his successors; and that of Amīr Ḥosayn the Jalayr, also called the Ilkānian. Each of these had a son named Ḥasan, distinguished by the epithets Great and Little; the son of Chūpān was Amīr Ḥasan Kūchuk or the Little; and the son of the Jalayr was Amīr Shaykh Ḥasan Buzurg or the Great. Their power was immediately felt. Arpā Khān, a descendant not of Hūlāgū but of Arikbuka his brother, was placed on the throne after Abū-Sa'īd's death, but was deposed the same year (1336) by Mūsā, who drew his pedigree from Baydū the sixth Īl-khān. Mūsā was quickly displaced by the nominees of the Greater Ḥasan, whose rival of the line of Chūpān presently set up an opposition in the sovereignty in the person of Sātī-Beg, a sister of Abū-Sa'īd, who had been the wife of Chūpān, then of Arpā, and was finally married to Sulaymān, who nominally supplanted her in the supremacy. After the troubled reign of Nūshīrwān, the Jalayrs were the chief power in Persia, and the dynasty of Hūlāgū became extinct. The Jalayrs, Muẓaffarids, Sarbadārids etc., made havoc of the country till the great Tīmūr came and swept them away.

A.H.		A.D.
654	Hūlāgū	1256
663	Abāgā	1265
680	Aḥmad	1281
683	Arghūn	1284
690	Gaykhātū	1291
694	Baydā	1295
694	Ghāzān Maḥmūd	1295
703	Uljāi-tū	1304
716	Abū-Sa'īd	1316
736	Arpā	1335
736	Mūsā	1336

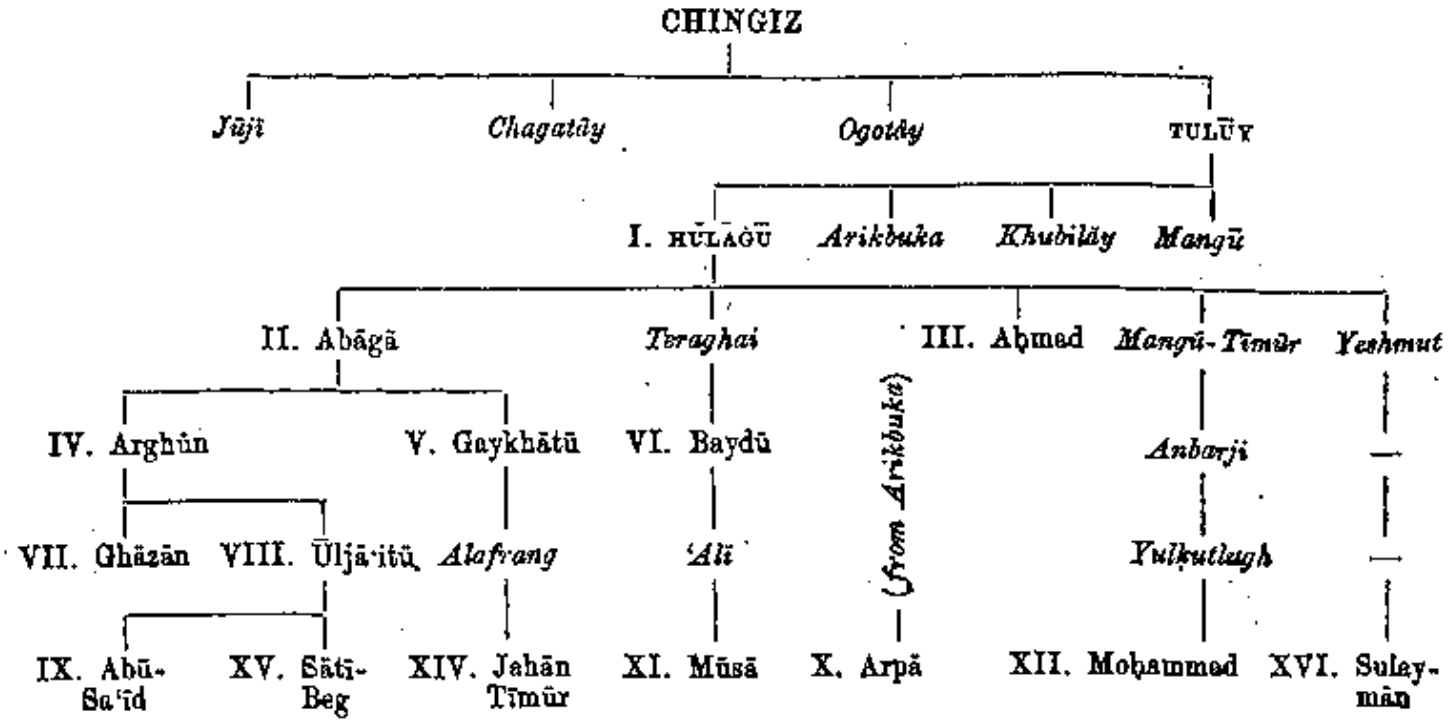
RIVAL KHĀNS*

736–8	Moḥammad	1336–8
739–52	Tughā-Tīmūr	1338–51
739–41	Jahān-Tīmūr	1339–40
739–40	Sātī-Beg (princess)	1339
740–4	Sulaymān (m. Sātī Beg)	1339–43
746	Nūshīrwān	1344

---

* Moḥammad, Tughā-Tīmūr, and Jahān-Tīmūr were set up as puppet-khāns by the Jalayr Amīr, Shaykh Ḥasan Buzurg; Sātī-Beg and her husband Sulaymān were nominees of the rival Amīr Ḥasan Kūchuk Chūpānī; and Nūshīrwān of Ashraf Chūpānī. All were of the posterity of Hūlāgū, except Tughā-Tīmūr who was descended from a brother of Chingiz Khān, and Nūshīrwān whose pedigree is doubtful.

ĪL-KHĀNS OF PERSIA



A.H. A.D.

621—907 **83. KHĀNS OF THE GOLDEN HORDE** 1224—1502

To Jūjī, the eldest son of Chingiz, were assigned the tribes of the old empire of Ḳarā-Khitay, north of the Sīhūn or Jaxartes, and here he, dying before his father, was succeeded by his eldest son Orda. A younger son of Jūjī, Bātū, by his famous invasion of Europe, extended the appanage of his family much further to the west, and secured for himself the sovereignty of the Turkish Khānate of Kipchak. North of Bātū's territory, another brother, Tūka-Tīmūr, appears to have been allotted the district of Great Bulgaria, on the Upper Volga; a fourth son of Jūjī, Shaybān, ruled the steppes now known as those of the Kirghiz Kazaks, north of Orda's appanage, and a fifth, Teval, led the Pechenegs, afterwards known as Nogāys, between the Ural and Yemba. All these tribes and their chiefs were more or less subject to the family of Bātū, which, although a younger branch, had acquired the greatest power and had made their capital Sarāy on the Volga the metropolis of the Jūjid empire; and all these tribes are included in the general name *Golden Horde*, so-called from the Khān's royal camp, *Sir Orda* or Golden Camp. It must be added that only the ruling family

and the cream of the army were of Mongol race: the vast majority of the tribes allotted to the sons of Jūjī were conquered Turks or Turkomans.

The family of Jūjī has, therefore, to be considered in the following distinct lines:—

A. *The line of Bātū*, chief Khāns of the Golden Horde, ruling the Blue Horde in Western Kipchak (1224–1359).

B. *The line of Orda*, titular heads of the family, ruling the White Horde in Eastern Kipchak (1226–1428), Khāns of the Golden Horde in Western Kipchak after Bātū's line (1378–1502); and finally decaying as Khāns of Astrakhān (1466–1554).

C. *The line of Tūka-Tīmūr*, Khāns of Great Bulgaria, north of Kipchak; occasional Khāns of the Golden Horde in Western Kipchak; finally Khāns of Kazan (1438–1552), Kazimof (1450–1678), and Krim (1420–1783).

D. *The line of Shaybān*, in the Uzbeg or Kirghiz Kazāk steppes (1224–1659); afterwards migrating and becoming Khāns of Khiva and Bukhārā (1500–1872).

A. *The line of Bātū*:—Chief Khāns of the Golden Horde; appanage, the Blue Horde in Western Kipchak* (1224–1359).

Bātū's line had the privilege of ruling what was emphatically the Great Khānate of the West. Its history is important in its relations with the growth of Russia. At first the liege-lords of the Russian princes, receivers of their tribute, and owners of their daughters, it was the fate of the Great Khāns of Kipchak eventually to become the vassals of those whom they had once held in bondage. But before this stage in the decay of the Golden Horde, Bātū's line had become extinct, and the Khāns had been supplied from his brothers' families. So long as the descendants of Bātū held the reins of government, the great domain of the Khānate of Kipchak was maintained in all its power. The history of this line, through ten Khāns, to Jānī-Beg, the last great ruler of this branch of Jūjī's family, is comparatively plain. But on his death in 1357 anarchy ensued. His son Birdī-Beg reigned for

* The country watered by the Don and the Volga, extending east and west from the Ural or Yaik to the Dnieper, and north and south from the Black Sea and Caspian to Ukek. Howorth, ii. 36–194.

two years; two Khāns asserting themselves to be sons of Jānī-Beg succeeded in a single year; and then follows an intricate period of twenty years of rival candidates.

There were five branches of Jūjī's house from which claimants for the Golden Khānate might spring, on the extinction of Bātū's line. North and south, in Great Bulgaria and the Krim, ruled the numerous progeny of Tūka-Tīmūr. South also, by the Caucasus, camping along the Terek and Kuma, were the descendants of Baraka, the younger brother and second successor to Bātū, to whom the Golden Horde owed much of its terrible prestige. East of the Great Khānate was the White Horde with its chiefs of the family of Orda; and also east, but further north, were the Uzbeg tribes of Shaybān's leading; whilst along the northern shore of the Caspian the clans of Nogāy pastured their herds. The attribution of the fifteen khāns of this period of rival families to their several ancestors in the table on page 230 is partly conjectural, but their dates are established by coins. In 1378, the sovereignty of the Golden Horde passed into the family of Orda in the person of Tōḳtāmish.

B. *The Line of Orda*:—Appanage, the White Horde in Eastern Kipchak,* 1226–1428; Khāns of the Golden Horde in Western Kipchak, 1378–1502; Khāns of Astrakhān, 1466–1554.

Although Bātū was the most powerful of the sons of Jūjī, Orda the eldest inherited his father's appanage by the Jaxartes, and received a special homage as hereditary head of the family. He ruled the left division of the Golden Horde, known as the White Horde (Āḳ Orda), (a colour which ranked higher than the Blue), in distinction from the right wing, or Bātū's tribes, which were designated the Blue Horde (Kōk Orda) in token of imaginary dependence. Living in the far-away steppes beyond the Caspian, the White Horde soon yielded the palm to its Blue brethren on the Don and Volga; but in its rough wintry life it retained a vigour and hardihood which eventually placed its rulers on the throne of the more civilized and decayed descendants of Bātū.

Of the earlier rulers of the White Horde little is

* The country of the Lower Jaxartes and the Ulugh and Kūchuk Tāg Mountains: bounded on the west by Bātū's Blue Horde, on the north by Shaybān's Uzbegs, on the east by Chagatāy's Khānate, on the south by the desert of Ḳizil Ḳumm and the Alexandrovski range. Howorth, ii. 216–362.

known; the Khānate passed regularly from father to son; and the only noticeable fact is the possession by Kūchī of a territory at Ghazna and Bāmiyān under the suzerainty of either the Chagatāy Khāns or the Īl-khāns of Persia. Ūrūs Khān is the first chief of Orda's line who possesses any individuality in the history of the White Horde. He had the distinction of defeating the troops of Tīmūr more than once. Tīmūr in his overbearing fashion had appointed to the sovereignty of the tribes of Jūjī's appanage a member of Orda's family, Tōḳtāmish, whose father had been killed and he himself exiled by Ūrūs Khān. Assisted by the troops supplied by Tīmūr to carry his nomination into effect, Tōḳtāmish sustained several repulses at the hands of Ūrūs, and it was not till after the death of this Khān and the short reign of Tōḳtakya his son that Tōḳtāmish was able to wrest the command of the White Horde from another son of Ūrūs, Tīmūr Malik.

Tōḳtāmish is 'the last really great figure in the history of the Golden Horde.' After seizing the throne of the White Horde he marched upon Western Kipchak, defeated Mamāy, the king-maker of Sarāy, and by this victory in 1378 (*780*) put an end to the division between the White and the Blue Hordes, and united Eastern and Western

Kipchak under his sole rule. Henceforward Orda's family ruled the Blue Horde, bringing no doubt the cream of the White Horde with them; and their original camping-grounds gradually passed into the hands of the descendants of Shaybān. Under Tōḳtāmish the Golden Horde recovered much of its prestige. A great campaign was carried into Russia, Moscow was sacked and burnt (1382), and the Grand Principality was ravaged with the ancient fury of the Mongols. This revival of the glory of Kipchak, however, was only the flicker of a dying torch. Tōḳtāmish had the misfortune or the ingratitude to quarrel with the prince who had helped him to his success; and no one offended Tīmūr with impunity. The great conqueror in two campaigns, one marked by the battle of Urtupa on the 18th June, 1391, and the second by a crushing defeat near the Terek in 1395, when Tōḳtāmish had returned from exile, destroyed for ever the power of the Khāns of Kipchak. Tōḳtāmish indeed re-entered Sarāy in 1398, after Tīmūr's departure, but he was speedily driven out again by Tīmūr Ḳutlugh, son of his old enemy, Ūrūs, and forced to take refuge with the Lithuanian prince Vitut, whom he involved in war with the Tatars; he died in 1406.

The period succeeding the overthrow of Tōḳtāmish is one of the most obscure in the labyrinth of dark passages which the history of the Golden Horde affords. It is filled with the incessant struggles of *Rival Families* for the throne. There were at least three distinct sets of candidates for the decayed Khānship: the family of Ūrūs Khān, supported by the Nogāy chief Idiku, the second king-maker of Kipchak; the sons of Tōḳtāmish; and some younger members of the family of Shaybān. The table on page 232 will give an idea of this confused period. The rival Khāns not only ruled simultaneously in Kipchak, but held the same cities in the same years; and the history of Sarāy and other large towns must have been the record of continual sieges and recaptures.

This is the end of the Golden Horde. It was absorbed by Russia in 1502 (*907*), and its history degenerates into the petty annals of its scattered fragments. Of these one alone belonged to the family of Orda—the insignificant Khānate of Astrakhān,* founded by Ḳāsim, a grandson of Kūchuk Moḥammad, about 1466, and held by his descendants until its abolition in 1554 by the Grand Prince of Moscow.

Howorth, ii. 349-362.

KHĀNS OF THE GOLDEN HORDE

i. THE BLUE HORDE OF WESTERN KIPCHAK

a. FAMILY OF BĀTŪ

A.H.		A.D.
621	Bātū	1224
654	Sartak	1256
654	Baraka	1256
664	Mangū-Tīmūr	1266
679	Tūda-Mangū	1280
686	[Ṭūla Bughā]	1287
689	Tōḳtū	1290
712	Ūzbeg	1312
741	Tīnī-Beg	1340
741	Jānī-Beg Maḥmūd	1340
758	Birdī-Beg Moḥammad	1357
760	Ḳūlnā	1359
760	Nūrūz-Beg	1359

b. RIVAL FAMILIES

A.H.	OF SHAYBĀN	OF ORDA	OF TŪKA-TĪMŪR
760	Khiḍr		
762	Mardūd	762 Tīmūr Khōja	762 Kildī Beg
		762 Murīd Khōja	
764–8	Pūlād Khōja	764 Ḳutlugh Khōja	764 ʿAzīz Shaykh
		764 ʿAbd-Allāh	
			768 Ḥasan
772	Tūlūn-Beg	771 Moḥammad Būlāk	—772
775	Ilbān	—780	
777	Khāghān		
779	ʿArab Shāh		
—780			

780 *United to White Horde* 1378]

ii. THE WHITE HORDE OF EASTERN KIPCHAK

FAMILY OF ORDA

A.H.		A.D.
623	Orda	1226
679	Kūchī	1280
701	Bāyān	1301
709	Sāsibūkā	1309
715	Ibisan	1315
720	Mubārak Khōja	1320
745	Chimtāy	1344
762	Ūrūs	1361
777	Tōḳtakya	1375
777	Tīmūr Malik	1375
778	Tōḳtāmish Ghiyāth-al-dīn	1376
—793	(who unites Blue and White Hordes 1378)	—1391

[*Rival Families*]

A.H.	Eastern Kipchak Branch	OF ORDA: House of Ūrūs		OF ORDA: House of Tōḳtāmish		OF SHAYBĀN	
797	Koirijak	797	Tīmūr Kutlugh	793	Beg Pūlād		
		802	Shādī Beg				
		810–15	Pūlād			805–22	Darwīsh
		809–18	Tīmūr	814	Jalāl-al-dīn		
				816	Karīm Birdī		
		818	Chakra	817	Kibak		
823	Burāḳ (seizes part of West Kipchak 827–831)	827	Küchuk Moḥammad	*c.* 818	Jabar Birdī	822	Sayyid Aḥmad
		—*c.* 864					
	FAMILY OF TŪKA-TĪMŪR						
830	Dawlat Birdī (in absence of Burāḳ)						
		c. 864	Maḥmūd				
		864	Aḥmad				
		886	Sayyid Aḥmad Murtaḍā Shaykh Aḥmad				

[907 *Final submission to Russia.* 1502]

A.H.		A.D.
823—1197	84. KHĀNS OF THE ḲRIM (CRIMEA)	*c.* 1420—1783

C. *The Line of Tūka-Tīmūr* :—Appanage, Great Bulgaria, and subsequently Ḳrim and Kaffa; occasional Khāns of the Golden Horde; finally, Khāns of Kazan, Kazimof, and Ḳrim.*

Tūka-Tīmūr was the youngest son of Jūjī, and was attached to the left (or Orda's) wing of the Golden Horde, but probably had his own camping-grounds on the Upper Volga, including part at least of Great Bulgaria. Almost nothing is known of this branch in its original seats. Mangū-Tīmūr (of Bāṭū's line) gave Urung-Tīmūr, son of Tūka-Tīmūr, Ḳrim and Kaffa, and the family being thus established north and south of Bātū's Khānate soon began to interfere in its dynastic succession. We have seen how three Khāns of the first period of rival families belonged probably to Tūka-Tīmūr's line, and one of the second period. But the chief importance of this branch is after the downfall of the Golden Khānate which followed upon Tīmūr's invasions.

* Howorth, ii. 198–216, 274, 363–626, 1074–5

One of the line, Ulugh Moḥammad, after attempting to seize the Great Khānate on Burāḳ's death, betook himself in 1438 to his old possession of Great Bulgaria, and there revived his forefathers' Khānate, under the title of *Khānate of Kazan*, which, no longer overshadowed by the Great Khānate on its south, became an independent thorn in the side of the growing Muscovite giant. With the death, however, of Moḥammad Amīn, in 1519, the Moḥammadan posterity of the founder of Kazan came to an end, and Khāns of the true faith had to be transplanted from the Kazimof, Ḳrim, Astrakhān and other stocks, under the auspices of Russia, who finally suppressed the Khānate and appointed a Russian governor of Kazan in 1552.

When Ulugh Moḥammad was murdered by his son Maḥmūdak, in 1446, two of his other sons fled to Russia, and after some service in the Muscovite army one of these, Ḳāsim, was granted the town and district of Gorodetz on the Oka, in the division of Riazan. He gave the town his own name, and the line of Khāns ruling here, and known as the *Khāns of Kazimof*, were used by Russia to play off against their more powerful neighbour at Kazan, and were allowed to supply a couple of Khāns to the greater Khānate on the ex-

tinction of Ulugh Moḥammad's direct Muslim line. This Khānate, which never had a really independent existence, was absorbed by Russia in 1678.

The most important of the three Khānates sprung from the house of Tūka-Tīmūr was that of the Ḳrim. Ulugh Moḥammad had a brother, Tāsh-Tīmūr, who was once a general under Tōḳtāmish, and was the actual founder of the powerful dynasty of the *Khāns of the Ḳrim* or Crimea, though his son, Hājji Girāy, is generally regarded as the first Khān. The Ḳrim dynasty was always an element in the Eastern Question, and as an outpost of Turkey or an ally of Russia was an object of consideration on both sides. Eventually the inconvenience of these violent neighbours was agreed between Russia and Turkey, and the Khānate of the Ḳrim was extinguished by treaty in 1783. A lineal descendant of these powerful Khāns, one Sulṭān Ḳrim Girāy Kattī Girāy, settled in Edinburgh and married a Scottish lady.*

Athenæum, No. 2762

KHÂNS OF THE ḲRIM (CRIMEA)

A.H.		A.D.
823	Hājjī Girāy	*c.* 1420
871	Nūr-Dawlat	1466
873	Manglī Girāy I	1469
878	Nūr-Dawlat (*restored*)	1474
882	Jānī-Beg Girāy I	1477
883	Manglī Girāy (*restored*)	1478
921	Moḥammad Girāy I	1515
929	Ghāzī Girāy I	1523
929	Sa'ādat Girāy I	1523
938	Islām Girāy I	1532
938	Ṣāḥib Girāy I	1532
958	Dawlat Girāy I	1551
985	Moḥammad Girāy II	1577
992	Islām Girāy II	1584
996	Ghāzī Girāy II	1588
002	Fatḥ Girāy I	1594
002	Ghāzī Girāy II (*restored*)	1594
017	Salāmat Girāy I	1608
019	Jānī-Beg Girāy II	1610
031	Moḥammad Girāy III	1627
036	Jānī-Beg II (*restored*)	1635
045	Ināyat Girāy	1638
048	Bahādur Girāy	1642
052	Moḥammad Girāy IV	1644
054	Islām Girāy III	
064	Moḥammad IV (*restored*)	1654
075	'Ādil Girāy	1665
081	Selīm Girāy I	1670
088	Murād Girāy	1677
094	Hājjī Girāy II	1683

1096	Selīm I (*restored*)	1684
1102	Sa'ādat Girāy II	1691
1102	Ṣafā Girāy	1691
1103	Selīm I (*again restored*)	1692
1109	Dawlat Girāy II	1698
1114	Selīm I (*again restored*)	1702
1117	Ghāzī Girāy III	1705
1119	Kaplan Girāy I	1707
1119	Dawlat Girāy (*restored*)	1707
1126	Kaplan I (*restored*)	1713
1127	Ḳarā Dawlat Girāy	1715
1127	Sa'ādat Girāy III	1715
1136	Manglī Girāy II	1724
1142	Kaplan I (*again restored*)	1730
1149	Fatḥ Girāy II	1736
1150	Manglī II (restored)	1737
1152	Salāmat Girāy II	1739
1156	Selīm Girāy II	1743
1161	Arslān Girāy	1748
1168	Ḥākim Girāy	1755
1171	Ḳrīm Girāy	1758
1177	Selīm Girāy III	1764
1180	Arslān Girāy (*restored*)	1767
1181	Makhṣūd Girāy I	1767
1182	Ḳrim Girāy (*restored*)	1768
1184	Dawlat Girāy III	1770
1184	Kaplan Girāy II	1771
1184	Selīm III (*restored*)	1771
1185	Makhṣūd Girāy II	1771
1185	Ṣāḥib Girāy II	1772
1189	Dawlat III (*restored*)	1775
1191	Shāhīn Girāy	1777
—1197	[*Crimea ceded to Russia*]	—1783

D. *The Line of Shaybān*:—Appanage, the Uzbeg country (between the Ural and Chu rivers); occasional Khāns of the Golden Horde; Khāns or Czars of Tiumen, *circ.* 1226—1659; Khāns of Bukhārā, 1500—1868, and of Khiva, 1515—1872.*

When Bātū invaded Hungary in 1240, his brother Shaybān accompanied him, and acquitted himself so well that Bātū not only made him King of Hungary, a title of a somewhat nominal value, but gave him an appanage of certain tribes north of Orda's Khānate. Shaybān was to camp in summer from the Ural mountains to the rivers Ilek and Irghiz, and in winter about the lands watered by the Sir, Chu, and Sarisu. His descendant in the sixth generation, Mangū-Tīmūr, was a contemporary of the great Khān Uzbeg of the Golden Horde, and from him the tribes of Shaybān's appanage took the name of Uzbegs, which has since become famous. On the extinction of Bātū's line, the family of Shaybān supplied several Khāns to the Golden Horde; and in the second period of rival families, after the overthrow of

* Howorth, ii. 686–1010

Tōḳtāmish, the house of Shaybān is represented, in all probability, by Darwīsh Khān and Sayyid Aḥmad.

The home-line of Shaybān remained in the original camping-grounds and assumed the title of *Czars of the Tiumen*, under which they were obeyed over a great part of Siberia. They survived till 1659, when their country was occupied by the Kaltnuks: but for some time before this their authority had been purely nominal.

Much more important were the branches descended from Pūlād, son of Mangū-Tīmūr, and once ruler of the Golden Horde. Pūlād's two sons, Ibrāhīm and 'Arab-Shāh, were respectively ancestors of the *Khāns of Bukhārā* and *Khoārizm* or *Khiva*. The former Khānate was founded by Moḥammad Shaybānī, grandson of Abū-l-Khayr, who was grandson of Ibrāhīm, in 1500, and survives to the present day, although General Kaufmann made it a Russian dependency in 1868. 'Arab-Shāh, the founder of the Khānate of Khiva, is also known as, if not a Khān of the Golden Horde, at least a striker of coins in Kipchak just before the invasion of Tōḳtāmish. His descendant in the fifth generation, Ilbars Khān, took forcible possession of Transoxiana and adjacent provinces after Shaybānī's death, probably about 1515, and his

posterity are still called Khāns of Khiva, but they have been tributary* to Russia since 1872. The history of these Khānates, which sprang up on the ruins of the empire of Tīmūr, belong to a later section (XIII).

It should be added that another son of Jūjī, Teval, was the chief of the Pechenegs, camping about the river Bug in Southern Russia, and was the grandfather of Nogāy, who took a large part in the affairs of the Golden Horde, but afterwards fell out with Tōḳtū and was driven, along with his tribes, who adopted the name of Nogāys, beyond the Volga, and found settlements between the Ural and the Yemba. The history of this horde is very fragmentary, and their state was peculiarly migratory.*

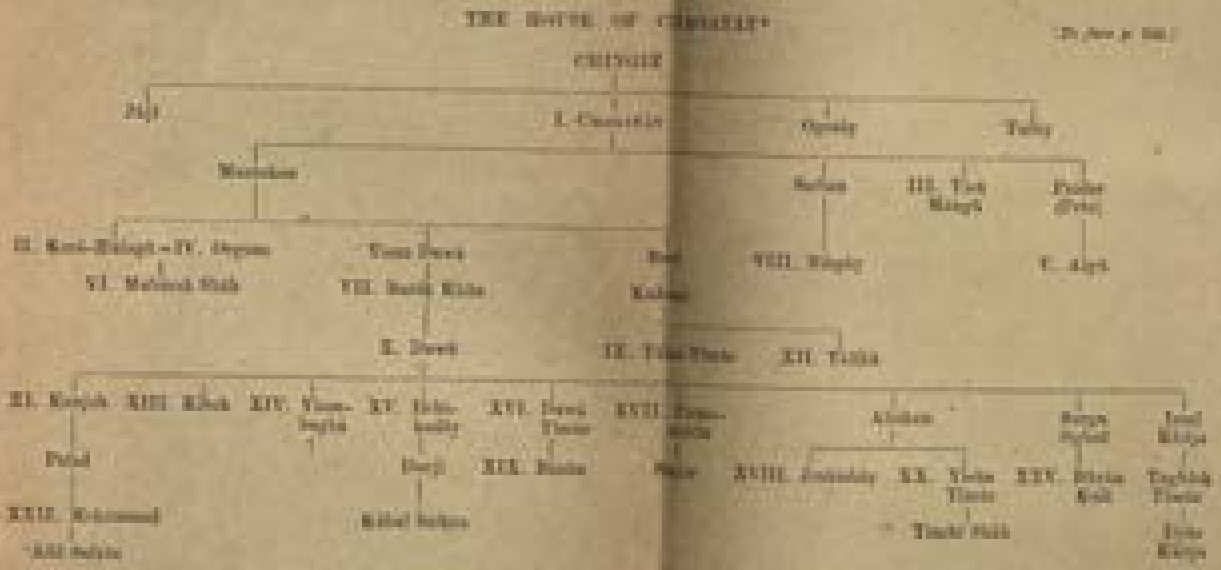
* Howorth, ii. 1011–1068

A.H.		A.D.
624—760	**85. CHAGATĀY KHĀNS** (TRANSOXIANA)	1227—1358

The Khānātes founded by three sons of Chingiz—Ogotāy, Tulūy, and Jūjī—have in turn been noticed. There remains Chagatāy, who was allotted the appanage of Mā-warā-*l*-nahr, or Transoxiana (Bukharia), with part of Kāshghar, Badakhshān, Balkh, and Ghazna, and who founded the Khānate of those regions. The history of his descendants is very scantily recorded, and, beyond occasional raids over the Persian border and internal disputes, nothing of note has been set down. Two members of Ogotāy's family ('Alī and Dānishmandja) intrude themselves into the series, proving the presence of Ogotāy chiefs of rank and importance in the Chagatāy dominions (pp. 210, 265). The genealogy and chronology of this branch are alike doubtful; and the following list is merely tentative.

A.H.		A.D.
624	Chagatāy	1227
639	Ḳarā-Hūlāgū	1242
645	Yisū Mangū	1247
650	Ḳarā-Hūlāgū (*restored*)	1252
650	Orgāna Khātūn	1252
659	Algū	1261
664	Mubārak Shāh	1266
664	Burāḳ Khān	1266
668	Nikpāy	1270
670	Tūka-Tīmūr	1272
c. 672	Duwā Khān	*c.* 1274
706	Kunjuk Khān	1306
708	Tālikū	1308
709	Kibak Khān	1309
709	Yisunbughā	1309
c. 718	Kibak Khān (*restored*)	1318
721	Ilchīkadāy	1321
721	Duwā Tīmūr	1321
722	Tirmashirīn	1322
730–4 ?	Sinjar ?	1330–4 ?
734	Jingisbay	1334
c. 735	Būzūn	*c.* 1335
c. 739	Yisun Tīmūr	*c.* 1339
c. 741	'Alī (of Ogotāy stock)	*c.* 1340
c. 743	Moḥammad	*c.* 1342
744	Kazan	1343
747	Dānishmandja (of Ogotāy stock)	1346
749	Būyān Kulī	1348
—760		—1358

[*Anarchy and rival chiefs, until*
771 *Supremacy of Timūr* 1370.]



* This table has been kindly arranged for me by Sir Henry Howorth.

XII. PERSIA

SÆC. XIV–XIX

86. JALAYRS (-'IRĀḲ)

87. MUẓAFFARIDS (FĀRS)

88. SARBADĀRIDS (KHURĀSĀN)

89. KARTS (HERĀT)

TĪMŪRIDS (*See* XIII)

90. ḲARĀ-ḲUYUNLĪ (ADHARBĪJĀN)

91. AḲ-ḲUYUNLĪ (ADHARBĪJĀN)

92. ṢAFAVIDS
93. AFGHĀNS
94. AFSHĀRIDS
95. ZANDS
96. ḲĀJĀRS

} SHĀHS OF PERSIA

XII. PERSIA

SÆC. XIV—XIX

On the decay of the power of the Persian Mongols a number of prominent chiefs and provincial governors asserted their independence. Of these the Jalayrs were the most powerful, and held the provinces of ʿIrāḳ and Adharbījān, in which they were succeeded by the Turkomāns of the Black and White Sheep. The more eastern provinces were ruled by the Muẓaffarids, but not without a severe struggle with Abū-Isḥāḳ and other members of the family of Maḥmūd Shāh Injū, whose seat was Ispahān. In the north-east, Khurāsān was for a time divided between the Sarbadārids and the Kart Maliks of Herāt. Tīmūr swept across Persia in 1384–93, and his descendants held part of the country for a century. At the beginning of the 16th century, however, Shāh Ismāʿīl the Ṣafavid established his authority over all the provinces governed by the Tīmūrids, Turkomāns, and minor dynasties, and presently added Khurāsān, since which time the modern kingdom of the Shāhs of Persia has remained practically unchanged in its boundaries, save for some losses on the west to Turkey.

A.H. 736—814 | 86. JALAYRS | A.D. 1336–1411

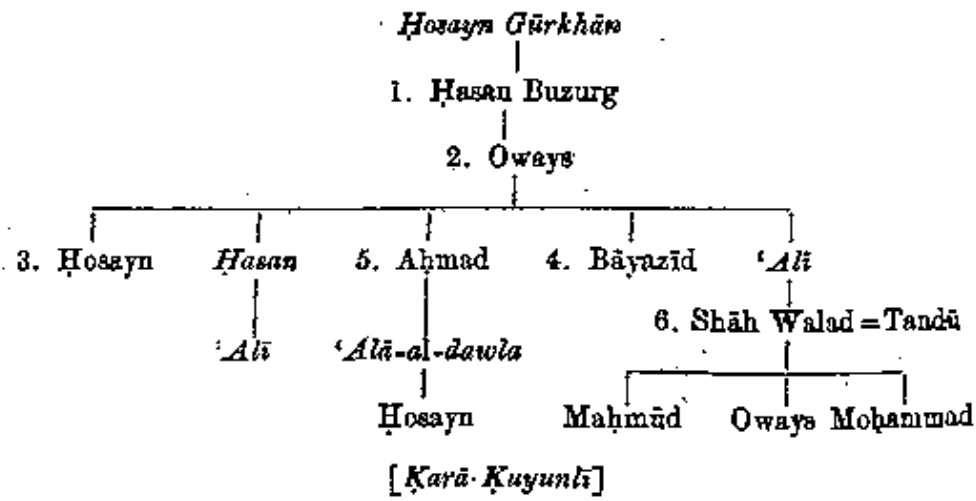
(-'IRĀḲ, ETC.)

The chiefs of the tribe of Jalayrs, also called Ilkānians, became the leading family in Persia after the death of the Mongol Abū-Sa'īd. Their head, Shaykh Ḥasan Buzurg ('the Great'), as has been seen (pp. 219, 220), set up three puppets on the Mongol throne; after which he assumed sovereign functions himself, and taking possession of -'Irāḳ made Baghdād his capital. His son Oways, who succeeded him in 757 (1356), took Adharbījān and Tabrīz from the Golden Horde (759), and added -Mōṣil and Diyār-Bakr to his dominions (766). Ḥusayn, his successor, was engaged in wars with his neighbours the Muzaffarids of eastern Persia, and with the Turkomāns of the Black Sheep, who had made themselves dominant in Armenia and the country south of Lake Van; until the latter agreed to become his allies (779). On his death in 1382 (784), the kingdom was divided between his two sons; Adharbījān and -'Irāḳ falling to Sulṭān Aḥmad, and part of Kurdistān

(for a year) to Bāyazīd. On the invasion of Tīmūr, who overran northern Persia and Armenia in 1384–7, and reduced Baghdād, Mesopotamia, Diyār-Bakr, and Vān in 1393 (*796*), Sulṭān Aḥmad fled to Egypt, where he took refuge with the Mamlūk Sulṭān Barḳūḳ, who assisted him to recover Baghdād after Tīmūr's return to Samarḳand. From this time until Tīmūr's death in 1405 (*807*) Sulṭān Aḥmad's life was spent in losing and recapturing his dominions, and when in *808* he was once more actual ruler of Baghdād, his breach with Ḳarā-Yūsuf the Turkomān and his ensuing invasion of Adharbījān ended in his defeat and death, 1410 (*813*). His nephew Shāh Walad continued to govern Baghdād until the arrival of the Black Sheep in 1411; and Shāh Walad's widow, Tandū (who had previously been married to the Mamlūk Barḳūḳ) reigned at Wāsiṭ, -Baṣra, and Shūstar (doing homage, however, to the Tīmūrid Shāh Rukh) till *819*, when her stepson succeeded to the government, and was followed by his brothers Oways (*822–829*) and Moḥammad, and by their cousin Ḥusayn, who was killed by the Black Sheep Turkomāns.*

* See Sir H. H. Howorth, *History of the Mongols*, iii, 654–679

A.H.		A.D.
736	Shaykh Ḥasan Buzurg	1336
757	Shaykh Oways	1356
777	Ḥosayn	1374
784–5	Bāyazīd (in Kurdistān) . . .	
784	Sulṭān Aḥmad	1382
	(*Repeatedly expelled by Tīmūr* 796–807)	
813	Shāh Walad	1410
–814		1411



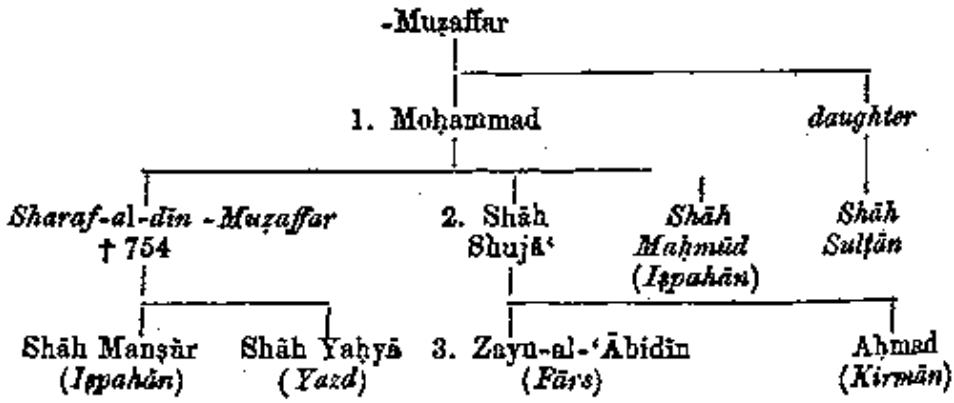
A.H. 713—795 **87. MUẒAFFARIDS** A.D. 1313—1393

(FĀRS, KIRMĀN, AND KURDISTĀN)

The Amīr -Muẓaffar, founder of this dynasty, a grandson of Ghiyāth-*al*-dīn Ḥājjī of Khurāsān, after holding various posts at the court of the Mongols of Persia, was appointed governor of Maybudh near Iṣpahān. His son Mubāriz-*al*-dīn Moḥammad succeeded him in his government in 1313 (*713*), and received the much more important command of Yazd in Fārs in 1319 (*719*) from the Mongol Abū-Sa'īd. Kirmān was added in 1340 (*741*), and after a prolonged struggle with Abū-Isḥāḳ Injū, Moḥammad captured Shīrāz and all Fārs in 1353 (*754*), and added Iṣpahān in 1356 (*758*), when Abū-Isḥāḳ was executed. After carrying his arms successfully as far north as Tabrīz, Moḥammad was deposed and blinded in 1357 (*759*), and, although restored for a brief space, died in a second exile in 1364 (*765*). His successors retained the government of Fārs, Kirmān, and Kurdistān until the irruption of Tīmūr in 1387.* The poet Ḥāfiẓ lived at the court of Shāh Shujā'.

* Howorth, iii, 693–716.

A.H		A.D.
713	Mubāriz-al-dīn Moḥammad b. -Muẓaffar .	1313
759	Jalāl-al-dīn Shāh Shujā'	1357
786–9	Mujāhid-al-dīn 'Alī Zayn-al-'Abidīn . .	1384–
	(Expelled by Timūr)	—1387
789	Shāh Yaḥyā (*at Yazd*) Sulṭān Aḥmad (*at Kirmān*) *contemporary* . Shāh Manṣūr (*at Iṣpahān*)	1387
—795		—1393



[*Timūrids*]

A.H.		A.D.
737—783	**88. SARBADĀRIDS**	1337—1381
	(KHURĀSĀN)	

'Abd-*al*-Razzāḳ, a native of the village of Bashtīn in Khurāsān, and at one time in the service of the Ilkhān Abū-Sa'īd, in 1337 (*737*) headed a rebellion of his countrymen against the oppression of the local governor. The rebels took the name of *Sar-ba-dār* or "Head to the gibbet" in token of the neck-or-nothing-ness of their cause. Nevertheless they obtained possession of Sabzawār and the neighbouring district, and held it for nearly half a century, during which period twelve successive chiefs assumed the command, nine of whom suffered violent deaths.

A.H.		A.D.
737	'Abd-*al*-Razzāḳ b. Faḍl-Allāh . . .	1337
738	Wajīh-*al*-dīn Mas'ūd b. Faḍl-Allāh . .	1338
744	Ay-Tīmūr Moḥammad	1344
746	Isfandiyār	1346
747	Faḍl-Allāh	1346
748	Shams-*al*-dīn 'Alī	1347
753	Yaḥyā	1352
756	Ẓahīr-*al*-dīn	1355
760	Haydar -Ḳaṣṣāb	1359
760	Luṭf-Allāh	1359
761	Ḥasan -Dāmighānī	1360
766	'Alī -Mu'ayyad	1364
—783	[*Abolished by Tīmūr*]	—1381

A.H. 643—791 | **89. KARTS (HERÂT)** | A.D. 1245—1389

The Maliks of Herāt of the Kart race of Ghōr had held their government from the early days of the Mongol rule in Persia. As the Mongols grew weak, the Karts became an important power in Khurāsān, until Herāt was conquered by Tīmūr in 1381 (*783*), and, after a period of vassalage, the dynasty was extinguished in 1389 (*791*).

A.H.		A.D.
643	Shams-*al*-dīn I	1245
677–82	Rukn-*al*-dīn, *contemp.* 1278–83	
684	Fakhr-*al*-dīn	1285
708	Ghiyāth-*al*-dīn	1308
729	Shams-*al*-dīn II	1328
730	Ḥāfiẓ	1329
732	Mu'izz-*al*-dīn	1331
772	Ghiyāth-*al*-dīn Pīr 'Alī	1370
—791		—1389

Rukn-al-dīn Abū-Bakr b. 'Othmān

1. Shams-*al*-dīn I
2. Rukn-*al*-dīn
3. Fakhr-*al*-dīn
4. Ghiyāth-*al*-dīn
5. Shams-*al*-dīn II
6. Ḥāfiẓ
7. Mu'izz-*al*-dīn
   - Moḥammed (*Sarakhs*)
   - 8. Ghiyāth-*al*-dīn Pīr 'Al

[*Tīmūrids*]

A.H. A.D.

780—874 90. ḴARĀ-ḴUYUNLĪ 1378—1469

TURKOMANS OF THE BLACK SHEEP

(ADHARBĪJĀN, ETC.)

In the last quarter of the fourteenth century a clan of Turkomāns, known as the Black Sheep, from the device on their standard, dominated the country south of the lake of Van, and, having allied themselves with the Jalayr Sulṭān Ḥosayn, established a dynasty in Armenia and Adharbījān. Ḳarā-Yūsuf, the second chief of the line, was several times driven into exile by Tīmūr, but as often returned, and after the conqueror's death in 1405 (*807*) resumed his former dominions, and in 1411 added those of the Jalayrs. The Black Sheep were superseded in 1469 (*874*) by Uzun Ḥasan of the rival clan of the White Sheep.

A.H.		A.H.
780	Ḳarā-Moḥammad	1378
c. 790	Ḳarā-Yūsuf	*c.* 1388
802	*Invasion of Timūr*	1400
808	Ḳarā Yūsuf (*restored*)	1405
823	Iskandar	1420
841	Jahān Shāh	1437
872	Ḥasan 'Alī	1467
—874		—1469

A.H.		A.D.
780—908	**91. ĀḲ-ḴUYUNLĪ**	1378—1502

TURKOMANS OF THE WHITE SHEEP.

(ADHĀRBĪJAN, ETC.)

The White Sheep or Aḳ-Ḳuyunlī succeeded their rivals the Black Sheep in Adharbījān and Diyār-Bakr, but after some thirty years of sole authority they were defeated by Shāh Ismā'īl the Ṣafavid at the great battle of Shurūr in 1502 (*907*), and the dynasty soon afterwards expired.

A.H.		A.D.
780	Ḳarā-Yūluḳ 'Othmān	1378
809	Ḥamza	1406
848	Jahāngīr	1444
871	Uzun Ḥasan	1466
883	Khalīl	1478
884	Ya'ḳūb	1479
896	Baysunḳur*	1490
897	Rustam	1491
902	Aḥmad	1496
903	Murād	1497
905	Alwand	1499
906	Moḥammad	1500
907	Murād (*restored*)	1501
—908		—1502

[*Ṣafavids*]

* 'Alī and Masīḥ were rival claimants in 896.

A.H. A.D.

907—1311 92—6. **SHĀHS OF PERSIA** 1052—1893

The series of the Shāhs of Persia is composed of five distinct dynasties of different races: the Ṣafavids, Afghāns, Afshārids, Zands, and Ḳājārs. Of these the first claimed Arab lineage, for the Ṣafavids traced their descent from the seventh Imām Mūsā -Ḳazam († *183*), of the family of Ḥosayn the grandson of the prophet Moḥammad (p. 72). Many shaykhs of the family acquired a reputation for sanctity, and among these the most celebrated saint was Shaykh Ṣafī-*al*-dīn of Ardabīl, from whom his descendants took their name of Ṣafawī or *Ṣafavid*. It was not till four generations after Shaykh Ṣafī that one of his descendants, Haydar, added the rôle of warrior to the profession of saint. He engaged in a contest with Uzun Ḥasan of the White Sheep Turkomāns, and his third son Ismā'īl, preserving a continuity of policy, seized Shīrwān, utterly defeated the Turkomāns at the battle of Shurūr in the spring of 1502 (*907*), and making Tabrīz his capital proceeded to conquer all Persia. The Tīmūrid governors and other petty dynasts were rapidly subdued, and in a few years Shāh Ismā'īl's arms had advanced through Khurāsān as far as Herāt, besides annexing the southern provinces,

till his dominions stretched from the Oxus to the Persian Gulf, from Afghānistān to the Euphrates. His territories now marched with those of the 'Othmānlīs, and the religious antagonism between the Shī'ite Ṣafavids and the Sunnite 'Othmānlīs, embittered by the wide-spread Shī'ite propaganda in Asia Minor, brought about a war. Selīm the Grim, after massacring or imprisoning 40,000 Shī'ites in his Asiatic dominions, led a campaign against Shāh Ismā'īl. At the head of 80,000 horsemen and 40,000 foot, Selīm marched upon Persia and forced the Shāh to give battle at Chāldirān (1514), when the fine generalship of Sinān Pasha and the valour of the Janizaries won the day. Selīm entered Tabrīz in triumph, and after annexing Diyār-Bakr and some surrounding districts abandoned the idea of further conquests in the East in favour of an invasion of Egypt. From this time onwards there have been frequent contests over the Turko-Persian frontier, and provinces in Georgia and Armenia have been taken and re-taken, but the general boundary has not greatly varied, except when Murād IV conquered Baghdād and annexed Mesopotamia to the Turkish Empire in 1638. In the like manner the northern frontier was long contested by the Uzbegs; and Afghānistān has been

alternately part of India and part of Persia, until the establishment of an independent dynasty by Aḥmad Durrānī in 1747. Bābar, the founder of the Mogul empire in India, was an ally of Shāh Ismā'īl, and his son Humāyūn was aided in his recovery of Hindūstān by Shāh Tahmāsp. The greatest of the Ṣafavid kings was Shāh 'Abbās (1587–1629), who, seconded by Sir Anthony Shirley, the organizer of the Persian army, recovered several of the western provinces from the 'Othmānlīs, and whose reign was celebrated for the cultivation of the arts and literature, the increase of public works, and the observance of an enlightened foreign policy. He belonged to the great epoch which produced such rulers as Sulaymān the Great, Akbar, and Elizabeth.

The Ṣafavid dynasty practically ended when the *Afghāns* under Maḥmūd rose in revolt, seized Herāt and Mashhad, defeated Shāh Ḥosayn, and after a seven months' siege took the capital Iṣpahān in 1722 (*1135*). Members of the Ṣafavid family, however, still retained a vestige of authority, chiefly in Mazandarān, and after ten years of anarchy, revolts, and Russian and Turkish invasions, Nādir Kulī the *Afshārid* Turk, made use of the pretext of restoring the enfeebled Ṣafavids, to seize the

supreme power, to which he soon added the avowed as well as the real sovereignty in 1736 (*1148*). Nādir Shāh not only maintained the Persian kingdom in its fullest extent, but subdued Afghānistān, seized Kābul and Ḳandahār (1737), pushed on to Lahore, defeated the Mogul army after an obstinate battle near Karnāl, and sacked Dehlī in March 1738 (*1151*). Peace was made, and for a time the Persian empire extended from the Indus to the Caucasus.

The Afshārid dynasty, numbering four Shāhs, ended in a period of anarchy, during which the Afghān Āzād held Adharbījān; 'Alī Mardān the Bakhtiyārī, Iṣpahān; Moḥammad Ḥosayn, the chief of the Ḳājārs, ruled Astarabād; and Ḳarīm Khān the Zand fought with Shāh Rukh the Afshārid for the supreme throne. The *Zand* eventually got the upper hand, and from 1750 (*1163*) to 1779 (*1193*) governed all Persia except Khurāsān, where Shāh Rukh the Afshārid, though old and blind, still maintained some show of authority. On the death of Ḳarīm Khān a contest was waged for a dozen years between his Zand successors and Āḳā Moḥammad the *Ḳājār*, which ended in the triumph of the latter, whose nephew in the fourth generation now reigns over the relics of a great people from his throne at Ṭihrān.

A.H.		A.D.
907—1148	**92. ṢAFAVIDS**	1502—1736
907	Ismā'īl I	1502
930	Ṭahmāsp I	1524
984	Ismā'īl II	1576
985	Moḥammad Khudabanda	1578
985	'Abbās I	1587
1038	Ṣafī I	1629
1052	'Abbās II	1642
1077	Sulaymān I	1667
1105	Ḥosayn I	1694
1135	Ṭahmāsp II	1722
1144	'Abbās III	1731
—1148		—1736

93. AFGHĀNS

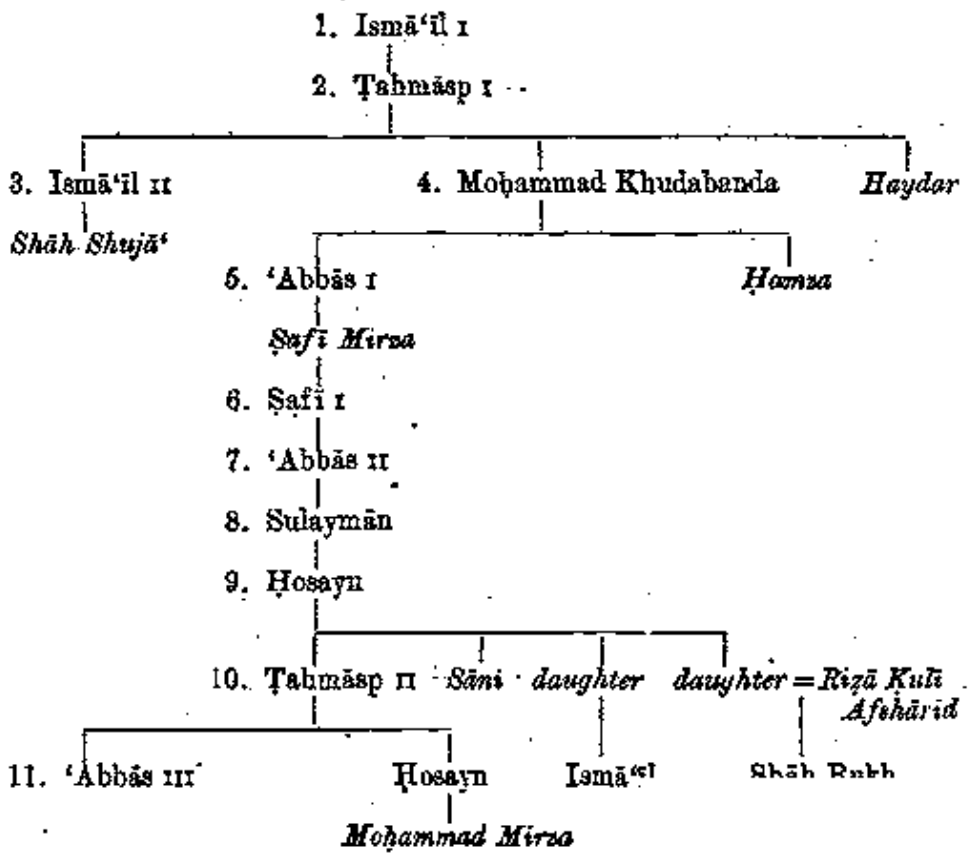
1135	Maḥmūd	1722
1137	Ashraf	1725
—1142		—1729

94. AFSHĀRIDS

1148	Nādir	1736
1160	'Ādil	1747
1161	Shāh Rukh	1748
—1210		—1796

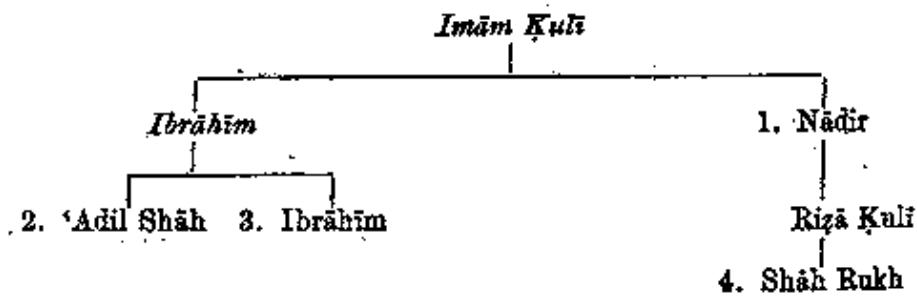
A.H.		A.D.
	95. ZANDS	
1163	Ḳarīm Khān	1750
1193	Abū-l-Fatḥ	1779
1193	ʿAlī Murād	1779
1193	Moḥammad ʿAlī	1779
1193	Ṣādiḳ	1779
1196	ʿAlī Murād (again)	1782
1199	Jaʿfar	1785
1203	Luṭf ʿAlī	1789
—1209		—1794
	96. ḲĀJARS	
1193	Aḳā Moḥammad	1779
1211	Fatḥ ʿAlī	1797
1250	Moḥammad	1834
1264	Nāṣir-al-dīn, *regnant* . .	1848

ṢAFAVIDS*

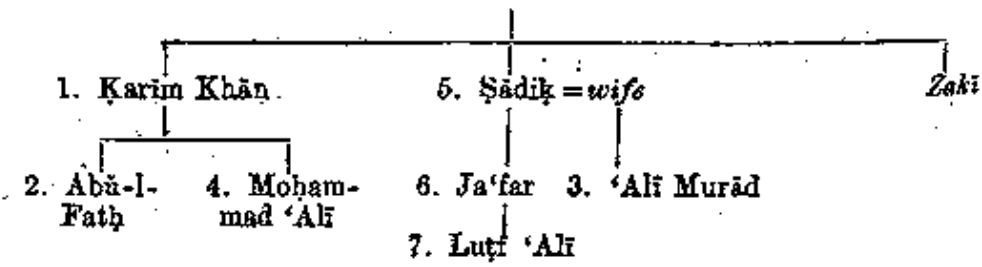


* The pedigrees of the Shāhs of Persia are abridged from the *Catalogue of Persian Coins in the British Museum*, by R. S. Poole, LL.D.

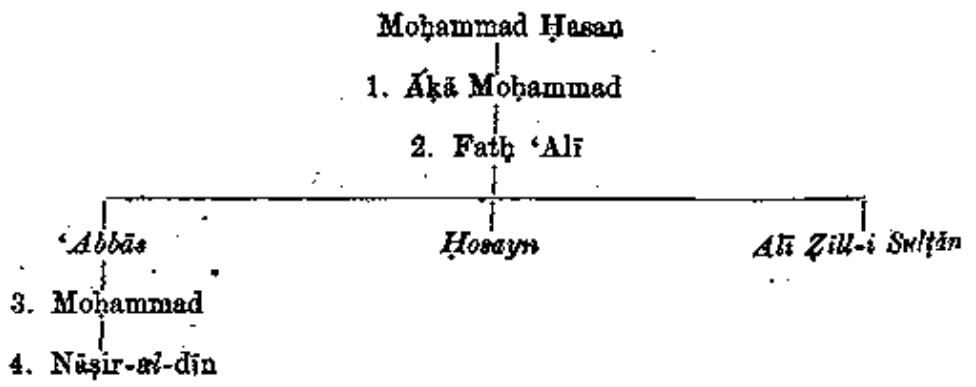
AFSHĀRIDS



ZANDS



ḲĀJĀRS



XIII. TRANSOXIANA

SÆC. XIV—XIX

97. TĪMŪRIDS

98. SHAYBĀNIDS

99. JĀNIDS OF ASTRAKHĀN

100. MANGITS

101. KHĀNS OF KHOḲAND

102. KHĀNS OF KHIVA

XIII.—TRANSOXIANA

SÆC. XIV—XIX

A.H.		A.D.
771—906	97. TĪMŪRIDS	1369—1500

Tīmūr, or Tīmūr Lang (Tīmūr the Lame), commonly corrupted into Tamerlane, was related to the family of Chingiz Ḳaān, and one of his ancestors had been Vizīr to Chagatāy the son of Chingiz and ruler of Transoxiana. Tīmūr, who was born in 1335 (*736*), was appointed to the government of Kash by Tughā-Tīmūr, (p. 220), and became Vizīr to the Chagatāy Khān Suyurghātmish, whose authority he completely usurped before 1369 (*771*), though he allowed the Khān and his successor Maḥmūd to retain the nominal sovereignty until 1397 (*800*). In 1380 (*782*) Tīmūr began a long series of campaigns in Persia; and in seven years overran Khurāsān, Jurjān, Mazandarān, Sijistān, Afghānistān, Fārs, Adharbījān, and Kurdistan. An invasion by Tōḳtāmish, the Khān of the Golden Horde, called his attention nearer home in 1388, but in 1391 (*793*) he inflicted a total defeat on the Khān, which, however, had to be repeated in 1395

(*797*). Meanwhile in 1393 he had taken Baghdād from the Jalayrs, and had reduced Mesopotamia. In 1397 he entered northern India, and in the following year (*801*) raided Kashmīr and Dehlī. His next great movement was to the west: In 1401 he invaded Anatolia, and took Sīwās and Malatia; and in 1402 (*804*) totally routed the 'Othmānlī Turks at Angora and took Sulṭān Bāyazīd prisoner (p. 185). He reinstated the minor princes of Asia Minor, and, having subdued Syria and taken Aleppo and Damascus (*803*), he received the homage of their former possessor, the Mamlūk Sulṭān of Egypt. Whilst on the march for a still more ambitious campaign against China, Tīmūr died at Otrār, 1405 (*807*), aged 70.

The conquests of Tīmūr raised the kingdom of *Mā-warā-l-nahr* ('Beyond the River' Oxus) or Transoxiana to an importance it had never before attained. Samarkand became the capital of an empire which stretched, in name at least, from Dehlī to Damascus, and from the Sea of Aral to the Persian Gulf; and although much of Tīmūr's conquest was rather a raid than an annexation, yet Transoxiana remained for some time the centre of a kingdom which embraced most of Persia and Afghānistān besides the provinces beyond the Oxus. But Tīmūr's

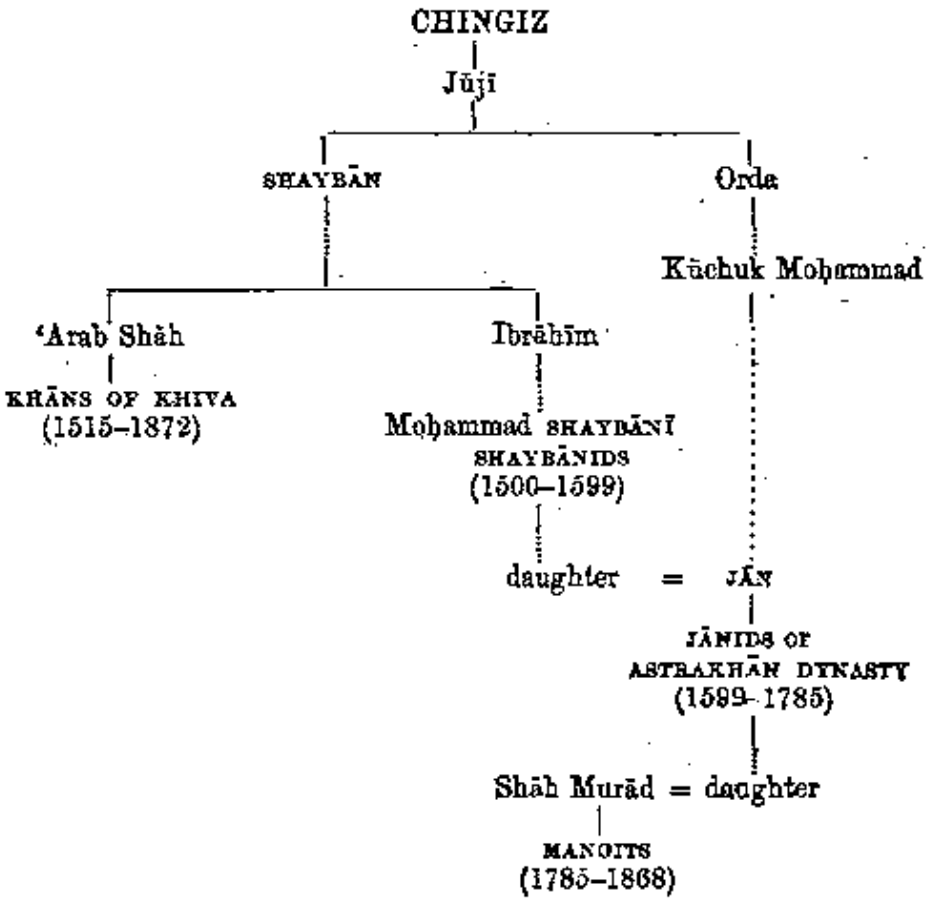
empire was too unwieldy to be maintained in all its original vastness. When the petty dynasties of Persia, Karts and Sarbadārids, Muẓaffarids and Jalayrs, had been swept away, and the Turks had been driven out of Anatolia, and all Western Asia from the Hindū-Kūsh to the Mediterranean trembled before one man, a reign of terror and not an organized empire had been established. As soon as the great conqueror was dead, Ottomans, Jalayrs and Turkomāns began to recover their lost provinces in the west. Although Tīmūr's descendants retained their hold of the north of Persia for a century, they were able to offer but a feeble resistance to the rising power of the Ṣafavids; and when in the sixteenth century the line of Shaybān (of the house of Chingiz) succeeded to the capital of Tamerlane, the dominions of his descendants had shrunk to the limits which the Khānate of Bukhārā long afterwards preserved. The table (facing p. 268) of Tīmūr's descendants, who struggled with one another for the disjointed fragments of his empire, shows one cause of their weakness; there were too many rivals. Shāh Rukh, indeed, for a while succeeded in subduing the jealousies of his kinsmen and maintaining the power and dignity of the empire; but after his death in 1447 (*850*) his

dominions were split up into various petty principalities, which made way for the *Ṣafavids* in Persia and the *Shaybānids* in Transoxiana. Yet the line did not become extinct with the loss of Tīmūr's dominions. His descendant Bābar founded a new empire in Hindūstān which, known to us as that of the '*Great Moguls*,' lasted down to the present century (see XIV.).

		A.D.
771	Tīmūr	1369
	[771 Suyūrghātmish, nominal Khān	
	790–800 Mahmūd ,, ,,]	
807–12	Khalīl	1404–9
807	Shāh Rukh	1404
850	Ulugh Beg	1447
853	'Abd-al-Laṭīf	1449
854	'Abd-Allāh	1450
855	Abū-Sa'īd	1452
872	Aḥmad	1467
899	Maḥmūd	1493
900	*Anarchy*	1494
—906		—1500

[*Shaybānids*]

CONNEXION OF THE TRANSOXINE KHĀNATES



A.H.		A.D.
906—1007	98. SHAYBĀNIDS	1500—1599

Whilst the three sons of Moḥmūd, the last Tīmūrid Sulṭān of Transoxiana, were fighting over the ruins of an empire, a new power was approaching, which made an end of all the princes of Mā-warā-*l*-nahr and re-established a strong government in the place of anarchy. This was the Uzbeg horde led by Moḥammad Shaybānī, almost the last of the great warriors of the lineage of Chingiz. The early history of the family of Shaybān has been mentioned (pp. 238–40). Their home-line remained in Siberia as Czars of Tiumen; but a large proportion of the clan migrated to Transoxiana under Shaybānī, overthrew the rival princes of Tīmūr's line, and founded the Uzbeg kingdom, which survived in the Khānates of Bukhārā and Khiva until their submission to Russia within the last quarter of a century. This Uzbeg kingdom was ruled by several successive dynasties. First, the Shaybānids governed Transoxiana for the whole of the sixteenth century, leaving Khwārizm

(Khiva) to be ruled by its own line of Khāns (p. 278), who were also descended from Shaybān, and abandoning Khurāsān to the Ṣafavids. Next, the Jānids or Astrakhān dynasty, connected in the female line with the Shaybānids, governed the same gradually diminishing territory during the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries. Thirdly, their connexions by marriage, the Mangits, usurped the Khānate of Bukhārā, which was now greatly restricted by the growth of the neighbouring Khānate of Khoḳand, by the rise of various independent principalities at Tashkand, Uratippa, and elsewhere, and by the aggrandizement of the Durrānids of Afghānistan. Finally Bukhārā, Khiva, and Khoḳand, all fell before the aggression of Russia in 1868–1872.

A.H.		A.D.
906	Moḥammad Shaybānī	1500
916	Köchkünjī	1510
937	Abū-Sa'īd	1530
940	'Obayd-Allāh	1533
946	'Abd-Allāh I	1539
947	'Abd-al-Laṭīf	1540
959	Nūrūz Aḥmad	1551
963	Pīr Moḥammad I	1555
968	Iskandar	1560
991	'Abd-Allāh II	1583
006	'Abd-al-Mu'min	1598
007	Pīr Moḥammad II	1599

[*Astrakhān*]

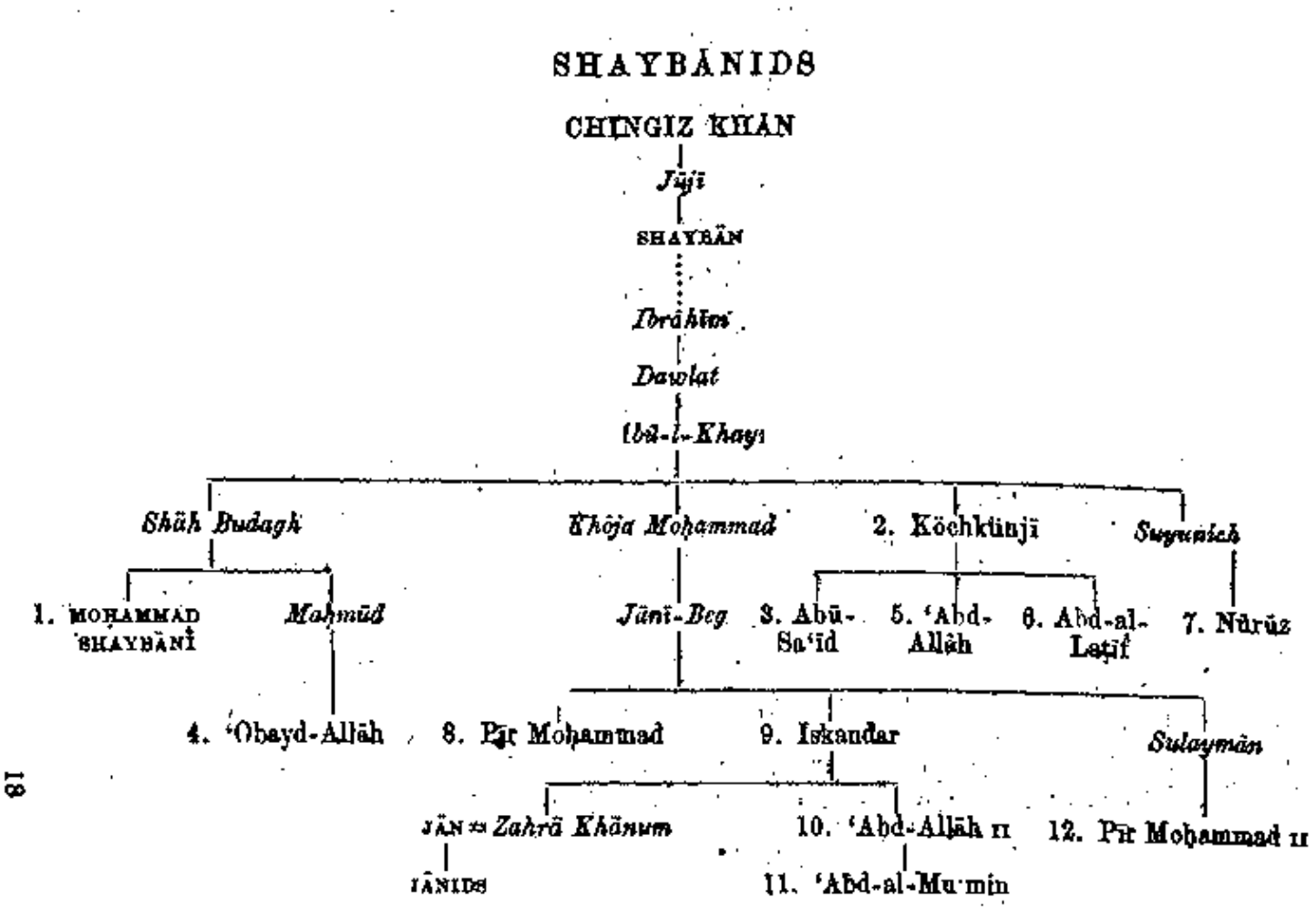
Samarḳand was the capital of the Shaybānids, but there was generally a powerful, and sometimes independent, government at Bukhārā. More than once the governor of Bukhārā was practically the ruler of Transoxiana, and this province became almost as much the Dauphiné of Samarḳand under the Shaybānids as Balkh was under the succeeding dynasty of Astrākhān.

SUB-DYNASTY OF BUKHĀRĀ

A.H.		A.D.
947	'Abd-al-'Azīz	1540
957	Yār Moḥammad	1549
961	Burḥān Sulṭān	1553
964	'Abd-Allāh (*who united Sāmarḳand in 986, and became from 991 'Abd-Allāh* II *of the Chief Khānate, q. v.*)	1556

SUB-DYNASTY OF SAMARḲAND

968	Khusrū Sulṭān	1560
975	Sulṭān Sa'īd	1567
980	Juvanmard 'Alī	1572
986	*'Abd-Allāh of Bukhārā*	1578


CHINGIZ KHĀN
Jūjī
SHAYBĀN
Ibrāhīm
Dawlat
Ibū-l-Khayr
Shāh Budagh
Khōja Mohammad
2. Köchkünjī
Suyunich
1. MOḤAMMAD SHAYBĀNĪ
Maḥmūd
Jānī-Beg
3. Abū-Sa'īd
5. 'Abd-Allāh
6. Abd-al-Laṭīf
7. Nūrūz
4. 'Obayd-Allāh
8. Pīr Moḥammad
9. Iskandar
Sulaymān
JĀN = Zahrā Khānum
10. 'Abd-Allāh II
12. Pīr Moḥammad II
IĀNIDS
11. 'Abd-al-Mu'min

A.H.		A.D.
1007—1200	99. JĀNIDS	1599—1785

OR ASTRAKHĀN DYNASTY

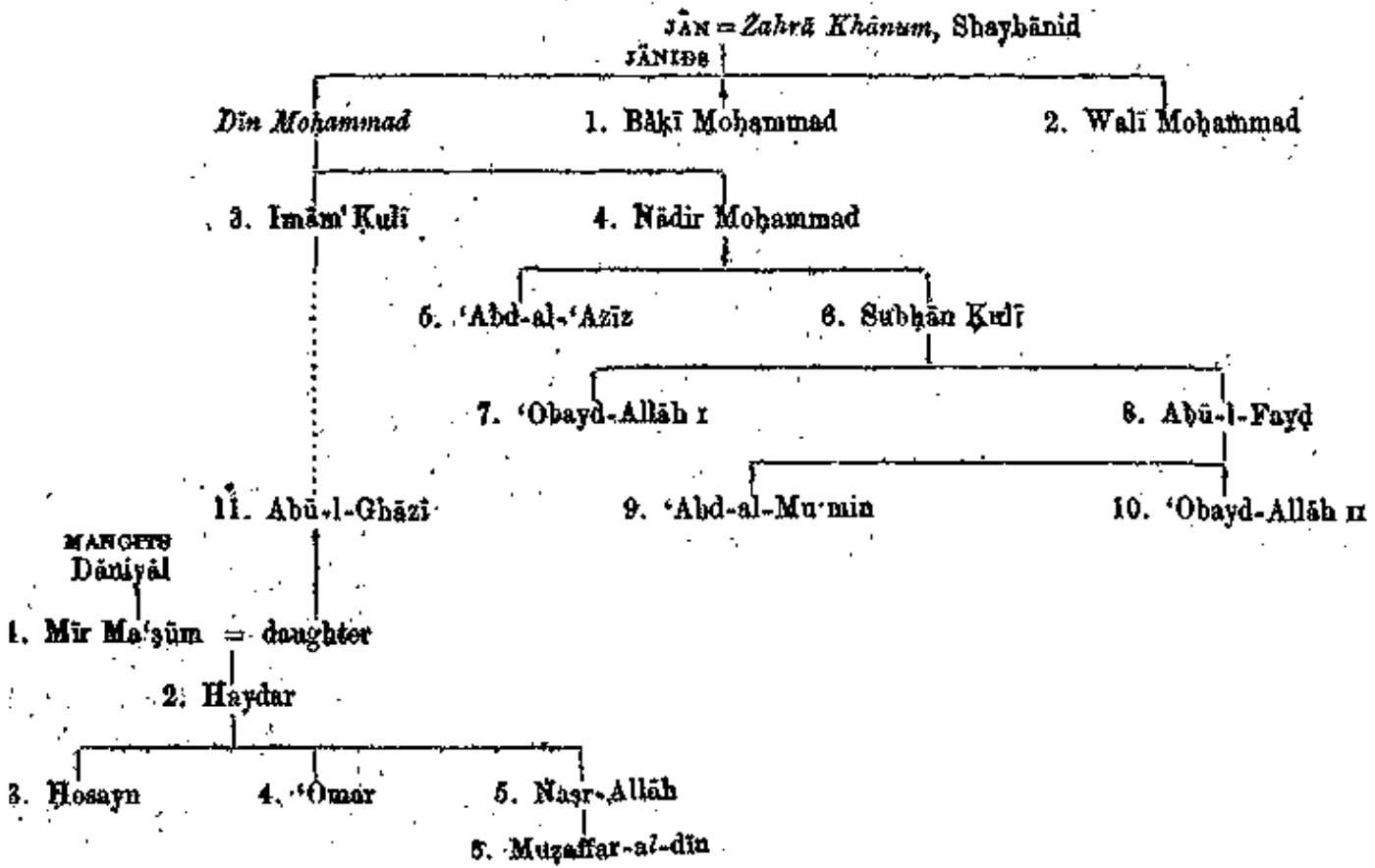
When the Russians absorbed the Khānate of Astrakhān or Ḥājjī Tarkhān (p. 229) in the middle of the 16th century, two of the dispossessed chiefs, Yār Moḥammad and his son Jān took refuge at Bukhārā with Iskandar the Shaybānid, who presently gave his daughter in marriage to Jān. The issue of this marriage, Bāḳī Moḥammad, succeeded (after a year's interval) his maternal uncle 'Abd-Allāh II, and he and his descendants, during most of the 17th century, ruled Samarḳand, Bukhārā, Farghāna, Badakhshān, and Balkh, which last province was sometimes independent. Their power gradually decayed; the Durrānids eventually gained possession of all their Cisoxine territories (1752 ff.); a rival Khānate sprang up at Khoḳand (Farghāna) about 1700 and the Jānids were finally ousted in 1785 by the chief of the Mangit tribe, who had possessed the real power for some years before the actual dethronement of the last Jānid, Abū-l-Ghāzī.

A.H.		A.D.
1007	Bāḳī Moḥammad	1599
1014	Vālī Moḥammad*	1605
1017	Imām Ḳulī († 1060)	1608
1060	Nādir Moḥammad († 1061)	1640
1057	'Abd-al-'Azīz	1647
1091	Subḥān Ḳulī†	1680
1114	'Obayd-Allāh‡	1702
1117	Abū-l-Fayḍ§	1705
1160	'Abd-al-Mu'min	1747
1164	'Obayd-Allāh II	1751
1167	*Moḥammad Raḥīm (Mangit)*	1753
1171	Abū-l-Ghāzī	1758
—1200		—1785

[*Mangits*]

* Governed Balkh from 1007.
† Previously ruled Balkh for 23 years.
‡ Makīm Khān held Balkh 1114–1119
§ Ruled only beyond the Oxus.

JĀNIDS AND MANGITS



A.H. A.D.
1200—1284 **100. MANGITS** 1785—1868

The Mangits, or "Flat-noses," a tribe akin to the Nogāys, left their Kipchak camping-grounds to follow the fortunes of Moḥammad Shaybānī at the beginning of the 16th century. Under the Astrakhān dynasty they gradually increased in influence, and in the second half of the eighteenth century their chiefs became the vizīrs of the rulers of Bukhārā and eventually supplanted their masters. Their dominions had shrunk considerably from the wide extent of the Shaybānids' kingdom, and Ma'ṣūm Shāh's wars with the Durrānids for the recovery of the Cisoxine territory were rewarded with but temporary success. The present Khān has been tributary to Russia since the campaign of 1868.

A.H.		A.D.
1200	Mīr Ma'ṣūm Shāh Murād	1785
1215	Ḥaydar Tora	1800
1242	Ḥosayn	1826
1242	'Omar	1826
1242	Naṣr-Allāh	1827
1277	Muẓaffar-*al*-dīn	1860
—1284	*Tributary to Russia*	—1868

A.H. A.D.

c. 921—1289 **101. KHĀNS OF KHIVA** c. 1515—1872

Khwārizm or Khiva, which had once furnished an ambitious line of Shāhs of its own (p. 176), was an appanage of the house of Jūjī, and never properly belonged to the Khānate of Transoxiana; up to the time of Tīmūr it was held by the Golden Horde. After the confusion of the Tīmūrīd period, the Uzbegs of Moḥammad Shaybānī occupied Khiva as well as Transoxiana, and about 1515 an independent Uzbeg Khānate was established there, the early history of which is exceedingly obscure. Wars were constantly waged with Bukhārā with varying success. Nādir Shāh of Persia conquered Khiva in 1740 and a Persian governor ruled there for a year. Finally General Kaufmann annexed it on the part of Russia in 1872.

A.H.		A.D.
c. 921	Ilbars I	c. 1515
c. 931	Sulṭān Ḥājjī	c. 1525
	Ḥasan Kulī	
	Sufyān	
	Bujugha	
	Avanak	
	Kal	
c. 946	Akatāy	c. 1540
953	Dost	1546

A.H.		A.D.
965	Ḥājjī Moḥammad I	1558
1011	ʿArab Moḥammad I	1602
1032	Isfandiyār	1623
1053	Abū-l-Ghāzī I	1643
1074	Anusha	1663
1085	Moḥammad Arank	*c.* 1674
1099	Isḥāḳ Aḳā Shāh Niyāz	1687
1114	ʿArab Moḥammad II	1702
	Ḥājjī Moḥammad II	
1126	Yadighār	1714
1126	Arank	1714
1127	Shīr Ghāzī	1715
114*x*	Ilbars II	173*x*
1163	*Annexation by Nādir Shāh*	1740
1164	*Tagir* (*for Nādir Shāh*)	1741
1164	Abū-Moḥammad	1741
116*x*	Abd-l-Ghāzī II	174*x*
1158	Kaip	1745
1184	Abū-l-Ghāzī III	*c.* 1770
1219	Iltazar	1804
1221	Moḥammad Raḥīm	1806
1241	Allāh Ḳulī	1825
1258	Raḥīm Ḳulī	1842
1261	Moḥammad Amīn	1845
1271	ʿAbd-Allāh	1855
1272	Ḳutlugh Moḥammad	1855
1272?	Sayyid Moḥammad	1856?
1282	Sayyid Moḥammad Raḥīm	1865
—1289	[*Annexation by Russia*]	—1872

A.H.		A.D.
c. 1112—1293	**102. KHĀNS OF KHOḲAND**	*c.* 1700—1876

Shāh Rukh, who claimed to be a descendant of Chingiz Khān, made himself independent in Farghāna and founded the Khānate of Khoḳand about 1700. The chronology of the earlier Khāns is uncertain. In 1800 Tāshkand was annexed by Khoḳand. The Khānate passed into the possession of Russia in 1876.

A.H.		A.D.
c. 1112	Shāh Rukh Beg	*c.* 1700
	Raḥīm	
	'Abd-al-Karīm	
	Erdeni	
1184	Sulaymān	1770
1184	Shāh Rukh II	1770
1184?	Narbuta	1770?
1215	'Ālim	1800
1224	Moḥammad 'Omar	1809
1237	Moḥammad 'Alī	1822
c. 1256	Shīr 'Alī	1840
1261	Murād	1841
c. 1261	Khudāyār	1845
1273	Malla	1857
1275	Shāh Murād	1859
c. 1277	Khudāyār (*2nd reign*)	1861
a. 1280	Sayyid Sulṭān	1864
1288	Khudāyār (*3rd reign*)	1871
1292	Nāṣir-al-dīn	1875
—1293	[*Annexed by Russia*]	—1876

XIV. INDIA

AND AFGHĀNISTĀN

SÆC. X–XIX

103. GHAZNAWIDS

104. GHŌRIDS

105. SULṬĀNS OF DEHLĪ

106. KINGS OF BENGAL

107. KINGS OF JAUNPŪR

108. KINGS OF MĀLWA

109. KINGS OF GUJARĀT

110. KINGS OF KHĀNDĒSH

111. BAHMANIDS OF THE DECCAN

112. ʿIMĀD SHĀHS OF BERĀR

113. NIẒAM SHĀHS OF AḤMADNAGAR

114. BARĪD SHĀHS OF BĪDAR

115. ʿĀDIL SHĀHS OF BIJĀPŪR

116. KUṬB SHĀHS OF GOLKONDA

117. MOGUL EMPERORS OF HINDŪSTĀN

118. AMĪRS OF AFGHĀNISTĀN

XIV. INDIA
AND AFGHÂNISTÂN

SÆC. X—XIX

No considerable part of India ever belonged to the Caliphate. Soon after their conquest of Herât, indeed, the Arabs pushed on to Kâbul in 664 (*44*) and thence descended to Multân; but this reconnaissance did not lead to continuous occupation. An advance from the south produced more permanent results. Piratical expeditions by sea to the mouths of the Indus were frequent in the early days of Islâm, and in 711 (*92*) Mohammad Kâsim, a nephew of Hajjâj, the celebrated governor of Basra, conquered Sind from the coast as far as Multân, and although no attempt was made to enlarge this dominion, the province continued to be ruled by Arab governors for nearly two centuries.

The conquest of Hindûstân by the Mohammadans, however, sprang not from Sind but from Afghânistân. The early annexation by the Arabs of the mountainous country

south of the Hindū Kūsh had been nominal and temporary, and Ya'ḳūb b. Layth the Ṣaffārid of Sijistān (p. 129) was the first to establish a settled Mohammadan government at Kābul. Here his dynasty was succeeded by governors appointed by the Sāmānids (p. 131), and it was Alptigīn, one of the local governors of the Sāmānids, who laid the foundations at Ghazna of the first independent Mohammadan dynasty in Afghānistān.

Henceforward for two centuries Ghazna was the capital of a powerful dynasty to which it gave the name of *Ghaznawids*. The incursions of the Ghaznawids into India and their settlement at Lahore formed the true beginning of Muslim rule in Hindūstān. The Ghaznawid kingdom at Lahore prepared the way for Mohammad b. Sām the Ghōrid and his successors the Sulṭāns of Dehlī, who brought the whole of northern India under Mohammadan sway. The invasion of the Mongols under Bābar put an end to the divisions which had weakened the Dehlī kingdom in its later years, and Bābar's grandson Akbar organized the splendid Empire of the Great Moguls which lasted down to the present century.

A.H. 351—582 | 103. GHAZNAWIDS | A.D. 962—1186

(AFGHĀNISTĀN AND PANJĀB)

Among the Turkish slaves whom the Sāmānid princes delighted to honour with the chief posts in the government of their dominions, Alptigīn rose by favour of 'Abd-al-Malik to be commander of the forces in Khurāsān, but, being deprived of this office on the death of his patron, he retired in dudgeon in 962 (*351*) to the city of Ghazna, in the heart of the Sulaymān mountains, where his father had been governor under the Sāmānids, and where the son had succeeded to his authority. In the mountain fastnesses he could safely defy the ill-will of his masters in the plains; but he died in a year's time without enlarging the dominion he had assumed; nor did his son Isḥāḳ or his slave Balkātigīn enhance the power of the Ghaznawids. The true founder of the dynasty was Sabaktigīn, another slave of Alptigīn, and the husband of his daughter. Sabaktigīn widened his territories on both sides; in India by the defeat of the Rājputs and the establishment of a government at Peshāwar: in Persia by the acquisition of Khu-

rāsān, of which he was appointed governor by the Sāmānid Nūḥ in 994 (*384*) in reward for his assistance in quelling a rebellion in Transoxiana. Sabaktigīn out of loyalty or prudence accepted the position of a vassal of the Sāmānids, but the vassalage was nominal; he had become more powerful than his liege-lord before his death in 997 (*387*).

Maḥmūd of Ghazna, the son of Sabaktigīn, is one of the greatest figures in Moḥammadan history. After overcoming his younger brother Ismā'īl, who had forced a contest, he repudiated the supremacy of the feeble representative of the Sāmānids, and received an investiture for the governments of Khurāsān and Ghazna direct from the Caliph of Baghdād, 'the dispenser of powers which he himself no longer enjoyed.'* Having made peace with his powerful neighbours the Īlak Khāns, who were then giving the *coup de grâce* to the expiring Sāmānids, Maḥmūd began a series of campaigns in India. Twelve several

* It is commonly asserted that Maḥmūd then adopted the title of Sulṭān, which had never before been assumed by a Moḥammadan ruler: but the statement is not warranted by his coins, whereon he styles himself occasionally Amīr and Sayyid, and very rarely Malik, but never Sulṭān. The first of the dynasty to use the new title was Ibrāhīm, who doubtless imitated the Seljūks, who were the earliest to adopt the style of Sulṭān, according to the evidence of the coins. It is singular that this first of Indian Sulṭāns should be described as a 'professed devotee,' who copied Korāns and left seventy-six children.

times, between 1001 and 1024, he descended from his highlands into the plains of Hindūstān, and, gradually enlarging the scope of his expeditions, beyond Kashmīr and the Panjāb, at length he occupied Kanauj and Muttra (1017) and seized Sōmnāth and Anhalwāra, the capital of Gujarāt, 1024 (*415*). These expeditions were more or less raids undertaken with a view to plunder and to satisfy the righteous iconoclasm of a true Muslim, and the 'Idol-Breaker' returned to Ghazna laden with costly spoils from the Hindū temples of Sōmnāth and Muttra; but they led to far-reaching results. The way into India had been opened; the Panjāb had been permanently annexed; and the kingdom of Gujarāt had accepted a rāja from the hands of its conqueror.

Besides his Indian wars, Maḥmūd beat off the attack of the Īlak Khān, reduced Ghōr (1010) and the country of the Upper Murghāb (1012), and even annexed Transoxiana with its two great cities of Samarḳand and Bukhārā in 1016 (*407*). Towards the close of his reign he discovered a serious danger in the growing power of the Seljūḳ chiefs Ṭughril and Chagar Beg, whom he had at first unwisely encouraged; but, after reducing them to apparent submission in 1027 (*418*), he did not live to witness their

final triumph. On his return from an expedition into the heart of the old Caliphate, in which he took Iṣpahân from the Buwayhids (p. 142), Maḥmūd died at Ghazna in the spring of 1030 (*421*). His magnificent encouragement of science, art, and literature, was no less remarkable than his genius as a general and statesman. He founded and endowed a university at Ghazna, and his munificence drew together perhaps the most splendid 'assemblage of literary genius,' including the poet Firdausī, that any Asiatic capital has ever contained.* Ghazna was enriched with palaces and mosques, aqueducts and public works, beyond any city of its age: for Maḥmūd had known how to learn from India, as well as how to plunder it.

The empire which had thus been founded stretched from Lahore to Samarḳand and Iṣpahān; but it was soon lopped of its western limbs. In a few years the Seljūḳs (p. 151), after defeating Mas'ūd the son of Maḥmūd near Merv, had taken possession of all the Persian and Transoxine provinces of the Ghaznawids, from Balkh and Khwārizm to Iṣpahān and Rayy (1037–1045); and the rulers of Ghazna learned to turn their eyes to the east, now that the west was closed to them. Lahore

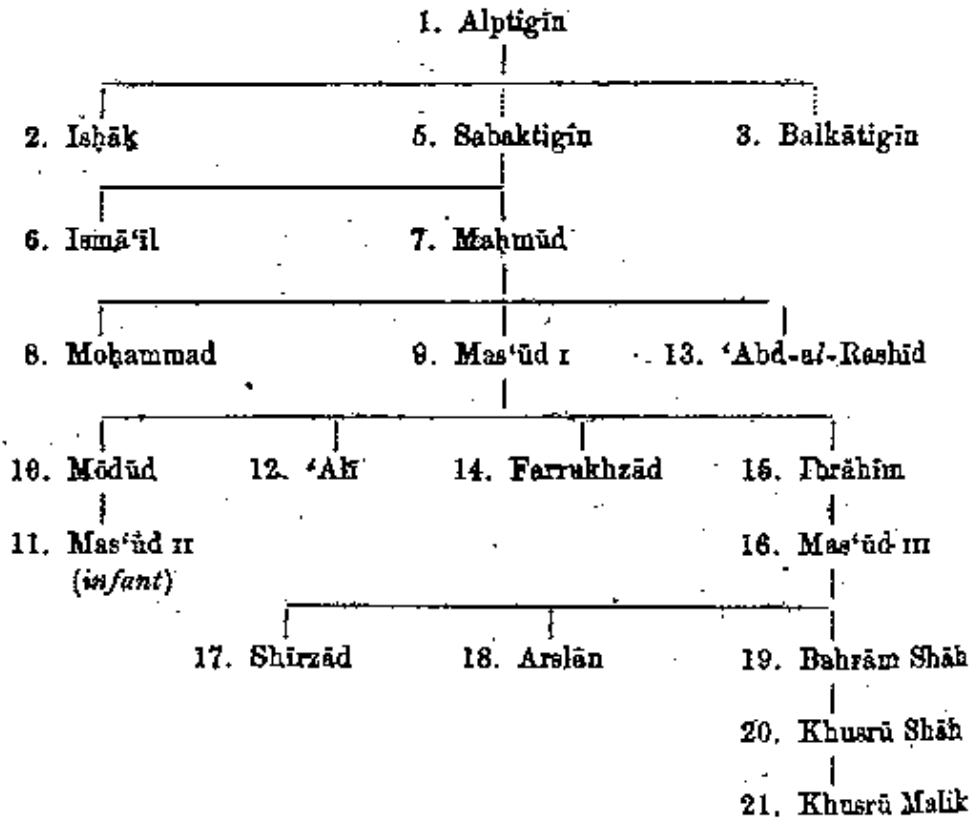
* Elphinstone, *History of India*, 341–5 (5th ed. 1866).

became their capital when Ghazna fell to the Ghōrids in 1161. Thus the losses in the west confirmed the settlement in Hindūstān, and when in 1186 (*582*) the successors of of Maḥmūd, who had not emulated his ambition, gave place to the hardy Afghāns of Ghōr, the Indian provinces soon separated from the highlands; and thus began the series of independent Moḥammadan dynasties of India.

A.H.		A.D.
351	Alptigīn	962
352	Isḥāḳ	963
355	Balkātigīn*	966
362	Pīrī	972
366	Sabaktagīn	976
387	Ismā'īl	997
388	Maḥmūd, Yamīn-*al*-dawla	998
421	Moḥammad, Jalāl-*al*-dawla	1030
421	Mas'ūd I, Nāṣir-dīn-Allāh	1030
432	Mōdūd, Shihāb-*al*-dawla	1040
440	Mas'ūd II	1048
440	'Alī Abū-l-Ḥasan, Buhā-*al*-dawla	1048
440	'Abd-*al*-Rashīd, 'Izz-*al*-dawla	1049
444	*Tughril* (usurper)	1052
444	Farrukhzād, Jamāl-*al*-dawla	1052
451	Ibrāhīm, Ẓahīr-*al*-dawla	1059
492	Mas'ūd III, 'Alā-*al*-dawla	1099
508	Shīrzād, Kamāl-*al*-dawla	1114
509	Arslān, Sulṭān-*al*-dawla	1115
512	Bahrām Shāh, Yamīn-*al*-dawla	1118
547	Khusrū Shāh, Mu'izz-*al*-dawla	1152
555	Khusrū Malik, Tāj-*al*-dawla	1160
—582	[*Ghōrids*]	—1186

* On the chronology of the early Ghaznawids see E. E. Oliver, *The Decline of the Sāmānīs*, in *Journ. As. Soc. Bengal*, lv. pt. i. 1886.

GHAZNAWIDS



..... Dotted lines indicate the relation of master to slave.)

A.H. A.D.

543—612 **104. GHŌRIDS** 1148—1215

(AFGHĀNISTĀN, HINDŪSTĀN)

From early times the mountainous district of Gnor (or Ghūr), between Herāt and Ghazna, had been the seat of a small but practically independent dynasty, who usually made the fortress of Fīrūz-kōh their headquarters. Maḥmūd of Ghazna had reduced this principality in 1010 (*401*), when the Afghāns of Ghōr were ruled by Moḥammad b. Sūrī; and the descendants of this chief continued to govern at Fīrūz-kōh and Bāmiyān under the orders of the Ghaznawids, with whom they allied themselves by marriage. The execution of one of the family (Ḳuṭb-al-dīn Moḥammad) by his father-in-law Bahrām Shāh the Ghaznawid was avenged by the capture of Ghazna in 1148 (*543*) by the murdered man's brother, Sayf-al-dīn Sūrī, the ruler of Ghōr; but in the following year Bahrām Shāh succeeded in re-entering his capital, and tortured the invader to death. This second act of barbarity brought down a signal punishment upon Ghazna

at the hands of a third brother, 'Alā-al-dīn Ḥosayn, surnamed Jahān-sōz, or 'world-incendiary,' from the ferocity with which he gave up the splendid city of Maḥmūd the idol-breaker to fire and sword. Contemptuously leaving the ashes of Ghazna, 'Alā-al-dīn returned to Ghōr; and after a brief captivity in the hands of Sulṭān Sinjar the Seljūḳ of Khurāsān, he died in 1161 (*556*) in a time of anarchy, when the Ghuzz Turkomāns swept over Afghānistān and for a while abolished both Ghōrid and Ghaznawid governments.

The Ghuzz soon wended their migratory way into Persia, and on their departure two brothers, nephews of the 'World-Incendiary,' became the leaders of the Ghōrid family. The elder, Ghiyāth-al-dīn b. Sām, had taken Ghazna from the Ghuzz in 1173 (*569*), and annexed Herāt two years later. He remained titular sovereign of all the wide possessions of his family until his death in 1202 (*599*). The younger brother, however, Shihāb-al-dīn, afterwards styled Mu'izz-al-dīn, and commonly known as Moḥammad Ghōrī, was the real ruler and extender of the kingdom. He conquered part of Khurāsān from the Seljūḳs, and then began a series of campaigns in India, in which he reduced Sind and Multan (*571*),

where Arab governors had made Muslim rule familiar; subdued the Ghaznawids in their last retreat at Lahore in 1186 (*582*); and then proceeded to attack the leader of the Chohān Rājputs, Prithwī Rāja of Ajmīr. His first onslaught was repulsed with terrible loss (*587*), but in the following year, 1192, a hard-fought battle on the same field of Thaneswar ended in the total defeat of the Rājputs, and the death of Prithwī Rāja and many others of the 150 princes who had assembled for the defence of Hindūstān. The victory meant nothing less than the submission of nearly the whole of northern India; for Kanauj fell in 1194, and Gwāliōr, Bundalkhand, Bihār, and Bengal were successively reduced by the generals of Moḥammad Ghōrī. For the first time the whole of Hindūstān admitted, in a greater or less degree, Moḥammadan sway.

So long as his brother lived, Moḥammad Ghōrī always remained a loyal viceroy, but on Ghiyāth-*al*-dīn's death in 1202 (*599*) he succeeded to the supreme authority, when his first duty was to defend his realm against the Khwārizm Shāh, who had overrun Persia and was forcing his way into Afghānistān. In the midst of the confusion of this invasion, Moḥammad Ghōrī was assassinated by a party

of Ghakkars in 1206 (*602*). His dynasty did not long survive him. His nephew Maḥmūd was indeed proclaimed Sulṭān throughout the wide dominions conquered by the uncle; but the unity of the kingdom vanished with its founder. The Turkish slaves who had served as generals under Moḥammad Ghōrī assumed independent power. Ḳuṭb-*al*-dīn Aybak became the first of the Slave Kings of Dehlī; Nāṣir-*al*-dīn Kubācha ruled in Sind; and Yildiz governed Ghazna. The titular successor of the great Ghōrid, from his capital of Fīrūz-kōh, reigned over little more than western Afghānistān (Ghōr and Herāt) with part of Khurāsān; and from all these the Ghōrids were expelled by the armies of the *Khwārizm Shāh* in 1215 (*612*). Long afterwards, however, their descendants recovered some relics of their ancient dominions, and the *Kart* princes of Herāt traced their origin to the family of Moḥammad Ghōrī.

The opposite table shows the relationship and places of government of the chief members of the Ghōrid family.*

* For further details see E. Thomas, *Supplementary Contributions to the Series of the Coins of the Kings of Ghazni* (1869).

A.H. A.H.
602—962 **105. SULṬĀNS OF DEHLĪ** 1206—1554
(HINDŪSTĀN)

Moḥammad Ghōrī, after conquering northern India to the mouth of the Ganges, either by his own campaigns or by those of his generals, appointed his slave Kuṭb-al-dīn Aybak to act as his viceroy at Dehlī; and on the death of the master in 1206 (*602*) the slave proclaimed himself sovereign of Hindūstān, and founded the first Moḥammadan dynasty which ruled exclusively in India; for hitherto Moḥammadan India had been but an outlying province of the kingdom of Ghazna. This dynasty, the first of five which preceded the Mogul conquest, is commonly known as the *Slave Kings*. The greatest of the line was Altamish (more correctly Iltutmish), who subdued the governor of Sind, Nāṣir-al-dīn Kubācha; compelled the viceroy of Bengal to acknowledge the supremacy of Dehlī; repelled the attempt of Yildiz to revive in India the kingdom of which the Khwārizm Shāh

had robbed him at Ghazna; and in turn withstood the attempts of Jalāl-al-dīn, the son of that Shāh, to set up his rule in Hindūstān when driven over the Hindū-Kūsh by the Mongols of Chingiz Khān. Fortunately for India these Mongols stopped short at the Indus, though their raids were a frequent source of alarm for many years. Altamish vigorously maintained his authority over the whole country north of the Vindhya mountains; and the Caliph of Baghdād, for the first time recognizing a distinct Moḥammadan kingdom of India, gave its sovereign the sanction of a formal diploma of investiture from the spiritual head of Islām. Riḍīya, the daughter of Altamish, was the only woman who ever sat on the throne of Dehlī, until Queen Victoria figuratively took her seat there in 1858. Under the later Slave Kings the Hindūs began to pluck up the courage which had oozed away before the arms of Moḥammad Ghōrī and Altamish; and Balban had to sternly suppress many serious native outbreaks, which were in some degree the fruit of his policy of getting rid of the Slave governors—a policy which led to the subversion of his own dynasty.

The *Khaljī* Turks, the second Muslim dynasty of India, began to extend Moḥammadan rule beyond the Vindhyas

into the Deccan. 'Alā-*al*-dīn Moḥammad re-conquered Gujarāt, 1297; took Chitōr and temporarily subdued the Rājputs, 1303; and his eunuch general Malik Kāfūr seized Deogīri and Warangal, and founded a Deccan province of the Dehlī kingdom. The extent of the dominion, however, tended towards disruption. After power had again changed hands, and a Turkish slave had established the *Taghlakid* dynasty, Moḥammad b. Taghlak, a man of remarkable but bizarre genius, perceived the impossibility of ruling the Deccan from Dehlī, and accordingly sought to transplant by force both court and population from the northern capital to Deogīri, which he re-named Dawlatābād, the 'seat of government.' But he could not check the disintegrating process which had begun; whole provinces revolted, and he was ever on the wing from end to end of his empire to suppress rebellion; and his successors were forced to witness the separation of province after province from the central stock, until the Sulṭān of Dehlī sometimes commanded but a small district round his capital. The invasion of Tīmūr, who turned northern India into a shambles in 1398–9, hastened the catastrophe. The *Sayyids* and *Lōdīs*, who followed the house of Taghlak, held but one govern-

ment out of the many that now prevailed in Hindūstān. Bengal, Jaunpūr, Mālwa, and Gujarāt wore the seats of independent Moḥammadan dynasties, and the Rājputs and the Hindūs of the Deccan had recovered much of their former possessions.

The irruption of the Moguls under Bābar, who established his authority over most of northern India, save Bengal, in 1526–30, was too brief to accomplish the work of re-uniting the scattered fragments of the empire of 'Alā-al-dīn the Khaljī. After Bābar's death the Moguls were driven out of India by Shīr Shāh and the Afghāns of Bengal 1539–40 (*946–7*), and the courage and genius of the Afghān conqueror almost availed to restore the waning prestige of the Moḥammadan power. But the provinces refused to obey an Afghān sovereign, and their disunion opened the way for the return of Bābar's son Humāyūn in 1554 (*962*) and the establishment under Akbar of the famous Mogul Empire, which lasted to the present century.

A. SLAVE KINGS

A.H.		A.D.
602	Aybak, Ḳuṭb-al-dīn	1206
607	Ārām Shāh	1210
607	Altamish (Iltutmish), Shams-al-dīn	1210
633	Fīrūz Shāh I, Rukn-al-dīn	1235
634	Riḍīya	1236
637	Bahrām Shāh, Mu'izz-al-dīn	1239
639	Mas'ūd Shāh, 'Alā-al-dīn	1241
644	Maḥmūd Shāh I, Nāṣir-al-dīn	1246
664	Balban, Ghiyāth-al-dīn	1265
686	Kay-Ḳubād, Mu'izz-al-dīn	1287

B. KHALJIS

689	Fīrūz Shāh II, Jalāl-al-dīn	1290
695	Ibrāhīm Shāh I, Rukn-al-dīn	1295
696	Moḥammad Shāh I, 'Alā-al-dīn	1295
715	'Omar Shāh, Shihāb-al-dīn	1315
716	Mubārak Shāh I, Ḳuṭb-al-dīn	1316
720	Khusrū Shāh, Nāṣir-al-dīn	1320

C. TAGHLAḲIDS

A.H.		A.D.
720	Taghlaḳ Shāh I, Ghiyāth-*al*-dīn	1320
725	Moḥammad II b. Taghlaḳ	1324
752	Fīrūz Shāh III	1351
790	Taghlaḳ Shāh II	1388
791	Abū-Bakr Shāh	1388
792	Moḥammad Shāh III	1389
795	Sikandar Shāh I	1392
795	Maḥmūd Shāh II	1392
797	Naṣrat Shāh (*interregnum*)	1394
802	Maḥmūd II *restored*	1399
815	Dawlat Khān Lōdī	1412

D. SAYYIDS

817	Khiḍr Khān	1414
824	Mubārak Shāh II, Mu'izz-*al*-dīn	1421
837	Moḥammad Shāh IV	1433
847	'Ālim Shāh	1443

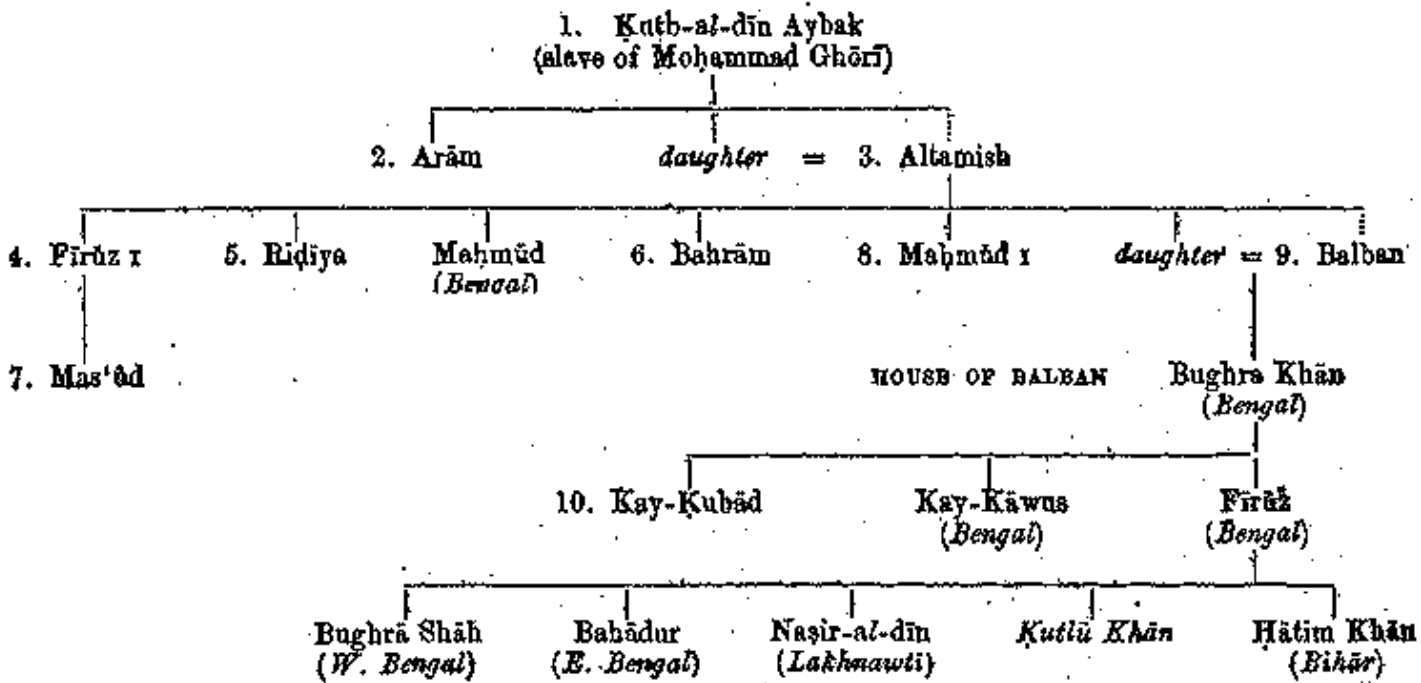
E. LŌDĪS

855	Bahlōl Lōdī	1451
894	Sikandar II b. Bahlōl	1488
923	Ibrāhīm II b. Sikandar	1517
—930	*Invasion of Bābar*	—152

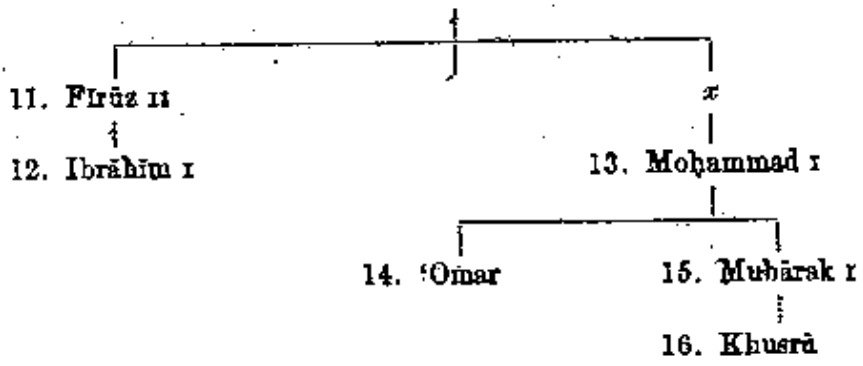
F. AFGHĀNS

946	Shīr Shāh	1539
952	Islām Shāh	1545
960	Moḥammad V. 'Adil Shāh	1552
961	Ibrāhīm III Sūr	1553
962	Sikandar Shāh III	1554

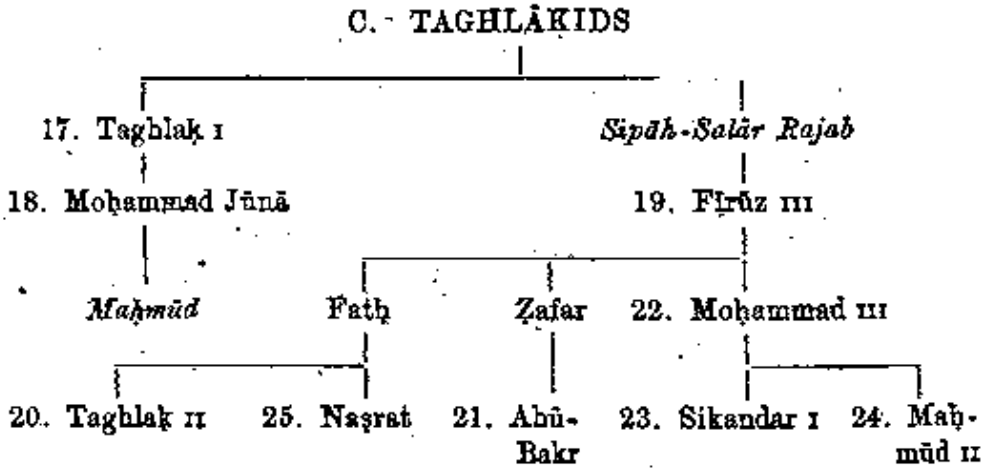
A. SLAVE KINGS



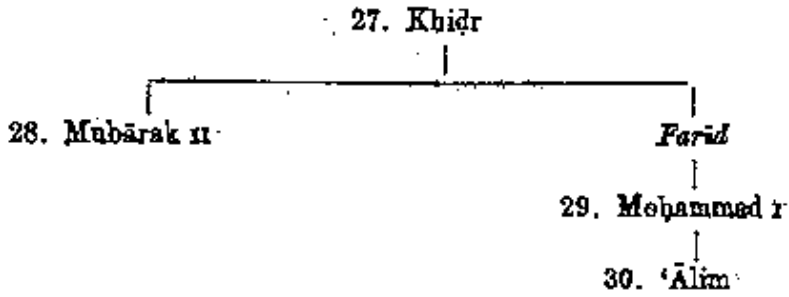
B. KHALJĪS



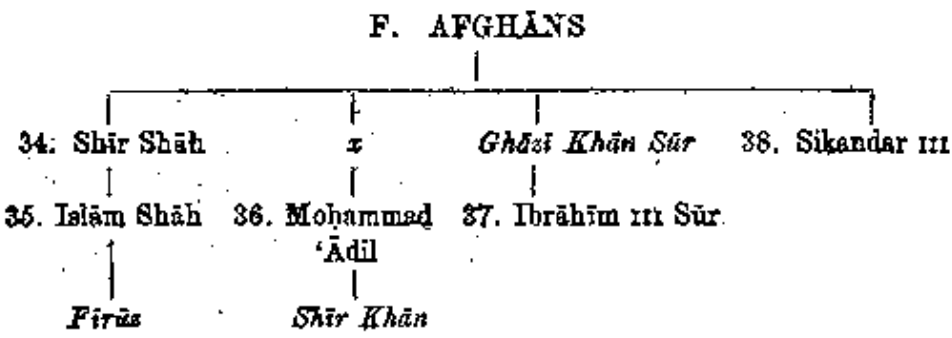
C. TAGHLĀKIDS



D. SAYYIDS



F. AFGHĀNS



PROVINCIAL DYNASTIES OF INDIA

The Empire of Moḥammad b. Taghlaḳ included the whole of Hindūstān, together with Telingana and other districts in the Deccan. Before his death the more distant provinces began to grow into independence, and soon after the beginning of the fifteenth century the greater part of his dominions was in the hands of seven provincial Moḥammadan dynasties, besides the Hindū Rājas.

A.H.		A.D.
599—984	1. Governors and Kings of Bengal .	1202—1576
796—905	2. Sharḳī Kings of Jaunpūr . .	1394—1500
804—937	3. Kings of Mālwa. . . .	1401—1530
799—980	4. Kings of Gujarāt . . .	1396—1572
735—995	5. Kings of Kashmīr . . .	1334—1587
891—1008	6. Fārūkids, Kings of Khāndēsh .	1399—1599
748—933	7. Bahmanids, Kings of Kulbarga .	1347—1526

On the decay of the Baḥmanids, the following five dynasties divided their dominions between them:—

890—980	8. ʿImād Shāhs of Berār . .	1484—1572
896—1004	9. Niẓām Shāhs of Aḥmadnagar .	1490—1595
897—1018	10. Barīd Shāhs of Bīdar . .	1492—1609
895—1097	11. ʿĀdil Shāhs of Bījāpūr . .	1489—1686
918—1098	12. Ḳuṭb Shāhs of Golkonda . .	1512—1687

The Hindūstān dynasties were absorbed into the Mogul Empire by Akbar, and those of the Deccan succumbed to the attacks of Aurangzīb.

A.H.		A.D.
599—984	106. GOVERNORS AND KINGS OF BENGAL	1202—1576

Moḥammad Bakhtiyār, the conqueror and first governor of Bengal, subdued but a small part of the present province, chiefly in the neighbourhood of his capital Lakhnawtī. In the early part of the thirteenth century Sonārgāon and Sātgāon became seats of Moḥammadan governors, and the name Bangāla included these as well as Lakhnawtī. Fīrūzābād (Pandūah) was the capital of the triple province, until in 1446 (*850*) the seat of government was again moved to Lakhnawtī, which was now first called Gaur, and remained the capital until 1564 (*972*), when it was succeeded by Tāndah. The governors of Bengal sometimes also held Bihār, and occasionally Chittagong and Orīsa. When the Dehlī kings grew weak, the Bengal governors waxed independent, and several dynasties assumed kingly powers. Humāyūn occupied Bengal in *944-6*, but after the successful defeat of the Moguls by Shīr Shāh in 1539 (*946*) governors were again appointed, and again (*960*) founded independent dynasties. In *982*, however, Bihār fell before the arms of Akbar, and by 1576 (*984*) the Mogul was supreme in Bengal.

A. GOVERNORS

A.H.			A.D.
599	Moḥammad Bakhtiyār Khaljī		1202
602	ʿIzz-al-dīn Moḥammad Shirān		1205
605	ʿAlā-al-dīn Mardān		1208
608	Ghiyāth-al-dīn ʿIwaz		1211
624	Nāṣir-al-dīn Maḥmūd		1226
627	ʿAlā-al-dīn Jānī		1229
627	Sayf-al-dīn Aybak		1229
631	ʿIzz-al-dīn Ṭughril Ṭughān Khān		1233
642	Ḳamar-al-dīn Tamar Khān-Ḳirān		1244
644	Ikhtiyār-al-dīn (Mughīth-al-dīn) Yūsbak		1246
656	Jalāl-al-dīn Masʿūd Malik Jānī		1258
657	ʿIzz-al-dīn Balbān		1258
659?	Moḥammad Arslān Tatar Khān.		1260?
	Shīr Khān		
	Amīn Khān		
677	Mughīth-al-dīn Ṭughril		127●
681	*Nāṣir-al-dīn Bughrā Khān		1282
691	Rukn-al-dīn Kay-Kāwus		1291
702	Shams-al-ḍīn Fīrūz Shāh		1302
718	Shihāb-al-dīn Bughrā Shāh	(West Bengal)	1318
710	Ghiyāth-al-dīn Bahādur Shāh	(East Bengal)	1310
719		(All Bengal)	1319
723–6	Nāṣir-al-dīn	(Lakhnawtī)	1323–5
725–31	Bahādur Shāh *restored, with Bahrām*	(East Bengal)	1324–30
731–9	Bahrām Shāh (alone)		1330–8
726–40	Ḳadr Khān	(Lakhnawtī)	1325–39
724–40	ʿIzz-al-dīn Aʿzam-al-mulk	(Satgāon)	1323–39

* The following six governors belonged to the family of Balban, the Sulṭān of Deblī, see the genealogy p. 301.

B. KINGS

A.H.			A.D.
739—984			1338—1576
739–50	Fakhr-*al*-dīn Mubārak Shāh	(East Bengal)	1338–49
750–8	Ikhtiyār-*al*-dīn Ghāzī Shāh	(East Bengal)	1349–52
740–6	'Alā-*al*-dīn 'Alī Shāh	(West Bengal)	1339–45

HOUSE OF ILYĀS

740–6	Shams-*al*-dīn Ilyās Shāh		
		contending in West Bengal)	1339–45
746	,,	(West Bengal)	1345
753–9	,,	(all Bengal)	1352–8
759–92	Sikandar Shāh I b. Ilyās		1358–89
792	Ghiyāth-*al*-dīn A'zam Shāh b. Sikandar (*rebels* 1370) *reigns*		1389
799	Sayf-*al*-dīn Ḥamza Shāh b. A'zam		1396
809	Shams-*al*-dīn b. Ḥamza		1406

HOUSE OF RĀJA KĀNS

812	Shihāb-*al*-dīn Bāyazīd Shāh (with Rāja Kāns)		1409
817	Jalāl-*al*-dīn Moḥammad Shāh b. Rāja Kāns		1414
835	Shāms-*al*-dīn Aḥmad Shāh b. Moḥammad		1431

HOUSE OF ILYĀS (*restored*)

846	Nāṣir-*al*-dīn Maḥmūd Shāh I		1442
864	Rukn-*al*-dīn Bārbak Shāh b. Maḥmūd I		1459
879	Shams-*al*-dīn Yūsuf Shāh b. Bārbak		1474
886	Sikandar Shāh II b. Yūsuf		1481
886	Jalāl-*al*-dīn Fatḥ Shāh b. Maḥmūd I		1481

HABSHI KINGS

A.H.		A.D.
892	Sulṭān Shāhzāda Bārbak	1486
892	Sayf-*al*-dīn Fīrūz Shāh I	1486
895	Nāṣir-*al*-dīn Maḥmūd Shāh II b. Fatḥ Shāh (*of Ilyās stock*)	1489
896	Shams-*al*-dīn Abū-*l*-Naṣr Muẓaffar Shāh .	1490

HOUSE OF ḤOSAYN SHĀH

899	ʿAlā-*al*-dīn Ḥosayn Shāh	1493
925	Nāṣir-*al*-dīn Naṣrat Shāh b. Ḥosayn . .	1518
939	ʿAlā-*al*-dīn Fīrūz Shāh II b. Naṣrat . .	1532
939	Ghiyāth-*al*-dīn Maḥmūd Shāh III b. Ḥosayn (partial rule 1526)	1532
—944	(*Conquest by Humāyūn*)	—1537

HOUSE OF MOḤAMMAD SŪR

960	Shams-*al*-dīn Moḥammad Sūr Ghāzī Shāh .	1552
962	Bahādur Shāh (Khiḍr) b. Moḥammad Sūr .	1554
968	Ghiyāth-*al*-dīn Jalāl Shāh b. Moḥammad Sūr	1560
971	(Son of preceding)	1563

HOUSE OF SULAYMĀN ḲARĀRĀNĪ

971	Sulaymān Khān Ḳarārānī (Bihār and Bengal)	1563
980	Bāyazīd Shāh b. Sulaymān	1572
980	Dāwūd Shāh b. Sulaymān	1572
—984	[*Mogul Emperors*]	—1576

A.H. A.D.

796—905 **107. SHARKĪ KINGS OF JAUNPŪR** 1394—1500

('KINGS OF THE EAST')

Khwāja-Jahān, the vezīr of Maḥmūd of the house of Taghlak, deserted his youthful sovereign and founded an independent government at Jaunpūr, whence he and his successors held sway for a time over Bihār, Oudh, Kanauj, and Barāich, with considerable state, as their noble monuments testify; and made war upon their former masters at Dehlī (which they twice besieged), and their neighbours the kings of Mālwa. In 1476 (*881*, or according to some historians *879*) Jaunpūr was conquered by Sikandar b. Bahlōl and reunited to Dehlī; but the adherents of the banished Ḥosayn Shāh endeavoured for some years to restore the fallen dynasty.

A.H.		A.D.
796	Khwāja-Jahān	1394
802	Mubārak Shāh	1399
803	Shams-al-dīn Ibrāhīm Shāh Sharḳī b. Mubārak	1400
844	Maḥmūd Shāh b. Ibrāhīm	1440
861	Moḥammad Shāh (jointly with his father Maḥmūd)	1456
863	Ḥosayn Shāh b. Maḥmūd	1458
—905	fled to Bengal 881, died 905	—1500

A.H. 804—937 **108. KINGS OF MĀLWA** A.D. 1401—1530

Mālwa was among the old Rājput kingdoms which longest withstood the Moḥammadan invasion. It had boasted one of the most illustrious of the ancient Hindū dynasties, who made their capital, Ujjayn, a seat of learning and science. Three centuries of contest elapsed before it was subdued, in the time of Sulṭān Balban of Dehlī. Its natural boundaries were the Narbadā on the south, the Chambal on the north, and Gujarāt and Bandalkhand on the west and east. Under the Khaljī kings, however, it included Hūshangābād, Ajmīr, Rantambhor, and Elichpūr, and even Chitōr was sometimes forced to pay tribute. Its Moḥammadan capital, Mandū, founded by Hūshang Ghōrī, stood on a spacious plateau surrounded by precipices, and was famous for its palaces and mosques.

Two successive Moḥammadan dynasties reigned in Mālwa. The first was founded by Dilāwar Khān Ghōrī, a governor of the king of Dehlī, and consisted of himself, his son, and his grandson. The second dynasty was established

by Maḥmūd Khaljī, the vezīr of the grandson of Dilāwar, and fell when Mālwa was annexed in 1530 (*937*) by the neighbouring king of Gujarāt, with whom the rulers of Mālwa had waged perpetual war. The Khaljīs were a fighting race, and had carried the arms of Mālwa to the gates of Dehlī in the north and Bīdar in the south, whilst with the Rājputs of Chitōr and Chanderī their hostilities were unceasing.

I. GHŌRĪS

A.H.		A.D.
804	Dilāwar Khān Ghōrī	1401
808	Hūshang (Alp Khān) b. Dilāwar . . .	1405
838	Moḥammad Ghaznī Khān b. Hūshang . .	1434

II. KHALJĪS

839	Maḥmūd Shāh I Khaljī	1435
880	Ghiyāth Shāh b. Maḥmūd	1475
906	Nāṣir Shāh b. Ghiyāth	1500
916	Maḥmūd II b. Nāṣir	1510
—937	[*Kings of Gujarāt*]	—1530

* The list of the Kings of Kashmīr should follow here; but their chronology is so uncertain that an accurate table can hardly be constructed. See my *Catalogue of the Coins of the Muhammadan States of India*, xlvii, 68.

A.H. A.D.

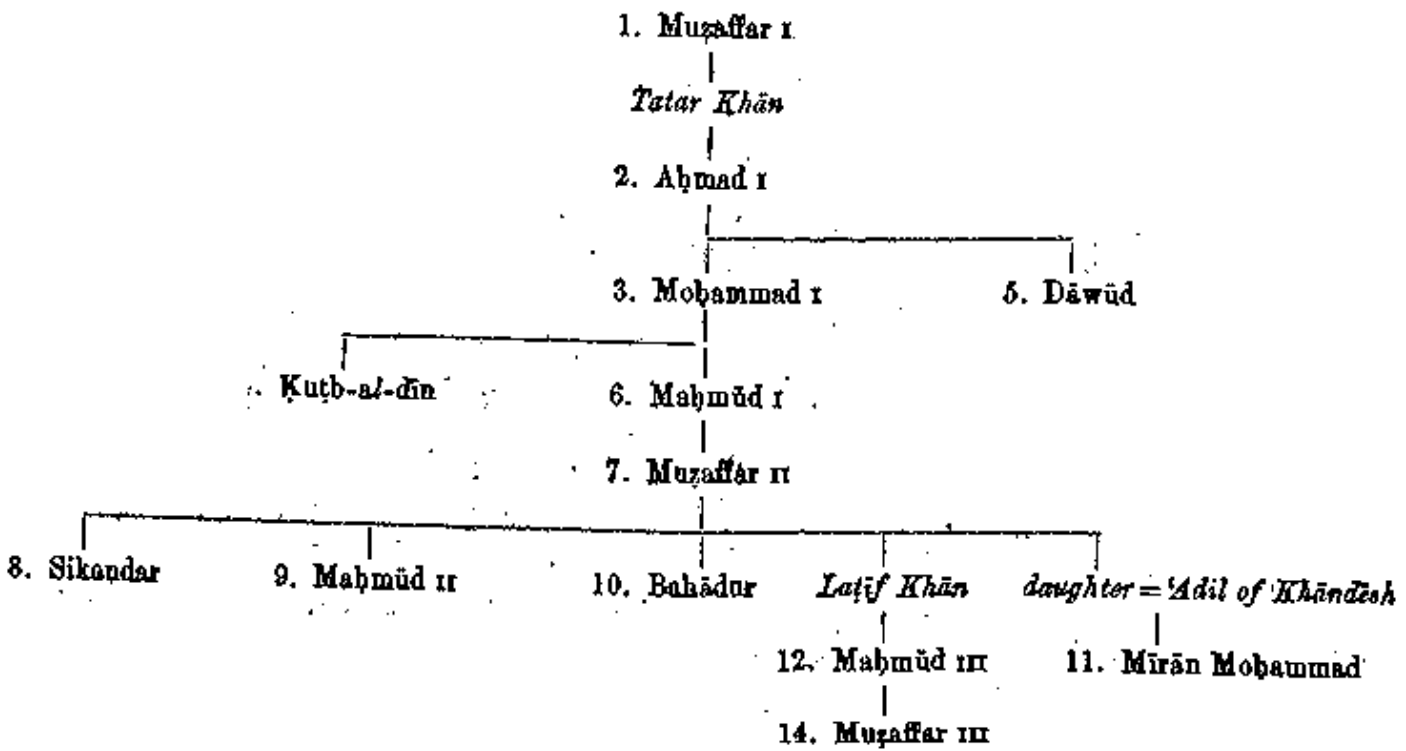
799—980 **109. KINGS OF GUJARAT** 1396—1572

Gujarāt owed its long immunity from Moḥammadan subjection to its inaccessible position, beyond the great desert and the hills connecting the Vindhya with the Aravali range, which rendered it difficult to invade except by sea. It was not until the time of 'Alā-al-dīn of Dehlī, at the close of the 13th century, that Gujarāt became a Moḥammadan province. At the end of the 14th century it became independent again, but its rulers were now Muslims instead of Hindūs. Ẓafar Khān, the son of a Rājput convert, was appointed to the government of Gujarāt in 794, and assumed independence in 1396 (799). He found himself surrounded by enemies, Rājput rājas and wild tribes of Bhīls, and possessed of but a narrow territory between the hills and the sea, including, however, a considerable stretch of the coast, as far as Sūrat at least. He soon enlarged his dominions by the conquest of Idar and Diu; plundered Jhalor; and even took possession of Mālwa for a space in 1407. Aḥmad Shāh I, his successor, founded Aḥmadābād, which became the capital of the dynasty and afterwards of the Mogul

province, and is still an important city. Maḥmūd Shāh I not only carried on the traditional wars of his family with Mālwa and Khāndēsh, but added the stronghold of Jūnagarh in Kattiāwār, and Champanīr, to his dominions, and kept a large fleet to subdue the pirates of the islands and to attack the Portuguese; to whom Bahādur Shāh, the conqueror of Mālwa, conceded the right to build a factory at Diu, and at whose hands he met his death. The last years of the dynasty were clouded by the intrigues of factious nobles, and the kings became mere puppets; until Akbar's conquest in 1572 (*980*) restored prosperity to the harassed province.

A.H.		A.D.
799	Muẓaffar Shāh I Ẓafar Khān	1396
814	Aḥmad Shāh I	1411
816	Moḥammad Karīm Shāh	1443
855	Ḳuṭb-al-dīn	1451
863	Dāwūd Shāh	1458
863	Maḥmūd Shāh I Baykara	1458
917	Muẓaffar Shāh II	1511
932	Sikandar Shāh	1525
932	Nāṣir Khān Maḥmūd II	1525
932	Bahādur Shāh	1526
943	Mīrān Moḥammad Shāh Fārūkī (of Khāndēsh)	1536
944	Maḥmūd Shāh III	1537
961	Aḥmad Shāh II	1553
969	Muẓaffar Shāh III Ḥabīb	1561
—980	[*Mogul Emperors*]	—1572

KINGS OF GUJARAT



A.H. A.D.

801—1008 **110. KINGS OF KHĀNDĒSH** 1399—1599

Nāṣir Khān, the first Moḥammad ruler of Khāndēsh who asserted his independence of the kingdom of Dehlī, claimed to be descended from the caliph 'Omar. He was related by marriage to the kings of Gujarāt, from whose dominions Khāndēsh (comprising the lower valley of the Taptī) was separated only by a belt of forest. The capital Burhānpūr was founded near the fortress of Asīrgarh. Akbar took Burhānpūr and received the homage of its king in 1562; but Khāndēsh was not fully incorporated in the Mogul Empire until 1599 (*1008*), when Asīrgarh fell after a six months' siege.

A.D.		A.H.
772	*Malik Rāja*	1370
801	Nāṣir Khān	1399
841	Mīrān 'Ādil Khān I	1437
844	Mīrān Mubārak I	1441
861	'Ādil Khān II	1457
909	Dāwūd Khān	1503
916	'Ādil Khān III	1510
926	Mīrān Moḥammad Shāh I	1520
942	Mīrān Mubārak II	1535
974	Mīrān Moḥammad II	1566
984	'Alī Khān	1576
1005	Bahādur Shāh	1596
—1008	[*Mogul Emperors*]	—1599

THE DECCAN

A.H. A.D.

48—933 **111. BAHMANIDS** 1347—1526

(KINGS OF KULBARGA, ETC.)

The Deccan was partly conquered by Moḥammadans for the first time by 'Ala-al-dīn Moḥammad of Dehlī, who in 1294 seized Deogīri and Elichpūr and thus formed a new province south of the Sātpura mountains. Moḥammad b. Taghlaḳ enlarged the Deccan province by an invasion of Telingana in 1322, and for a time made Deogīri (re-named Dawlatābād) the capital of his empire. Among the numerous revolts which disturbed his reign that of the recently organized province of the Deccan was the earliest to achieve independence. From 1347 for nearly two centuries the Bahmanid kings of Kulbarga, Warangal and Bīdar, held sway over the northern half of the Deccan above the Kistna. Their founder was Ḥasan Gāngū, an Afghān in the employment of a Brahman at Dehlī. He rose to high office under the Taghlaḳ Sulṭāns and received the title of Ẓafar Khān. When the revolt against Moḥammad b. Taghlaḳ broke out in the Deccan, Ḥasan placed himself at the head of

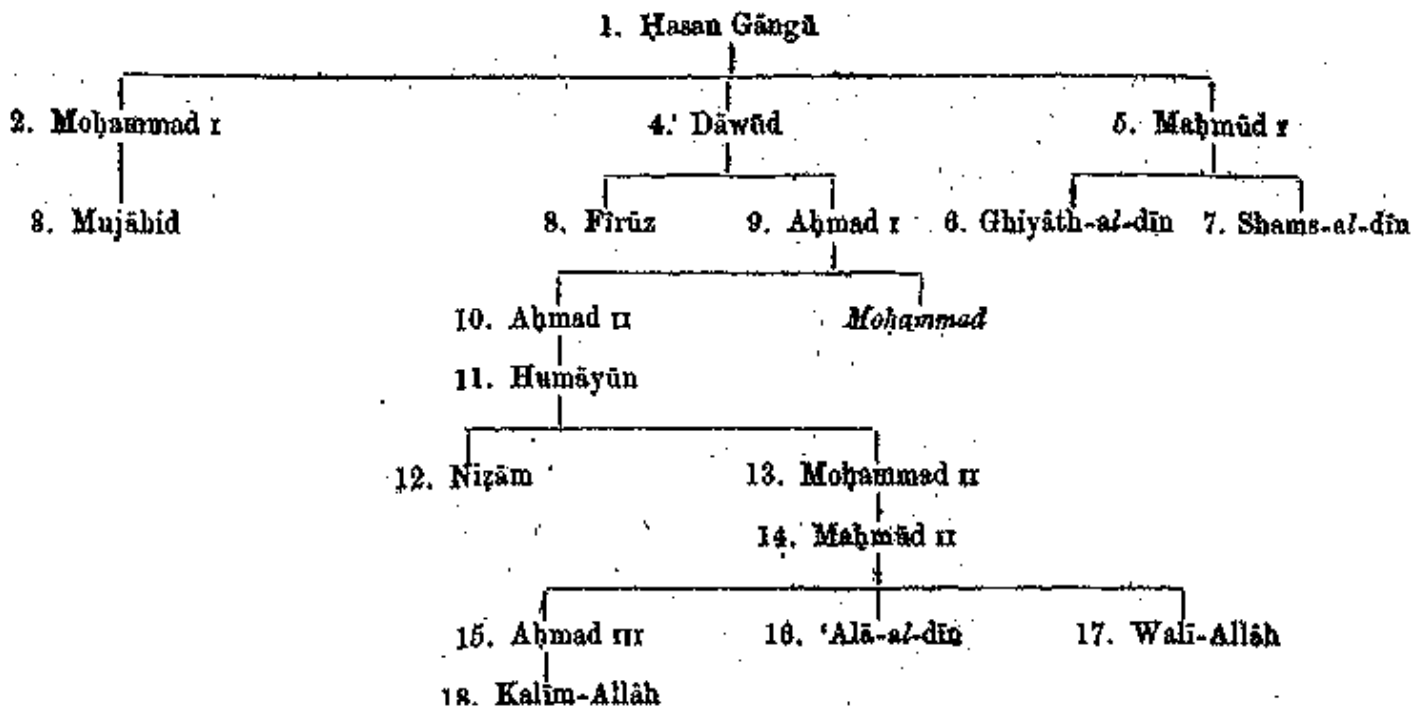
the insurgents, drove the royal troops from the country, and ascended the throne at Kulbarga under the style of 'Alā-*al*-dīn Ḥasan Gāngū Bahmanī.* His dominions marched on the north with Berār, on the east with Telingana, whilst the river Kistna and the sea formed the southern and western boundaries. They included the greater part of the modern Bombay Presidency south of Sūrat and most of the Nizām's territory. In addition, the Rājas of Telingana and Vijāyanagar were from time to time compelled at the point of the sword to pay homage and tribute. Under 'Alā-*al*-dīn Aḥmad II the Konkan was reduced and the neighbouring kings of Khāndēsh and Gujarāt were defeated. In 1471 Moḥammad Shāh III carried his arms into Orīsa, seized Conjeveram, and made war in the south upon the Rāja of Belgāon; so that the Bahmanids' sway extended from sea to sea and included nearly the whole of the Deccan north of Mysore. The extension of territory was followed by a new division into provinces, and the division led to disintegration. Yūsuf 'Ādil Shāh, a successful general of Moḥammad Shāh III, declared the independence of the

* See an article by James Gibb in *Numismatic Chronicle*, III. i. 91–115; and my *Catalogue of the Coins of the Muhammadan States of India in the British Museum*, lxii–lxvi.

new province of Bījāpūr; Niẓām-al-mulk prepared the way for the separation of Junayr; 'Imād-al-mulk was proclaimed king in Berār, and the loss of these provinces was speedily followed by the independence of the rest and the extinction of the parent dynasty. The *'Imād Shāhs* of Berār, *Niẓām Shāhs* of Aḥmadnagar, *Barīd Shāhs* of Bīdar, *'Ādil Shāhs* of Bījāpūr, and *Ḳuṭb Shāhs* of Golkonda divided the kingdom of the Bahmanids amongst them.

A.H.		A.D.
748	Ḥasan Gāngū 'Alā-al-dīn Ẓafar Khān	1347
759	Moḥammad Shāh I	1358
776	Mujāhid Shāh	1375
780	Dāwūd Shāh	1378
780	Maḥmūd Shāh I	1378
799	Ghiyāth-al-dīn	1397
799	Shams-al-dīn	1397
800	Tāj-al-dīn Fīrūz Shāh	1397
825	Aḥmad Shāh I	1421
838	'Alā-al-dīn Aḥmad Shāh II	1435
862	'Alā-al-dīn Humāyūn Shāh	1457
865	Niẓām Shāh	1461
867	Moḥammad Shāh II	1463
887	Maḥmūd Shāh II	1482
924	Aḥmad Shāh III	1518
927	'Alā-al-dīn Shah	1520
929	Walī-Allāh Shāh	1522
932	Kalīm-Allāh Shāh	1525
—933	[*Five Deccan Dynasties*]	—1526

BAHMANIDS


1. Ḥasan Gāngū
2. Moḥammad I
4. Dāwūd
5. Maḥmūd I
8. Mujāhid
8. Fīrūz
9. Aḥmad I
6. Ghiyāth-al-dīn
7. Shams-al-dīn
10. Aḥmad II
Moḥammad
11. Humāyūn
12. Niẓām
13. Moḥammad II
14. Maḥmūd II
15. Aḥmad III
16. 'Alā-al-dīn
17. Walī-Allāh
18. Kalīm-Allāh

A.H.	112. 'IMĀD SHĀHS (BERĀR)	A.D.
890—980		1484—1572
890	Fatḥ-Allāh	1484
910	'Alā-al-dīn	1504
c. 936	Daryā	*c.* 1529
c. 968	Burhān	*c.* 1560
976	Tufāl (usurper)	1568
—980		—1572

[*Niẓām Shāhs*]

A.H.	113. NIẒĀM SHĀHS (AḤMADNAGAR)	A.D.
896—1004		1490—1595
896	Aḥmad I b. Niẓām Shāh	1490
914	Burhān I	1508
961	Ḥosayn	1553
972	Murtaḍā	1565
996	Mīrān Ḥosayn	1588
997	Ismā'īl	1589
999	Burhān II	1590
1003	Ibrāhīm	1594
1004	Aḥmad II	1594
1004	Bahādur*	1595

[*Mogul Emperors*]

* Murtaḍa II reigned nominally from 1598–1607; and the province then came under the domination of Malik Amber.

A.H.		A.D.
897—*c.* 101[illegible]	114. BARĪD SHĀHS	1492—*c.* 1609
	(BĪDAR)	
897	Ḳāsim I.	1492
910	Amīr I	1504
945	'Alī	1549
990	Ibrāhīm	1562
997	Ḳāsim II	1569
1000	Mirza 'Alī	1572
c. 1018	Amīr II	*c.* 1609
895—1097	115. 'ĀDIL SHĀHS	1489—1686
	(BĪJĀPŪR)	
895	Yūsuf 'Ādil Shāh.	1489
916	Ismā'il	1511
941	Mallū	1534
941	Ibrāhīm I	1535
965	'Alī I	1557
987	Ibrāhīm II	1579
1035	Moḥammad	1626
1070	'Alī II	1660
—1097	[*Moḡul Emperors*]	—1686
918—1098	116. ḲUṬB SHĀHS	1512—1687
	(GOLKONDA)	
918	Sulṭān Ḳulī	1512
940	Jamshīd	1543
957	Subḥān Ḳulī	1550
957	Ibrāhīm	1550
989	Moḥammad Ḳulī	1581
1020	Abd-Allāh	1611
1083	Abū-l-Ḥasan	1672
—1098	[*Moḡul Emperors*]	—1687

A.H. A.D.

932—1275 117. MOGUL EMPERORS 1525—1857
OF HINDŪSTĀN

Bābar, the Mongol conqueror of Hindūstān, was descended in the fifth generation from Tīmūr (see the genealogical table p. 268) and was born in 1482, in Farghāna, where his father was governor. Driven from his native province by the Ūzbegs of Shaybānī about 1504, Bābar sought his recompense in the subjection of Afghānistān. He took possession of Badakhshān in 1503 (*909*), occupied Kābul in the following year, and annexed Ḳandahār in 1507. For many years he meditated the invasion of India, but it was not until 1525 (*932*) that he felt himself strong enough to descend at the head of his Turks (he abhorred the name of Mongol*) upon the Panjāb and occupy Lahore. On the 20th April 1526 he signally defeated the army of Sulṭān Ibrāhīm Lōdī of Dehlī on the historic plain of Pānīpat, and the victory was followed by the rapid

* In Arabic Mughal, whence the English Mogul or Moghul.

occupation of Dehlī and Agra, and the submission of the northern parts of Hindūstān, from the Indus to the borders of Bengal. Bābar died in 1530 (*937*) before he could subdue the kingdoms of Bengal, Gujarāt and Mālwa; still less had he approached the Deccan.

His son Humāyūn, though but nineteen years of age, endeavoured to complete his father's work. His attempt to reduce the united kingdom of Gujarāt and Mālwa was, however, abortive; and the Afghāns of Bengal, led by the genius of Shīr Shāh, the usurping king of Bihār, succeeded after an obstinate struggle in driving Humāyūn step by step to the west. A treacherous attack on the Mogul camp at Chonsa in 1539 (*946*) banished them from Bengal; and a total defeat at Kannuj in the following year gave Shīr Shāh the command of all Hindūstān (but not Gujarāt), and compelled Humāyūn to seek refuge, first in Sind, and then in Persia. Fifteen years passed before the Mogul Emperor returned to re-conquer his empire. Meanwhile Shīr Shāh, after laying the foundations of the administrative organization which Akbar afterwards perfected, died, and the disunion among his successors paved the way for the invader. In 1555 Humāyūn recovered Dehlī, and there died in January 1556 (*963*).

Humāyūn had only begun the work of reconquest; it was left to his son Akbar, a youth of fourteen, to finish it. The boy's guardian Bayrām Khān, a Turkomān, utterly defeated the Indian forces under Hīmū on the 5th November 1556 on the same plain of Pānīpat where Bābar had won his great victory. By this single blow Akbar found himself master of the better part of Hindūstān, and, young as he was, he soon took the reins of power into his own hands. Debli and Agra were his by the victory of Pānīpat; Gwāliōr fell in 1558 (*966*), Jaunpūr in 1559, and Mālwa and Khāndēsh were temporarily overrun in 1561–2. Rājputāna submitted after the storming of Chitōr in 1567 (*975*), and Gujarāt was reduced in 1572 (*980*). Bengal, which had nominally admitted the Mogul sovereignty, rose in rebellion, but was subdued in 1575–7 (*983–4*). Kashmīr was annexed in 1587 and Kandahār six years later.*

'Akbar was too wise to meddle seriously in Deccan politics. All he wanted was to secure himself against invasion from the south; and with this view he annexed the rugged borderland of Khāndēsh, and used its capital,

* See my *History of the Mogul Emperors of Hindustan illustrated by their Coins*, xii. ff.

Burhānpūr, with the rocky fastness of Asīrgarh, [which had withstood his siege and his English gunners for six months before it succumbed in 1601 (*1008*),] as outposts to defend his southern frontier. He also subdued Berār and took the fortress of Aḥmadnagar (1600).'* The kings of Bījāpūr and Golkonda paid him homage and offered him tribute: but he never attempted annexation in the Deccan, beyond securing his frontier; nor had the Deccan *sūbah* or province, even in this limited sense, been organized as thoroughly as the rest of the empire at the time of his death in 1605 (*1014*).

The true successor of Moḥammad b. Taghlak in his dreams of Deccan conquest was Aurangzīb, the sixth Mogul Emperor. As governor during Shāh-Jahān's reign in 1636–43 he had organized the four divisions of the Deccan province — Dawlatābād (including Aḥmadnagar), Khāndēsh, Telingana, and Berār; and he made the king of Golkonda a vassal in 1656. The fratricidal struggle which preceded his accession to the throne at Dehlī in 1659 (*1069*), and the work of ordering his administration, diverted his attention from the Deccan for some years; and it was not till 1681 that he began that long series

* See my *Aurangzīb* (Rulers of India) pp. 144—204.

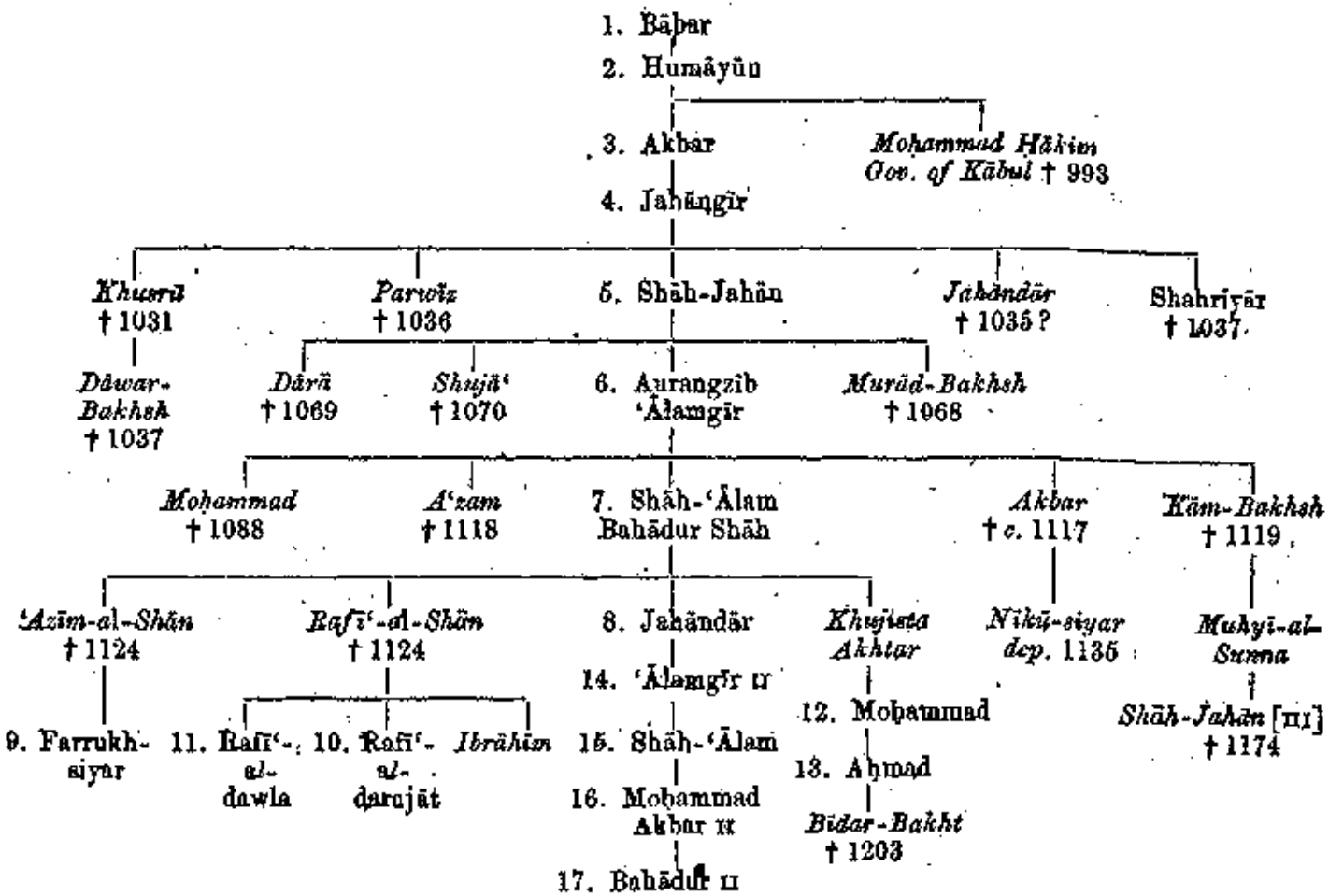
of campaigns in the south which did not end till his own death twenty-six years later. He besieged and took Bījāpūr in 1686 and Golkonda in 1687, and put an end to the dynasties of the 'Ādil and Ḳuṭb Shāhs. But against the new power of the Marāthas which had arisen in the Deccan in the middle of the 17th century he could make no head; and though his armies traversed the Deccan in all directions and took many forts, the country and its hardy mountaineers were never subdued. Yet when Aurangzīb died in 1707 his dominions stretched from Kābul to the mouths of the Hūglī, and from Sūrat across Haydarābād to Masulipatan and even Madras. All India, save the apex of the Deccan, was his in name; but except in forts and cities, the possession was nominal in the south.

The empire of the Great Moguls began to break up after the death of Aurangzīb. His successors were for the most part weak and debauched; and the rising powers of the Sikhs, Jāts, and Marāthas were young and strong. The invasions of Nādir Shāh in 1738, and Aḥmad Durrānī in 1748, 1757, etc., were signs of the feebleness of the empire. Fifty years after Aurangzīb's death the Marāthas were supreme in the south, except where the newly-

founded dynasty of the Niẓām kept them at arm's length, and were pushing their way through Gujarāt up to Dehlī; the Rājputs had ceased to acknowledge the Mogul supremacy; the Sikhs were gradually winning the mastery of the Panjāb from the Afghāns; the Jāts were practically independent near Agra; Oudh was virtually a separate kingdom, and so was Bengal; though the little patches of territory at Calcutta, Bombay and Madras scarcely portended the great future of the East India Company. The progress of the Company's arms need not be related here. The battle of Plassey (1757) and Buxar (1764) laid the ghost of the Mogul Empire, though the fiction of Mogul sovereignty was maintained till 1857. The last three emperors were pensioners of the British Crown; and Bahādur II, after upsetting his puppet-throne by joining in the Mutiny, died in exile at Rangoon in 1862.

A.H.		A.D
932	Bābar, Ẓahīr-al-dīn*	1526
937	Humāyūn, Naṣir-al-dīn	1530
963	Akbar, Jalāl-al-dīn	1556
1014	Jahāngīr, Nūr-al-dīn	1605
1037	*Dāwar-Bakhsh*	1627–8
1037	Shāh-Jahān, Shihāb-al-dīn	1628
1068	*Murād-Bakhsh* (*in Gujarāt*)	1658
1068–70	*Shujā'* (*in Bengal*)	1658–60
1069	Aurangzīb 'Ālamgīr, Muḥyī-al-dīn	1659
1118	*A'zam Shāh*	1707
1119–20	*Kām-Bakhsh*	1708
1119	Shāh-'Ālam Bahādur Shāh I, Ḳuṭb-al-dīn	1707
1124	Jahāndār, Mu'izz-al-dīn	1712
1124	Farrukh-siyar	1713
1131	Rafī'-al-darajāt, Shams-al-dīn	1719
1131	Rafī'-al-dawla Shāh-Jahān II	1719
1131	*Nīkū-siyar*	1719
1132	*Ibrāhīm*	1720
1131	Moḥammad, Nāṣir-al-dīn	1719
1161	Aḥmad	1748
1167	'Alamgīr II, 'Azīz-al-dīn	1754
1173–4	*Shāh-Jahān III*	1759–60
1173	Shāh-'Ālam, Jalāl-al-dīn	1759
1202–3	*Bīdar-Bakht*	1788
1221	Moḥammad Akbar II	1806
1253	Bahādur Shāh II	1837
—1275	[*Great Britain*]	—1857

* Bābar and most of his successors had the Arabic name Moḥammad in addition to their Persian names. In the list, the names of usurpers and pretenders are printed in italics.


1. Bābar
2. Humāyūn
3. Akbar
Mohammad Hākim
Gov. of Kābul † 993
4. Jahāngīr
Khusrū
† 1031
Parwīz
† 1036
5. Shāh-Jahān
Jahāndār
† 1035?
Shahriyār
† 1037
Dāwar-Bakhsh
† 1037
Dārā
† 1069
Shujā'
† 1070
6. Aurangzīb
'Ālamgīr
Murād-Bakhsh
† 1068
Mohammad
† 1088
A'zam
† 1118
7. Shāh-'Ālam
Bahādur Shāh
Akbar
† c. 1117
Kām-Bakhsh
† 1119
'Azīm-al-Shān
† 1124
Rafī'-al-Shān
† 1124
8. Jahāndār
Khujista Akhtar
Nikū-siyar
dep. 1135
Muhyī-al-Sunna
14. 'Ālamgīr II
12. Mohammad
Shāh-Jahān [III]
† 1174
9. Farrukh-siyar
11. Rafī'-al-dawla
10. Rafī'-al-darajāt
Ibrāhīm
15. Shāh-'Ālam
13. Ahmad
16. Mohammad Akbar II
Bīdar-Bakht
† 1203
17. Bahādur II

A.H. A.D.

1160—1311 118. AMIRS OF AFGHĀNISTĀN 1747—1893

The modern history of Afghānistān as an independent State begins in 1747. After the deposition of the Ghōrids, the country ceased to possess a dynasty of its own,* and merely formed part of a larger kingdom. It became a province of the Īl-khāns of Persia, and then of the Tīmūrid empire; and after the establishment of the Moguls in India, it was sometimes part of their dominions and sometimes belonged to the Shāhs of Persia; or, more often, was divided between the two. Kābul and Kandahār were generally in the possession of the Moguls until after the death of Aurangzīb, whilst Herāt belonged to Persia. In 1737 Nādir Shāh, the Afshārid ruler of Persia, seized Kābul and Ḳandahār and made his memorable descent upon India. After his assassination in 1747 the Afghāns resolved to be independent of Persia, and chose Aḥmad Khān the chief of the Abdālī or Durrānī tribe to be their Shāh. The post of vezīr, or second man in the state, was conferred

* The line of the Kart Maliks were a local exception at Herāt (p. 252).

upon Jamāl Khān the hereditary chief of the rival tribe of the Bārakzais. Henceforward for nearly a century this arrangement subsisted: the Shāh was a Durrānī and the Vezīr a Bārakzai.

Aḥmad Shāh reduced all Afghānistān, conquered Herāt and Khurāsān, invaded India repeatedly, occupied Dehlī for a time, and annexed Kashmīr, Sind, and part of the Panjāb; but his Indian possessions gradually passed over to the growing power of the Sikhs, who had become masters of the Panjāb before the end of the 18th century. A massacre of the Bārakzais by Zamān Shāh, Aḥmad's grandson, instead of diminishing, increased the influence of the heriditary vezīrs, who exercised the chief power during the nominal reign of Maḥmūd Shāh and the early reign of Shāh Shujā'. Several attempts were made to oust them from their dominant position; but the blinding and murder of Fatḥ Khān Bārakzai in 1818 was the signal for the deposition of the Durrānī dynasty, and after some years of anarchy Dost Moḥammad, the brother of the murdered Vezīr, took possession of the throne (1826), as the first Bārakzai Amīr of Afghānistān.

During the decline of the later Durrānīs the claim of Persia to the possession of Herāt had been pressed by force

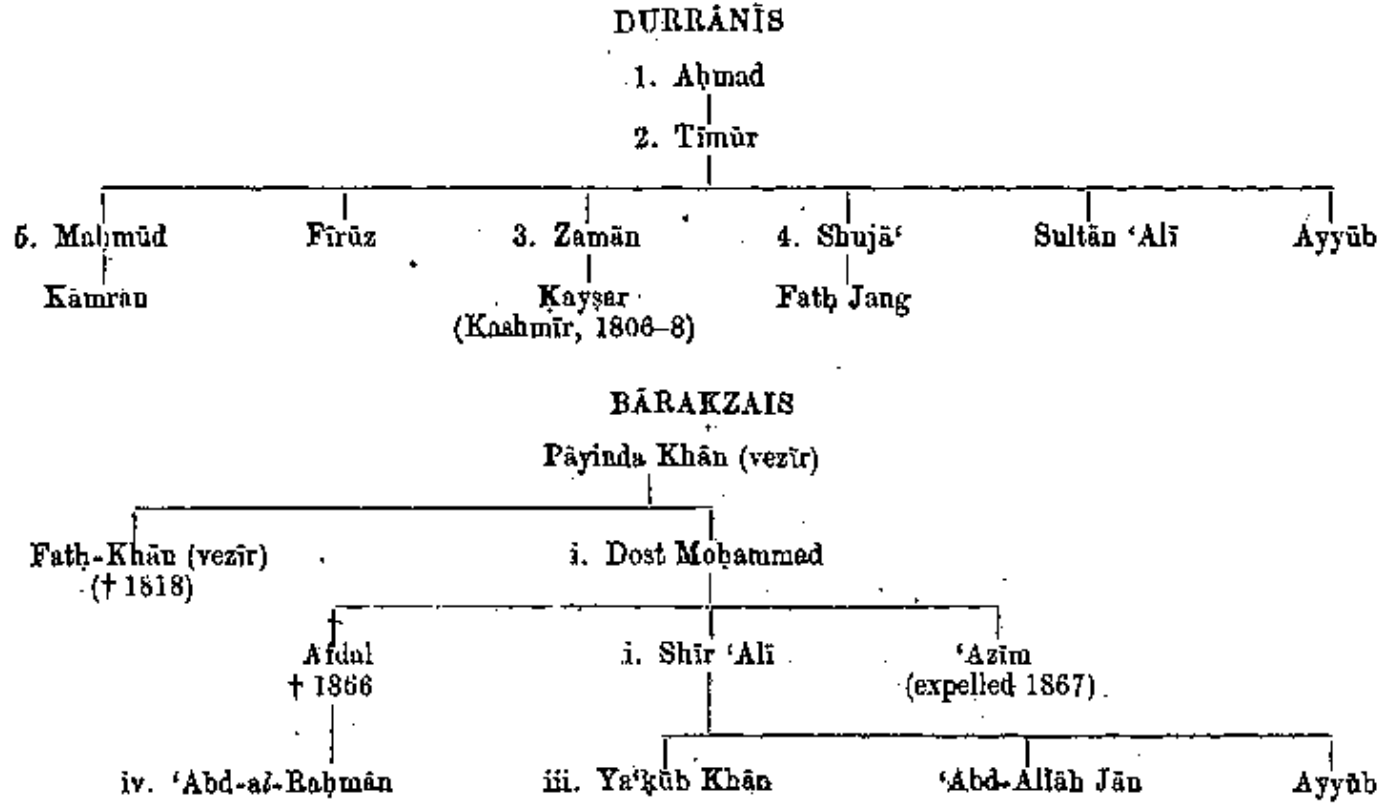
of arms. Since its conquest by Aḥmad Shāh the city had been held by various Afghān princes, with little dependence upon the central government. In 1816 the Persians had attacked Herāt, but had been repulsed by Fatḥ Khān the Bārakzai. In 1837, urged on by Russia, the Shāh of Persia again advanced upon the 'key of Afghānistān,' and again, after a ten months' siege, protracted by the splendid defence of Eldred Pottinger, was forced to retire (1838). When Dost Moḥammad showed signs of encouraging Russian overtures, the British Government of India, excited by the narrow escape of Herāt, and alarmed at the unfriendly attitude of the Amīr, declared war, and the Afghān campaigns and disasters of 1839–1842 ensued. Shāh-Shujā', the representative of the deposed Durrānīs, was in an evil day restored to the Amīrate, and Sir William Macnaghten was posted at Kābul as British Resident. Dost Moḥammad had surrendered and remained passive, but his son Akbar Khān continued the resistance of the Bārakzais. In Nov. 1841 Macnaghten and Burnes were treacherously murdered, and of the sixteen thousand British troops and camp followers who left Kābul under a safe-conduct only one escaped to tell the tale of slaughter. The massacre was avenged by Pollock's army

in 1842, and the Afghāns thenceforward, for nearly forty years, were allowed to manage their own internal affairs. Dost Moḥammad died in 1863, the subsidized ally of England; and the history of Afghānistān since his death has consisted chiefly in the struggles of his sons and grandsons for the throne. A second attempt to force a British Resident at Kābul upon the Amīr, as a check upon the envoys of Russia, led to the defeat and deposition of Shīr 'Alī, the murder of Cavagnari, and the campaigns of Stewart and Roberts in 1879–81. The Amīr 'Abd al-Raḥmān, then established by the British, has since, on the whole, succeeded in holding the mastery over his refractory subjects.

A.H.	DURRĀNĪS*	A.D.
1160	Aḥmad Shāh	1747
1187	Tīmūr Shāh	1773
1207	Zamān Shāh	1793
1216	Shujā'-al-mulk (Shāh Shujā')	1801
1216	Maḥmūd Shāh	1801
1218	Shujā' (2nd reign)	1803
1224	Maḥmūd (2nd reign; latterly at Herāt, to 1246)	1809
1233	'Alī Shāh (at Kābul)	1817
1233	Ayyūb Shāh (at Peshāwar and Kashmīr)	1817
1245	Kāmrān (at Herāt, to 1258)	1829
1255	Shujā' (3rd reign)	1839
1258	Fatḥ Jang (fled the same year)	1842

	BĀRAKZAIS	
242	Dost Moḥammad	1826
1255–8	*Shujā' restored*	1839–42
280	Shīr Alī	1863
	(Afḍal and 'Azīm at Balkh and Kābul 1865–7)	
1296	Ya'ḳūb Khān	1879
1296	'Abd-al-Raḥmān Khān *regnant*	1879

* The list and pedigree of the Durrānīs is adapted from an article by M. Longworth Dames in the *Numismatic Chronicle*, III. viii. 326–63 (1888).


DURRĀNĪS
1. Aḥmad
2. Tīmūr
5. Maḥmūd
Fīrūz
3. Zamān
4. Shujā‘
Sultān ‘Alī
Ayyūb
Kāmrān
Kayṣar
(Kashmīr, 1806–8)
Fatḥ Jang
BĀRAKZAIS
Pāyinda Khān (vezīr)
Fatḥ-Khān (vezīr)
(† 1818)
i. Dost Moḥammed
Afḍal
† 1866
i. Shīr ‘Alī
‘Azīm
(expelled 1867)
iv. ‘Abd-al-Raḥmān
iii. Ya‘ḳūb Khān
‘Abd-Allāh Jān
Ayyūb

INDEX TO RULERS*

'Abd-al-Hamīd, *'Othmanlis*, 195
Abāgā, *Il-Khāns of Persia*, 229
Abak, *Bārid*, 161
'Abbāsh-Mu'tadid, *'Abbādid*, 25
'Abbāsids, 25; 26, 27, 42
'Abbās, uncle of Mohammad, 3
'Abbās, *Khedives*, 65
'Abbās, *Safavids*, 259
'Abbās, *Zeray'id*, 97
'Abbāsid Caliphs, 12, 13; 3, 6, 7, 18, 34, 36, 42, 66, 67, 68, 69, 74, 89, 109, 111, 123, 140, 151, 165, 188, 217, 280, 296
'Abbāsid Caliphs of Egypt, 7
'Abd-al-'Azīz Mansūr, *Amirid*, 26
'Abd-al-'Azīz, *Dulafid*, 125
'Abd-al-'Azīz, *Hafsid*, 90
'Abd-al-'Azīz, *Jānid*, 275
'Abd-al-'Azīz, *Mamlūk*, 83
'Abd-al-'Azīz, *Marīnid*, 57
'Abd-al-'Azīz, *'Othmanlī*, 195
'Abd-al-'Azīz, *Shaybānid*, 272
'Abd-al-Hakk, *Marīnid*, 57
Abd-al-Halīm, *Marīnid*, 57
'Abdālīs see Durrānīs
'Abd-al-Kādir, *Ta'furid*, 91
'Abd-al-Karīm Satuk, *Ilak*, 135
'Abd-al-Karīm, *Kh-kand*, 280
'Abd-Allāh, *Ayyūbids*, 37
'Abd-Allāh b. Tāshfīn, *Almoravid*, 41, 42
'Abd-Allāh 'Ādil, *Almohad*, 47
'Abd-Allāh, *Fātimid*, 71
'Abd-Allāh, *Filali Sharīf*, 61
'Abd-Allāh, *Golden Horde*, 230
'Abd-Allāh, *Hamdānid (Yemen)*, 95
'Abd-Allāh Abū-l-Hayjā, *Hamdānid of Mōsil*, 111
'Abd-Allāh, *Hassani Sharīf*, 61
'Abd-Allāh, *Khiva*, 279
'Abd-Allāh, *Marīnid*, 58
'Abd-Allāh, *Omayyad of Cordova*, 21
'Abd-Allāh, *Rasūlids*, 99
'Abd-Allāh, *Shaybānid*, 271, 272
'Abd-Allāh, *Tāhirid*, 128
'Abd-Allāh, *Tīmūrid*, 268
'Abd-Allāh, *Zayrid*, 25
'Abd-Allāh, *Ta'furid*, 91
'Abd-Allāh, *Ziyānid*, 91
'Abd-al-Latīf, *Shaybānid*, 271
'Abd-al-Latīf, *Tīmūrid*, 268
'Abd-al-Majīd, *Fātimid*, 71
'Abd-al-Majīd, *'Othmanlī*, 195
'Abd-al-Malik, *Amirid*, 26
'Abd-al-Malik, *Hassani Sharīf*, 61
'Abd-al-Malik 'Imād-al-dawla, *Hūdid*, 26
'Abd-al-Malik, *Jalayarid*, 25
'Abd-al-Malik, *Omayyad*, 9
'Abd-al-Malik, *Sāmānids*, 122
'Abd-al-Mu'min, *Almohad*, 45, 47
'Abd-al-Mu'min, *Jānid*, 275
'Abd-al-Mu'min, *Shaybānid*, 271
'Abd-al-Nabī, *Mahdid*, 96
'Abd-al-Rahmān, *Afghān*, 334
'Abd-al-Rahmān, *Filali Sharīf*, 61
'Abd-al-Rahmān, *Marīnid*, 58

* The *first* number refers to the dynastic list in which the name occurs. In the case of identical names the alphabetical order of the dynasties is followed. Where two or more identical names occur in the same dynasty, the dynastic name is put in the plural. Prefixed words like Abū-, Bazū, Ibn, must be sought under the second name.

'Abd-al-Rahmān, *Omayyads of Cordova*, 21; 6, 19, 20
'Abd-al-Rahmān Abū-Tāshfīn, *Zyānids*, 51
'Abd-al-Rashīd, *Ghaznavids*, 289
'Abd-al-Razzāk, *Sarbadārids*, 251
'Abd-al-Wahhāb, *Tāhirids* (Yaman), 101
'Abd-al-Wāhid -Makhlū', *Almohads*, 47
Abd-al-Wāhid -Rashīd, *Almohads*, 47
'Abīsh, *Salghurids*, 173
Abū-Bakr, *Almoravids*, 42, 43
Abū-Bakr, *'Āmirids*, 26
Abū-Bakr, *Atābegs of Adharbījān*, 171
Abū-Bakr, *Ayyūbids*, 77, 78
Abū-Bakr Shāh, *Delhi*, 300
Abū-Bakr I -Shamlūl, *Hafsids*, 50
Abū-Bakr II Abū-Yahyā -Mutawakkil, *Hafsids*, 50
Abū-Bakr, *Mamlūks*, 83
Abū-Bakr Abū-Yahyā, *Muwahids*, 57
Abū-Bakr, *Orthodox Caliphs*, 3, 4, 9
Abū-Bakr, *Salghurids*, 173
Abū-l-Hasan, *Nasrids*, 28
Abū-Sa'īd, *see* Sa'īd, Abū-
Abū-Zayyān, Arāmons or, 171; 169
-'Adhid Abū-Muhammad 'Abd-Allāh, *Fātimids*, 71
'Ādil, *Aiyūbids*, 259
-'Ādil, *Almohads*, 47
-'Ādil Sayf-al-dīn Abū-Bakr, (Saphadin), *Ayyūbids*, 76–8
-'Ādil II Sayf-al-dīn Abū-Bakr, *Ayyūbids*, 77
-'Ādil Girāy, *Krīm*, 236
-'Ādil Zayn-al-dīn Kitbughā, *Mamlūks*, 81
-'Ādil -Mustadī (Abbāsid Caliph), *Mamlūks*, 83
-'Ādil Nasr-al-dīn Sallāmish, *Mamlūks*, 81
-'Ādil, *Ortuqids*, 169
'Ādil Khān, *Khāndesh*, 315
'Ādil Shāh, *Delhi*, 300
'Āmir Sittāra, 321; 318
Adsai, *Marāthā*, 215
'Adud-al-dawla Abū-Shujā' Khusrū, *Buwayhids*, 141
'Adud-al-dīn Alp-Arslān, *Seljūks*, 163; 151
-Afdal Nūr-al-dīn 'Alī, *Ayyūbids*, 78
Afdal, *Ortuqids*, 334
-Afdal -'Abbās, *Rasūlids*, 99
Afghāns, Amīrs or, 330–5
Afghāns of Dehlī, 300, 303
Afghāns, Shāhs or Persia, 249
Afshāriyāh, *Hazāraspids*, 175; 174
Armenians, Shāhs or Persia, 249
Aghlab Abū-'Akāl, *Aghlabids*, 97
Agnlabids, 36, 37; 6, 70
Ahmad Shāh, *Afghāns*, 334; 257, 326, 330
Ahmad, *Aghlabids*, 37
Ahmad, *Al-Kayrawān*, 254
Ahmad, *Armenia*, 179
Ahmad Shāh, *Bahmanids*, 318
Ahmad Shāh, *Bengal*, 307
Ahmad Mu'izz-al-dawla, *Buwayhids*, 141; 139, 140
Ahmad, *Dulafids*, 125
Ahmad, *Fātimids*, 71
Ahmad -Dhahabī, *Fātih Sharīf*, 61
Ahmad, *Golden Horde*, 232
Ahmad Sayyid, *Golden Horde*, 232
Ahmad Shaykh, *Golden Horde*, 232
Ahmad Shāh, *Gujarāt*, 313
Ahmad I -Fadl, *Hafsids*, 50
Ahmad II -Mustansir, *Hafsids*, 50
Ahmad, *Hassan Shaykhs*, 61
Ahmad Nasrat-al-dīn, *Hazāraspids*, 175
Ahmad Sayf-al-dawla, *Hūdids*, 26
Ahmad Sayf-al-dawla -Muktadir, *Hūdids*, 26
Ahmad -Musta'īn, *Hūdids*, 26
Ahmad Abū-l-Fawāris, *Hūdids*, 69
Ahmad Khān, *Jūnā Khāns*, 135

Ahmad, *Il-Khān of Persia*, 220
Ahmad Sulṭān, *Jalayr*, 246–8
Ahmad, *Mamlūks*, 83
Ahmad -Mustanṣir, *Marīnid*, 58
Ahmad, *Marwānid*, 113
Ahmad, *Mogul*, 328
Ahmad Sulṭān, *Muẓaffarid*, 248
Ahmad -Manṣūr, *Ortukid*, 168
Ahmad, *'Othmānlīs*, 193
Ahmad, *Rasūlid*, 99
Aḥmad, *Sāmānid*, 132
Ahmad, *Timūrid*, 269
Ahmad, *Tulūnid*, 66, 67
Ahmad, *Wat'asid*, 58
Akā Muḥammad, *Kājār*, 280
'Akīl, Abū-, *Aghlabid*, 37
Akatāy, *Khiva*, 278
Akbar, Jalāl-al-dīn, *Mogul*, 326; 305, 313, 315, 324–5
Akbar II, *Mogul*, 328
Akbarī, *Mongol*, 216
-Akhras, *Seljuk of Syria*, 154
Ak-Koyunlī (*The Families of the White Sheep*), 254
Akoonkur Ḥaidr-al-dīn, *Armen.*, 170
'Alā-al-dawla Muḥammad, *Kākuyahid*, 146
'Alā-al-dawla Mas'ūd, *Ghaznawid*, 289; 288
'Alā-al-dīn, *Bahmanids*, 318
'Alā-al-dīn 'Alī, *Bengal*, 307
'Alā-al-dīn Fīrūz, *Bengal*, 308
'Alā-al-dīn Ḥusayn, *Bengal*, 308
'Alā-al-dīn Jānī, *Bengal*, 306
'Alā-al-dīn Mardān, *Bengal*, 306
'Alā-al-dīn Mas'ūd, *Dehlī*, 299
'Alā-al-dīn Muḥammad, *Dehlī*, 299; 297, 316
'Alā-al-dīn Ḥusayn Jahān-sūz, *Ghūrid*, 292
'Alā-al-dīn Muḥammad, *Khwārizm Shāh*, 177; 176, 179
'Alā-al-dīn, *Seljūks of Rūm*, 153
'Alam-al-dīn Abū-l-Ma'ālī Kuraysh, *'Ukaylid*, 117
'Alamgīr Aurangzīb, *Mogul*, 325-8
'Alamgīr II, 'Azīz-al-dīn, *Mogul*, 328
Alfonso of Leon, 27, 42
Algū, *Chaghatāy*, 242
'Alī -Sa'īd, *Almohad*, 47
'Alī, *Almoravid*, 43
'Alī -Afḍal, *Ayyūbid*, 78
'Alī Kūchak, *Beytigīnid*, 165
'Alī Fakhr-al-dawla, *Buwayhid*, 142
'Alī 'Imād-al-dawla, *Buwayhid*, 141; 136, 139
'Alī, *Caramanians*, 91
'Alī, *Chaghatāy*, 242; 241
'Alī Iklīl-al-dawla, *Dānis*, 26
'Alī -Ẓāhir, *Fāṭimid*, 71
'Alī, *Ghaznawid*, 289
'Alī Abū-l-Ḥasan, *Ḥamdānid*, 112
'Alī Sayf-al-dawla, *Ḥamdānid*, 112
'Alī -Wāthiḳ, *Ḥamdānid* (Yaẓm.), 95
'Alī -Nāṣir, *Ḥammādid*, 21, 25
'Alī, *Idrīsids*, 35
'Alī Abū-l-Ḥasan, *Il-Khānid*, 69
'Alī Gūrkān Jalāl-al-dīn, *Inal*, 183
'Alī, Mīr, *Kart*, 252
'Alī Khān, *Khānbālīk*, 315
'Alī, *Maḥdid*, 96
'Alī, *Mawṣilīs*, 81
'Alī Abū-l-Ḥasan, *Marīnid*, 57
'Alī, Abū-, *Marwānid*, 113
'Alī Sanad-al-dawla, *Mazyadid*, 119
'Alī Abū-l-Ḥasan, *Naṣrid*, 28
'Alī, *'Ukaylid*, 117
'Alī, *Ortukid Caliph*, 8; 3, 6
'Alī Alpī, *Ortukid*, 168
'Alī b. Rasūl, *Rasūlid*, 99
'Alī -Mujāhid, *Rasūlid*, 99
'Alī -Murayyid, *Sarbaddārid*, 251
'Alī Shams-al-dīn, *Sarbaddārid*, 251
'Alī Abū-Kāmil, *Sulaymānid*, 92, 94
'Alī, *Tāhirid* (Yaman), 101
'Alī Murād, *Zand*, 269
'Alī, *Zayrid*, 40
'Alī, *Zuray'id*, 97
'Alī -A'izz -Murtaḍā, *Zuray'id*, 97
'Azīz, 123; 6, 33, 35, 129, 139
'Azīm, *Khokand*, 280
'Azīm Shāh, *Dehlī*, 300

Allāh Kuli, *Khiva*, 279
Almansor (*Vezīr*), 20
Almohades (-Muwaḥḥids), 45–47; 27, 39, 43, 49
Almohavides (-Murābiṭs), 41–43; 20, 27, 39, 45
Alp-Arghū Shams-al-dīn, *Hazāraspid*, 175
Alp-Arslān ʿAḍud-al-dīn, *Seljūḳ*, 153; 151
Alp-Arslān -Akhrās, *Seljūḳ*, 154
Alpī, *Ortoḳids*, 168
Alptigīn, *Ghaznavid*, 289; 285
Altamish, *Dehlī*, 299; 295–6
Alwand, *Ak-Koyunlī*, 254
-Amīn, *ʿAbbāsid*, 12
Amīn Khān, *Bengal*, 306
Amīn Mohammad, *Khiva*, 279
Amīr-al-Umarā, 140, 171
Amīr, Abū-ʿAlī -Manṣūr, *Fāṭimid*, 71
ʿAmir Abū-Thābit, *Marīnid*, 57
ʿAmir, *Tāhirids* (Yaman), 101
ʿAmirids (Valencia), 28
ʿAmr b. -Layth, *Saffārid*, 130
Amurath, *ʿOthmanlis*, 195; 185
Amul, *Bārid*, 161
Anaba, *Khiva*, 279
Anūshīrwān, *Il-Khān*, 220
Anūshīrwān, *Ziyārid*, 137
Anushtigīn, *Khwārizm Shāh*, 177
Arab chiefs, 89, 109 ff.
ʿArab Shāh, *Gold Horde*, 230; 239
ʿArab Mohammad, *Khiva*, 279
Arāk Shāh, *Dehlī*, 299
Arank, *Khiva*, 279
Aranḳ Mohammad, *Khiva*, 279
Arghūn, *Il-Khān Persia*, 220; 174
Arikbuka, *Mongol*, 211
Armenia, Suians of, 170
Arpā, *Il-Khān of Persia*, 220
Arslān, *see* Alp-Arslān, Ḳarā-Arslān, Kizil-Arslān, etc.
Arslān Tatar Khān, *Bengal*, 306
Arslān, *Ghaznavid*, 289
Arslān Khān, *Ilek Khans*, 135
Arslān Girāy, *Krim*, 237
Arslān, *Seljūḳ of -ʿIrāḳ*, 154
Arslān, *Seljūks of Kermān*, 153
Arslān, *Zengids*, 163
Asʿad, *Yafʿurid*, 91
Ashraf, *Shāh of Persia*, 259
-Ashraf Mūsā, *Ayyūbid*, 77
-Ashraf Muẓaffar-al-dīn Mūsā, *Ayyūbid*, 78
-Ashraf Chūpānī, 229
-Ashraf Sayf-al-dīn Ḥasan-beg, *Mamlūk*, 83 [83
-Ashraf Sayf-al-dīn Īnāl, *Mamlūk*,
-Ashraf Jānbulāṭ, *Mamlūk*, 83
-Ashraf Sayf-al-dīn Kāit-Bey, *Mamlūk*, 83
-Ashraf Ḳānṣūh -Ghūrī, *Mamlūk*, 83
-Ashraf Ṣalāh-al-dīn Khalīl, *Mamlūk*, 84
-Ashraf ʿAlā-al-dīn Ḳūjuk, *Mamlūk*, 84
-Ashraf Nāṣir-al-dīn Shaʿbān, *Mamlūk*, 84
-Ashraf Tūmān-Bey, *Mamlūk*, 88
-Ashraf Ismāʿīl, *Rasūlids*, 99
-Ashraf ʿOmar, *Rasūlid*, 99
Assassins, 157 ff.
ʿAṭiya Abū-Dubāba, *Marīnid*, 115
Atsiz, *Khwārizm Shāh*, 177
Aurangzīb ʿĀlamgīr, *Mogul*, 326–8
Avanak, *Khiva*, 278
-Awḥad Najm-al-dīn Ayyūb, *Ayyūbid*, 78
Aybak, *Bengal*, 306
Aybak, Ḳuṭb-al-dīn, *Dehlī*, 298; 294–5
Aybak, *Mamlūk*, 81
Aydin Ashtus, 184–5
Aymān, Abū-, *Marīnid*, 57
Ay-Timūr, *Sarbadārid*, 251
Ayyūb Shāh, *Afghān*, 334
Ayyūb, *Ayyūbids*, 77, 78, 80, 88
Ayyūbids, 74–79, 67, 80, 107, 170
Ayyūbids of the *Yaman*, 93
Aʿẓam Shāh, *Bengal*, 307

A'zam Shāh, *Mogul*, 328
'Azīm, *Afghān*, 334
-'Aziz Ghiyāth-al-dīn Mohammad, *Ayyūbid*, 78
-'Aziz 'Imād-al-dīn 'Othmān, *Ayyūbid*, 77
-'Aziz Abū-Mansūr Nizār, *Fātimid*, 71
-'Aziz, *Hammādid*, 40
-Aziz Jamāl-al-dīn Yūsuf, *Mamlūk*, 83 [328
'Azīz-al-dīn 'Alamgīr II., *Mogul*,
'Azīz Shaykh, *Golden Horde*, 230

Bābar, Zahīr-al-dīn, *Mogul*, 326; 327, 328, 322
Bād of Kayṭā, 118
Bādis, *Hammādid*, 40
Bādis, *Zayrid*, 35, 40 [138
Badr Nāṣir-al-dīn, *Hasanwayhid*,
Badr-al-dīn Aksunkur, *Armen.* 170
Badr-al-dīn Lu'lu', *Zangid*, 102–3
Bahā-al-dawla Fīrūz, *Buwayhid*, 141, 147
Bahā-ūl-dawla, *Ghaznawid*, 289
Bahā-al-dawla, *Marwānid*, 119
Bahādur Girāy, *Krim*, 226
Bahādur Shāh, *Bengal*, 306
Bahādur Shāh, *Dehli*, 309
Bahādur Shāh Khān, *Bengal*, 309
Bahādur Shāh, *Gujerāt*, 313
Bahādur Shāh, *Khāndēsh*, 315
Bahādur Shāh, *Mogul*, 326; 327
Bahlūl Lōdī, *Dehli*, 300
Bahmanids, 316–319
Bahrām Shāh, *Bengal*, 306
Bahrām Shāh, *Dehli*, 290
Bahrām Shāh, *Ghaznawid*, 289
Bahrām, *Sēfūt of Kirmān*, 152
Bahrī Mamlūks, 80–82
Bajazet (Bāyazīd), *'Othmānlis*, 195; 184, 187, 200
Bakhtiyār Khaljī, *Bengal*, 306
Bakhtiyār, *Buwayhid*, 141
Bākī Mohammad, *Jānid*, 275
Balak, *Ortokid*, 167
Balban 'Izz-al-dīn, *Armenia*, 170
Balban, *Bengal*, 306
Balban, *Dehli*, 299; 296, 306a
Balkātigīn, *Ghaznawid*, 289; 176
Banū-Nasr, etc. *See* Nasrids, etc.
Baraka, *Golden Horde*, 230; 225
Baraka Khān, *Mamlūk*, 81
Barandrais, 234; 231–3
Bārbak, *Bengal*, 307
Barbarossa, Khayr-al-dīn, 49, 55, 189; Urūj, 55
Bargiyārūk Rukn-al-dīn, *Seljūk*, 153
Barīd Shāhs, 321; 318
Barkūk, *Mamlūk*, 81, 83; 247
Bars-Bey, *Mamlūk*, 83
Bātū, *Golden Horde*, 230; 208–9, 222–4, 226, 233, 238
Bāyān, *Golden Horde*, 231
Bāyazīd Shāh, *Bengal*, 307
Bāyazīd, *Jalayr*, 248
Bāyazīd (Bajazet), *'Othmānlis*, 195; 184, 187, 200
Baybars, *Mamlūks*, 81
Baydā, *Il-Khān of Persia*, 229
Baysunkur, *Al-Kujunī*, 254
Beg Pūlād, *Golden Horde*, 232
Beglerbeglyks, 165
Begtimur Sayf-al-dīn, *Armenia*, 170
Bengal, Governors of, 306
Bengal, Kings of, 307
Berbers, 32, 39, 41, 70
Beys of Tunis, 56
Bidar-Bakht, *Mogul*, 328
Bilbey, *Mamlūk*, 83
Bilikīn, *Mongol*, 215
Birdī-Beg, *Golden Horde*, 230; 224
Bistūn, *Zayārid*, 157
Black Horde, 224, 230
Boabdil of Granada, 28; 27
Bodī, *Mongol*, 216
Boghrā Khān, *Bengal*, 306
Boghrā Khān Mahmud, *Jānid*, 135
Boghrā Khān Hārūn, *Jānid*, 136
Boghra Shāh, *Bengal*, 306
Bojughā, *Khiva*, 278
Bolukkīn, *Hammādid*, 40
Bolukkīn Yūsuf, *Zayrid*, 39, 40

-Bundukdárí Baybars, *Mamlúk*, 81
Burák Khán, *Chagatáy*, 242
Burák, *Golden Horde*, 232
Burák Hájib, *Kutlugh Khán*, 179
Burhán Sultán, *Shaybánid*, 272
Búrids, 161
Burjí Mamlúks, 83
Buwayhids, 130–144; 109, 112, 117, 118, 132, 135, 137, 138, 288
Büyán Kulí, *Chagatáy*, 242
Buyanto, *Mongol*, 215
Büzún, *Chagatáy*, 242
Buzurg Hasan, *Jalayr*, 248

Caliphs, 3–15; *see* 'Abbásid
Carmathians, 90, 91, 126
Chagar Beg Dáwúd, *Seljúk*, 151, 287
Chagatáy Khánns, 241–2; 205, 210
Chaghatighin, *Ilak Khán*, 156
Chakra, *Golden Horde*, 232
Charles Martel, 6
Charles v, 49, 55
Chimtáy, *Golden Horde*, 231
Chingiz Khán, *Mongol*, 215; 77, 177, 179, 202–4, 236
Chópán, 218–220
Cid, 42
Cordova, Omayyads of, 21, 22
Corsairs, 49, 55–6
Crimea, Khánns of, 236
Crusaders, 75–6, 80, 166–7

-Dámghánís, *Sarbadárid*, 251
Danishmandids, 166
Danishmandjs, *Chagatáy*, 242; 241
Dárá, *Mogul*, 329
Dárá, *Zyárid*, 137
Darwish, *Golden Horde*, 232
Dáwar-Bakhsh, *Mogul*, 328
Dawlat Birdí, *Golden Horde*, 232
Dawlat Girây, *Krim*, 236, 237
Dawlat Khán Lódí, *Dehlí*, 309
Dáwúd -Násir, *Ayyúbid*, 78
Dáwúd Sháh, *Bahmanid*, 318
Dáwúd Sháh, *Bengal*, 308
Dáwúd Sháh, *Gujarát*, 313
Dáwúd Khán, *Khiwa Uzbak*, 315
Dáwúd, *Ortukids*, 165
Dáwúd, *Rasúlid*, 99
Dáwúd Chagar Beg, *Seljúk*, 151, 287
Dáwúd Ghiyáth-al-dín, *Seljúk of -'Irák*, 154
Dayan, *Mongol*, 216; 213
-Daylamí, *Rasúl Iwán*, 102
Daylamites, *see* Buwayhids
Dehlí, Sultáns of, 299–301
Delbek, *Mongol*, 216
Denia, Kings of, 26
Deys of Algiers, 56
-Dhahabí, *Fátih Sharif*, 61
Dhú-l-Nún, *Dhú-n-Núnid*, 156
Dhú-l-Núnids, 26
Dhú-l-Yamínayn, *Táhirid*, 128
Diláwar Khán Ghórí, *Málwa*, 311
Dost, *Khiva*, 276
Dost Mohammad, *Afghán*, 331–4
Dragut (Torghúd), Corsair, 56, 189
Dubays, Núr-al-dawla, *Mazyad*, 119
Dukák, *Seljúk of Syria*, 154
Dulaf, *Dulafid*, 125
Dulaf Abú-Kásim, *Dulafid*, 125
Dutchmen, 123
Dynasties, 330–5
Duwá Khán, *Chagatáy*, 242
Duwá Timúr, *Chagatáy*, 242

Elder, *Mongol*, 215
Engke Soriktu, *Mongol*, 215
Erdení, *Khánid*, 250

Fadá'ir, Abú-l-, *Mirdásid*, 115
-Fadl, *Hafsid*, 50
Fadl-Alláh, *Sarbadárid*, 251
-Fátir Abú-l-Kásim 'Isá, *Fátimid*, 71
Fakhr-al-dawla Abú-l-Hasan 'Alí, *Buwayhid*, 142
Fakhr-al-dín Mubárak Sháh, *Bengal*, 307
Fakhr-al-dín, *Kart*, 252
Fakhr-al-dín Kará-Arslán, *Ortukid*, 168

-Fakih Mohammad, *Nasrid*, 28
Faraj, *Mamlūk*, 83
Farāmarz Ẓahīr-al-dīn, *Kākuyahid*, 143
Fāris, Abū-, *Hassanī Sharīf*, 61
Fāris, Abū-, *Hafṣid*, 50
Fāris, Abū-, *Marīnid*, 58
Fāris -Muṭawakkil, *Marīnid*, 58
Farrukh-siyar, *Mogul*, 328
Farrukhzād, *Ghaznavid*, 289
Fāṭ'al Kyzas or Kuḳsheïsu, 315
Fārūki Shāh, *Gujerāt*, 313
Fath Shāh, *Bengal*, 307
Fath 'Alī, *Kājār*, 260
Fath Girāy, *Krim*, 236, 237
Fath, Abū-l-, *Tūnis*, 260
-Fātik, *Naṣrids*, 92
Fātima, 60, 70
Fāṭimids, 70, 73; 30, 41, 67, 74, 112, 114, 118
Fawāris, Abū-l-, *Ikhshīdid*, 69
Fayḍ, Abū-l-, *Ṣāliḥ*, 275
Fāḍil, Abū-l-, *Ayyūbid*, 77, 79
Fīrūz Shāhīs, 61
Fīrūz, Tāj-al-dīn, *Bahmanid*, 315
Fīrūz Shāh, *Bengal*, 309
Fīrūz, *Ziyadhids*, 141
Fīrūz Shāh, *Dehli*, 299
Fulād Sutūn Abū-Manṣūr, *Buwaihid*, 141

Ganāv, Hasan, *Bahmanid*, 316–8
Gaykhātū, *Il-Khān of Persia*, 220
Gegen, *Mongol*, 215
-Ghadanfar, *Hamdānid*, 112
-Ghālib, *Naṣrid*, 28
-Ghānī, *Naṣrid*, 28
Gharāt, Abū-l-, *Ziyadid*, 97
Ghāzī, *Ayyūbids*, 78
Ghāzī Shāh, *Bengal*, 307
Ghāzī, *Dhūnūnmandid*, 156
Ghāzi Girāy, *Krim*, 236, 237
Ghāzī, *Zangids*, 103
Ghāzī, Abū-l-, *Ṣāliḥ*, 276
Ghāzī, Abū-l-, *Khān*, 279
Ghaznawids, 289; 7, 132, 157
Ghiyāth-al-dīn Ghāzī, *Ayyūbid*, 78
Ghiyāth-al-dīn Mohammad, *Ayyūbid*, 78
Ghiyāth-al-dīn, *Bahmanid*, 318
Ghiyāth-al-dīn 'Iwaz, *Bengal*, 306
Ghiyāth-al-dīn A'zam Shāh, *Bengal*, 307
Ghiyāth-al-dīn Bahādur Shāh, *Bengal*, 306 [308
Ghiyāth-al-dīn Jalāl Shāh, *Bengal*,
Ghiyāth-al-dīn Maḥmūd Shāh, *Bengal*, 308
Ghiyāth-al-dīn Balban, *Dehli*, 299
Ghiyāth-al-dīn Tughlak, *Dehli*, 300
Ghiyāth-al-dīn Shāh, *Ghūrid*, 292
Ghiyāth-al-dīn Tāḳāmish, *Golden Horde*, 231
Ghiyāth-al-dīn, *Hazārasp*, 175
Ghiyāth-al-dīn, *Kart*, 252
Ghiyāth-al-dīn Pīr 'Alī, *Kart*, 252
Ghiyāth Shāh, *Mālwa*, 311
Ghiyāth-al-dīn Mohammad, *Seljūk*, 153 [154
Ghiyāth-al-dīn, *Seljūks of -'Irāḳ*,
Ghiyāth-al-dīn, *Seljūks of -Rūm*, 155
Ghōrids, 291–4; 176, 289
Ghōrīs (Kyvos or Milwa), 311
Ghūrī, Mamlūk, 83
Ghuzz, 150, 292
Girāy, *Krim*, 236
Golden Horde Khāns, 222–231
Gujarāt, Kings of, 312
Gumushtigīn, *Dānishmandid*, 156
Gun-Tīmūr, *Mongol*, 215
Gūrkān 'Alī, *Tīmūr Khān*, 135
Gurkhāns, 170, 293–4

Hadīya, *Zeyrid*, 25
Hansī Kings or Deogīr, 308
-Hādi, *'Abbāsid*, 12 [105
-Hādī Mohammad, *Imāms of Ṣan'a*,
-Hādī -Mujīd, *Imāms of Ṣan'a*, 103
-Hādī Najm-al-dīn Yaḥyā, *Rassid Imām*, 102

-Hādī Yaḥyā, *Rassid*, 91, 102
-Hāfiẓ Abū-l-Maymūn ʿAbd-al-Majīd, *Fāṭimid*, 71
Hāfiẓ, *Kart*, 252
Hafṣ, Abū, *Almohad*, 47
Hafṣ, Abū-, *Hafṣid*, 50
Hafṣids, 49, 50; 46, 55
Ḥājjāj, *Kutlugh Khān*, 179
Ḥājjī, *Mamlūks*, 81
Ḥājjī Giray, *Krim*, 235, 237
Ḥājjī Muḥammad, *Khiva*, 279
-Ḥākim I, *Omayyads of Cordova*, 21
-Ḥākim Abū -ʿAlī -Manṣūr, *Fāṭimid*, 71
Ḥākim Giray, *Krim*, 237
-Ḥamīd, *Hamdānid* (Yaman), 95
Hamdānids, 111-113
Hamdānids of the Yaman, 95
Hamīd Amīrs, 184-5
Hammād, *Hammādid*, 40
Hammādids, 39, 40; 43, 46
Hammū, Abū-, *Ziyānids*, 51
Hammūmids, 23, 24, 25; 21
Haman, *Ak-Koyunlī*, 254
Hārūn al-Rashīd, *Abbāsid*, 12, 36
Hārūn, *Ilak Khāns*, 135
Hārūn, *Tūlūnid*, 68
-Ḥasan, *ʿAlīds*, 127, 129
Hasan, Uzun, *Ak-Koyunlī*, 253-5
Hasan Gāngū, *Bahmanid*, 316-8
Hasan Rukn-al-dawla, *Buwayhid*, 142; 139
Hasan Kūchak Chūpānī, 219, 220
Hasan, *Golden Horde*, 230
-Ḥasan, *Ḥafṣid*, 50
Ḥasan Buzurg, *Jalayr*, 248; 219, 220, 246
-Ḥasan, *Idrīsid*, 35
Ḥasan Tigīn, *Ilak Khān*, 135
-Ḥasan Alā -ʿAlī, *Marʿashid*, 116
Ḥasan Kulī, *Khiva*, 278
Ḥasan ʿAlī, *Kara-Koyunlī*, 253
-Ḥasan Abū-Hāshim, *Rassid*, 102
-Ḥasan Nāṣir -al- dawla, *Ḥamdānid*, 112
Ḥasan -Mustanṣir, *Ḥammādid*, 23
-Ḥasan -Dāmghānī, *Sarbadārid*, 251
-Ḥasan, *Zayyānid*, 49
Ḥasan, Abū-l-, *Ishākīdid*, 69
Ḥasanī Sharīfs, 61
Ḥasankwayyids, 138
Ḥātim, *Hamdānids* (Yaman), 95
Ḥaydar -Kazzāb, *Sarbadārid*, 251
Ḥaydar Tora, *Mangit*, 277
Ḥaydar, *Safavid*, 246
Ḥazam, Abū-l-, *Jahwarid*, 25
Hazārasps, 174, 175
Ḥasan, *Fīlālī Sharīf*, 61
Himyar, Abū-Sabā, *Sulayḥid*, 94
Hishām, *Fīlālī Sharīf*, 61
Hishām, *Hamdānid* (Yaman), 95
Hishām, *Omayyad*, 9; 19
Hishām, *Omayyads of Cordova*, 21
Hoshing Khāns, Turkistān, 154-5
Hosho, Golden, 222-231
Ḥosayn Shāh, *Bengal*, 308
Ḥosayn Jahān-sūz, *Ghūrid*, 292
-Ḥosayn, *Hamdānid*, 112
Ḥosayn, *Hazārasp*, 176 [253
Ḥosayn, *Jalayr*, 248; 219, 246,
Ḥosayn Shāh, *Jaunpūr*, 309
Ḥosayn, *Mangit*, 277
-Ḥusayn, *Rassid*, 99
Ḥosayn, *Safavid*, 259, 267
Hosayn, *Seljuk of Kirmān*, 155
-Ḥosayn (*Vezir*), *Ziyādid*, 91
Hosains, 26; 43 [317
Hūlāgū, *Il-Khān of Persia*, 220;
Humāyūn Alā-al-dīn, *Bahmanid*, 318
Homāyūn Nāṣir-al-dīn, *Mogul*, 328; 257, 298, 305, 323
Ḥusām-al-dawla -Muḳallad, *ʿOkaylid*, 117
Ḥusām-al-dīn Timurtāsh, *Ortokid*, 168
Ḥusām - al - dīn Yūlak-Arslān, *Ortokid*, 168
Hūshang Shams-al-dīn, *Hazārasp*, 175
Hūshang Alp Khān, *Malwa*, 311

Ismaʿil, *Golden Horde*, 231
Ibrāhīm, *Aghlabids*, 57
Ibrāhīm, *Almoravid*, 43
Ibrāhīm Zahīr-al-dīn, *Armenia*, 179
Ibrāhīm, *Bukhārā*, 239
Ibrāhīm, *Dhulkādir*, 156
Ibrāhīm Shāh, *Dehlī*, 299, 300, 322
Ibrāhīm, *Ghaznavid*, 289
Ibrāhīm I Abū-Ishāk, *Hafsid*, 60
Ibrāhīm II-Mustanṣir, *Hafsid*, 60
Ibrāhīm Abū-Tāhir, *Hamdānid*, 112
Ibrāhīm, *Hamdānid*, 111
Ibrāhīm Tuġhāj, *Ilak Khān*, 135
Ibrāhīm Shāh Sharkī, Shams-al-dīn, *Jaunpūr*, 309
Ibrāhīm, *Khedive*, 85; 67
Ibrāhīm Abū-Sālim, *Marīnid*, 57
Ibrāhīm, *Mogul*, 328
Ibrāhīm, *ʿOkaylid*, 117
Ibrāhīm, *Ommeyad*, 9
Ibrāhīm, *Ortukid*, 168
Ibrāhīm, *Othmānlis*, 195
Ibrāhīm, *Saʿdid*, 132
Ibrāhīm, *Timurid*, 175
Ibrāhīm, *Yaʿfurid*, 91
Ibrāhīm, *Zeyānid*, 91
Idiku, 229
Idrīs-Mūʾmūn, *Almohad*, 47
Idrīs, *Hammūdids*, 23
Idrīs, *Idrīsids*, 35; 6
Idrīsīs, 35; 6, 36, 39, 70
ʿIkbāl-al-dawla, *Hudid*, 26
Ikhshīdīs, 69; 6, 67, 112
Ikhtiyār-al-dīn Ghāzī, *Bengal*, 307
Ikhtiyār-al-dīn Yūsbak, *Bengal*, 300
Ilak Khāns of Turkistān (Hotien), 134, 135; 132, 280
Il-Arslān, *Khwārizm Shāh*, 177
Ilbān, *Golden Horde*, 230
Ilbars, *Khān*, 278, 279
Ilchikdāy, *Chagatāy*, 242
Ildigiz Shams-al-dīn, *Atābeg of Ādharbijān*, 171
Il-Ghāzī, *Ortukids*, 166–8
Il-Khāns of Persia, 217–221; 165, 172, 205, 330
Iltamar, *Khān*, 279
Iltutmish, *Dehlī*, 299
Ilyās Shāh, *Bengal*, 307
ʿImād-al-dawla Abū-l-Hasan ʿAlī, *Buwayhid*, 141; 136, 139
ʿImād-al-dawla, *Hūdid*, 26
ʿImād-al-dawla, *Ilak Khān*, 135
ʿImād-al-dīn ʿOthmān, *Ayyūbid*, 77
ʿImād-al-dīn Abū-Kālinjār-Marzubān, *Buwayhid*, 141
ʿImād-al-dīn ʿAlī Alpī-ʿĀdil, *Ortukid*, 168
ʿImād-al-dīn Kāwurd, *Seljūk of Kirmān*, 153
ʿImād-al-dīn Shāhānshāh, *Zangid*, 163
ʿImād-al-dīn Zangī, *Zangids*, 163
ʿImād-al-mulk, *Berār*, 318
ʿImān Sanāna, 329; 318
Imām Kulī, *Khān*, 275
Imāms, the Twelve, and the Seven, 72, 256
Imāms of Saʿda and San'a, 102–3
ʿImrān, *Zayyʿid*, 97
Ināl, *Mamlūk*, 83
Ināyat Giray, *Krim*, 236
Injū, 245, 249
Irān Shāh, *Seljūk of Kirmān*, 153
ʿĪsā, *Ayyūbid*, 78
ʿĪsā, *Fāṭimid*, 71
ʿĪsā, *Ortukid*, 168
Isfandiyār, *Khān*, 279
Isfandiyār, *Sarbadārid*, 251
Ishāk, *Almoravid*, 43
Ishāk, *Ghaznavid*, 289; 286
Ishāk Akā Niyāz, *Khān*, 279
Ishāk Abū-l-Jaysh, *Zeyānid*, 91
Ishāk, Abū-, Injū, 245, 249
Iskandar, *Kara-Koyunlī*, 233
Iskandar, *Shaibānid*, 271
Islām Giray, *Krim*, 236
Islām Shāh, *Dehlī*, 300
Ismāʿīl, *Ayyūbids*, 78, 79, 93

Ismā'īl, *Būrid*, 161
Ismā'īl -Ẓāfir, *Dhū-l-Nūnid*, 25
Ismā'īl, *Fāṭimids*, 71
Ismā'īl -Samānī, *Filak Sharīf*, 61
Ismā'īl, *Ghaznawid*, 289
Ismā'īl, *Khaldjīs*, 84, 85
Ismā'īl -Ṣāliḥ, *Mamlūk*, 81
Ismā'īl, *Nașrids*, 28
Ismā'īl, *Rasūlids*, 99
Ismā'īl, *Saffarids*, 239; 245, 254–6
Ismā'īl, *Sāmānid*, 132
Isrā'īl -Ṣāliḥ, *Zangid*, 163
Ismā'īl Kuṭb-al-dīn, 170
'Iwaz, *Bengal*, 306
'Izz-al-dawla Bakhtiyār, *Buwayhid*, 141
'Izz-al-dawla 'Abd-al-Rashīd, *Ghaznawid*, 289
'Izz-al-dīn, *Seljūks of Rūm*, 155
'Izz-al-dīn A'ẓam-al-mulk, *Bengal*, 306
'Izz-al-dīn Aybak, *Mamlūk*, 81
'Izz-al-dīn Balban, *Armenia*, 170
'Izz-al-dīn Balban, *Bengal*, 306
'Izz-al-dīn Mas'ūd, *Zangids*, 163
'Izz-al-dīn Shīrān, *Bengal*, 306
'Izz-al-dīn Ṭughril Ṭughān Khān, *Bengal*, 306

Jabak Birdī, *Golden Horde*, 232
Ja'far, *Zand*, 269
Jahāndār, *Mogul*, 328
Jahāngīr, *Alī-Kuyunlū*, 254
Jahāngīr Nūr-al-dīn, *Mogul*, 328
Jahān-Shāh, *Karā-Koyunlū*, 253
Jahān-sūz, *Ghūrid*, 292
Jahān-Tīmūr, *Ṭī-Khān*, 229
Jahwar Abū-l-Ḥasan, 25
Jahwarids, 25
Jakmak, *Mamlūk*, 83
Jalāl-al-dawla, *Buwayhid*, 141
Jalāl-al-dawla, *Ghaznawid*, 289
Jalāl-al-dawla Nasr, *Marwānid*, 115
Jalāl-al-dīn Fath Shāh, *Bengal*, 307
Jalāl-al-dīn Mas'ūd Malik Jānī, *Bengal*, 306
Jalāl-al-dīn Mohammad Shāh, *Bengal*, 307
Jalāl-al-dīn Fīrūz, *Dehlī*, 299
Jalāl-al-dīn, *Golden Horde*, 232
Jalāl-al-dīn, *Ilak Khān*, 135
Jalāl-al-dīn Mohammad Shāh, *Kutlugh Khān*, 179
Jalāl-al-dīn Suyurghātmish, *Kutlugh Khān*, 179
Jalāl-al-dīn Mangbarnī, *Khwārizm Shāh*, 177; 208, 295
Jalāl-al-dīn, *see* Akbar, *Mogul*
Jalāl-al-dīn Shāh Shujā', *Muẓaffarid*, 250
Jalāl-al-dīn Malik Shāh, *Seljūk*, 153; 151, 160, 162, 176
Jalayrs, 246–248; 219, 229
Jamāl-al-dawla Farrukhzād, *Ghaznawid*, 289
Jamāl-al-dīn Moham., *Būrid*, 161
Jān, 273–4
Jānbalāt, *Mamlūk*, 83
Jānī, *Bengal*, 306
Jānī-Beg Maḥmūd, *Golden Horde*, 230; 224
Jānī-Beg Girāy, *Krim*, 238
Jānids (Astrakhān), 274
Jāshankir, *Mamlūk*, 81
Jausrūq, Kings of, 309
Jawhar, 70
Jaysh Abū-l-'Asākir, *Fāṭimid*, 68
Jaysh, Abū-l-, *Ziyādid*, 91
Jayyāsh, *Najāḥid*, 92
Jingishay, *Chagatāy*, 242
Jivaghatu, *Mongol*, 215
John, St., Knights of, 66, 188
Jūjī, *Mongol*, 203, 222 ff.
Juvaynnard 'Alī, *Shaybānid*, 272

Kāʾūs Shams-al-ma'ālī, *Ziyārid*, 137
-Kādī, *'Āmirid*, 26
-Kādir, *'Abbāsid*, 12
-Kādir, *'Āmirid*, 26
-Kādir, *Dhū-l-Nūnid*, 25
Kadr Khān, *Bengal*, 306

Kādr Khān, *Ilak Khāns*, 135
Kāfūr Abū-l-Misk, *Ikhshīdīd*, 69
-Kāhir, *'Abbāsid*, 12
-Kāhir, *Ikhshīdid*, 69
-Kā'im, *'Abbāsid*, 12
-Kā'im Abū-l-Kāsim Mohammad, *Fātimid*, 71
Kā'imāz, 165
Kaip, *Khāns*, 279
Kāit-Bey, *Mamlūk*, 83
Kāzāns (Shāhs or Persia), 260
KAKWAYHIDS, 145
Kal, *Khāns*, 278
Kalā'ūn, *Mamlūk*, 81
Kallar-Allāh Shāh, *Bahmanid*, 318
Kālinjār, Abū-, *Buyeyhids*, 143
Kām-Bakhsh, *Moyul*, 328
Kamāl-al-dawla Shīrzāh, *Ghaznavid*, 289
Kamar-al-dīn Tamar, *Bengal*,
-Kāmil Mohammad, *Ayyūbid*, 77, 78; 107
-Kāmil Sayf-al-dīn-Shā'bān, *Mamlūk*, 81
Kāmil, Abū-, *Ghaylān*, 117; *Mazyadid*, 119; *Mirdāsid*, 115
Kāmrān, *Afghān*, 334
Kānsūh, *Mamlūks*, 83
Kaplan Girāy, *Krim*, 237
Karā-Arslān, *Ortokid*, 168
Karā-Arslān, *Seljūk of Kirmān*, 153
Karā-dawlat Girāy, *Krim*, 237
Karā-Hūlāgū, *Chagatāy*, 242
KARA-KUYUNLI (*Turkomans of the Black Sheep*), 253; 107
Karā-Mohammad, *K-Koyunlī*, 253
Karā-Yūluk, *Ak-Koyunlī*, 254
Karā-Yūsuf, *K-Koyunlī*, 253; 247
KARAMAN AMĪRS, 184–5
Karārānī Sulaymān, *Bengal*, 308
KARASI AMĪRS, 184–5
Karbukā, 117
Karīm Shāh, *Golden Horde*, 232
Karīm Khān, *Zand*, 260
KARMATHIANS, 99, 91, 126
KARMIYĀN AMĪRS, 184–5
KART MALIKS, 252; 245, 294
KASHMĪR, KINGS OF, 304, 311n
-Kāsim, *Dulafid*, 125
-Kāsim -Ma mūn, *Hammūdid*, 21-3
-Kāsim -Wāthik, *Hammūdid*, 23
Kāsim, *Kazimof*, 234
-Kāsim -Mansūr, *Sinā'ī*, 103
-Kāsim -Mansūr, *Rassid*, 102
-Kāsim -Mukhtār, *Rassid*, 102
Kāsim -Rassī Tarjumān-al-dīn, *Rassid Imām*, 102
Kāsim, Abū-l-, *Ikhshīdid*, 69
Kāsim, *Moyul*, 329
-Kayyāb, *Sarbadārid*, 251
Kawām-al-dawla, *Buwayhid*, 141
Kawām-al-dawla Karbukā, 117
Kāwurd Beg 'Imād-al-dīn Karā-Arslān, *Seljūk of Kirmān*, 153
Kayātū, *Moyul*, 309, 312
Kay-Kāwus, *Bengal*, 306
Kay-Kāwus 'Izz-al-dīn, *Seljūks of Rūm*, 155
Kay-Khusrū Ghiyāth-al-dīn, *Seljūks of Rūm*, 155
Kay-Kubād, *Delhi*, 299
Kay-Kubād 'Alā-al-dīn, *Seljūks of Rūm*, 155
Kazan, *Chagatāy*, 242
Khāghān, *Golden Horde*, 230
Khālid, Abū-l-Bakā, *Hafsūds*, 50
KHALĪFA, 3; *see* CALIPHS
Khalīl, *Al-Kayunlī*, 254
Khalīl, *Mamlūk*, 81
Khalīl, *Timūrid*, 268
Khaljī, Mohammad Bakhtiyār, *Bengal*, 306
KHALJĪS, SULTĀNS OF DELHI, 299, 302; 296–7
KHALJĪS, KINGS OF MĀLWA, 311
KHĀNDESH, KINGS OF, 315
Khayr-al-dīn Barbarossa, 49, 55, 189
KHEDIVES, 84, 85
Khidr Khān, *Delhi*, 300
Khidr, *Golden Horde*, 230
Khidr Khān, *Ilak Khān*, 135
KHIVA, KHĀNS OF, 278; 239

Khokand, Khāns of, 280
Khubilāy, *Mongol*, 215; 211, 212
Khudābanda Muḥammad, *Ṣafawid*, 253
Khudāyār, *Khōkand*, 280
Khumārawayh, *Ṭūlūnid*, 68
Khūshkadam, *Mamlūk*, 83
Khusrū, *Ilkhānid*, 141
Khusrū Fīrūz Abū-Naṣr -Raḥīm, *Ilkhānid*, 141
Khusrū Malik, *Ghaznawid*, 289
Khusrū Shāh, *Dihlī*, 299
Khusrū Shāh, *Ghaznawid*, 289
Khusrū Sulṭān, *Shaybānid*, 272
Khwāja-Jahān, *Jaunpūr*, 309
Kiwākiyya Sultāns, 176-178; 171-2, 204, 217, 224-6
Kibak, *Chagatāy*, 242
Kibak, *Golden Horde*, 232
Kibtī Beg, *Golden Horde*, 230
Kilij-Arslān, *Seljūks of -Rūm*, 155
Kilij Tafghāj Khān, *Ilak*, 135
Kirwāsh, *'Ukaylid*, 117
Kirmān Shāh, *Seljūk*, 153
Kitbughā, *Mamlūk*, 81
Kizil-Arslān 'Uthmān, *Atābeg of Adharbījān*, 171
Kōkaktānjī, *Shaybānid*, 271
Koirijak, *Golden Horde*, 232
Kuchlu Khāns, 233-236
Krim Girāy, *Krim*, 237
Kuhēcha, Nāṣir-al-dīn, 224-5
Kuhla Khān, 212
Kūkū, *Golden Horde*, 231
Kōchak Muḥammad, *Golden Horde*, 232; 230
Kulang, *Mongol*, 216
Kūjūk, *Mamlūk*, 84
Kūkburī Muẓaffar-al-dīn, *Begtigīnid*, 165
Kull, *Chagatāy*, 242; *Jānids*, 276; *Khīva*, 278
Kūlnā, *Golden Horde*, 229
Kuluk, *Mongol*, 216
Kunjuk Khān, *Chagatāy*, 242
Kunlā, 74, 138
Kushala, *Mongol*, 216
Kuth al-dawla Aḥmad *Ilak*, 135
Quṭb-al-dīn Aylak, *Dihlī*, 290; 294-5
Quṭb-al-dīn Mubārak, *Dihlī*, 299
Quṭb-al-dīn, *Ghūrid*, 313
Quṭb-al-dīn Muḥammad, *Khwārizm Shāh*, 177
Quṭb-al-dīn Muḥammad, *Kartīgh Khān*, 179
Quṭb-al-dīn Shāh-Jahān, *Kartīgh Khān*, 179
Quṭb-al-dīn Il-Ghāzī, *Artukid*, 168
Quṭb-al-dīn Sulaymān, *Artukid*, 168
Quṭb-al-dīn, *Seljūk of -Rūm*, 155
Quṭb-al-dīn Mawdūd, *Zangid*, 163
Quṭb-al-dīn Muḥammad *Zangid*, 163
Quṭb-al-dīn Ismā'īl, 179
Kuyu Sultāns, 321; 318
Kyzylcoun Khāns, 179, 180
Kaplugh Khātūn, 179
Kutlugh Khōja, *Golden Horde*, 230
Kutlugh Muḥammad, *Khīva*, 279
Kutuz, *Mamlūk*, 81
Kuyuk, *Mongol*, 215; 208-9

Lājīn, *Mamlūk*, 81
Lamtuna Berbers, 41, 42
-Layth, *Saffārid*, 129
Lingdan, *Mongol*, 216
Lōdīs, 300
Lu'lu Badr-al-dīn, *Zangid*, 162-3
Luṭf 'Alī, *Zand*, 260
Luṭf-Allāh *Safawid*, 251

Ma'add, *Fāṭimids*, 71
Maghrawa Berbers, 39
-Mahdī, *Abbāsid*, 12
-Mahdī Muḥammad, *Almohad*, 46
-Mahdī Abū-Muḥammad 'Ubayd-Allāh, *Fāṭimid*, 70, 71
-Mahdī, *Hammūdid*, 23, 25
-Mahdī, *Imāms of Ṣan'ā*, 103
-Mahdī, *Rassid Imāms*, 102
-Mahdī, *Muḥādid*, 98

-Mahdī, *Ommayad of Cordova*, 21
Mahmūd, 96
Mahmūd, *Afghān*, 334; 351
Mahmūd, *Afghān Shāh of Persia*, 339; 347
Mahmūd Shāh, *Bahmanids*, 318
Mahmūd, *Bengal*, 306
Mahmūd Shāh, *Bengal*, 307-8
Mahmūd Shihāb-al-dīn, *Bārid*, 161
Mahmūd Shāh, *Dehlī*, 299, 300
Mahmūd, *Ghaznavid*, 289; 286-8, 291
Mahmūd, *Ghūrid*, 294
Mahmūd, *Golden Horde*, 232
Mahmūd Shāh, *Gujarāt*, 313
Mahmūd, *Ilak Khān*, 155
Mahmūd Ghāzān, *Il-Khān*, 220
Mahmūd Shāh Injū, 245, 249
Mahmūd Shāh, *Jaunpūr*, 309
Mahmūd Sultān, *Khwārizm*, 177
Mahmūd Shāh Khaljī, *Mālwa*, 311
Mahmūd, *Marīnid*, 115
Mahmūd, *Mongol*, 210, 265
Mahmūd, *Muzaffarid*, 250
Mahmūd -Sālih, *Ortukid*, 168
Mahmūd, *'Othmānlis*, 195; 193
Mahmūd Mughīth-al-dīn, *Seljūk of -'Irāk*, 154; 167
Mahmūd Nāsir-al-dīn, *Seljūk*, 153
Mahmūd, *Tīmūrids*, 268
Mahmūd, *Zangids*, 153
Mahmūdak, *Kazan*, 234
Majd-al-dawla Abū-Tālib Rustam, *Buwayhid*, 142; 145 [168
Majd-al-dīn 'Isā -Zāhir, *Ortukid*,
-Majīd Muhammad, *Sa'īd*, 103
-Makkārī, *Almohad*, 47
Makhmūd Girāy, *Krim*, 237
Malik Rājā, *Khaldarīsh*, 315
Malik Shāh Jalāl-al-dīn, *Seljūk*, 145; 151, 160, 162, 176
Malik Shāh Mu'in-al-dīn, *Seljūk of -'Irāk*, 154
Malik Shāh, *Seljūks of -Rūm*, 155
Malla, *Khaldarīsh*, 280
Mālwa, Kings of, 310, 311
Mamlūk, 227
Mamlūk Sultans, 80-85; 77, 101, 217, 226
-Ma'mūn, *'Abbāsid*, 12, 123
-Ma'mūn, *Almohad*, 47
-Ma'mūn, *Dhū-l-Nūnid*, 25
-Ma'mūn, *Hammūdid*, 21, 25
Ma'n, *Maadīnid* (Yamanī), 95
Manchus, 244
Mandaghol, *Mongol*, 219
Mangburnī Jalāl-al-dīn, *Khwārizm Shāh*, 177; 298, 296
Mansūra, 277
Mangli Girāy, *Krim*, 236, 237
Mangū, *Mongol*, 215; 211
Mangū-Tīmūr, *Golden Horde*, 230; 233, 238-9
-Mansūr, *'Abbāsid*, 12
-Mansūr, *Amirid*, 26
-Mansūr, *Armenia*, 179
-Mansūr Muhammad, *Ayyūbid*, 77
-Mansūr Ismā'īl, *Fātimid*, 71
-Mansūr, *Fātimids*, 71
-Mansūr, *Hammūdid*, 40
-Mansūr, *Imāms of San'ā*, 103
-Mansūr 'Izz-al-dīn 'Abd-al-'Azīz, *Mamlūk*, 83
-Mansūr Sayf-al-dīn Abū-Bakr, *Mamlūk*, 81
-Mansūr 'Alā-al-dīn-'Alī, *Mamlūk*, 81
-Mansūr Nūr-al-dīn-'Alī, *Mamlūk*, 81
-Mansūr Sayf-al-dīn Kalā'ūn, *Mamlūk*, 81
-Mansūr Husām-al-dīn-Lājīn, *Mamlūk*, 81
-Mansūr Salāh-al-dīn-Muhammad, *Mamlūk*, 81
-Mansūr Fakhr-al-dīn 'Othmān, *Mamlūk*, 83
Mansūr, *Marwānid*, 118
Mansūr, Bahā-al-dawla Abū-Kāmil, *Marwānid*, 119
Mansūr Shāh, *Muzaffarid*, 250
-Mansūr, *Najāhid*, 92

-Manṣūr (Almanzor), 20
-Manṣūr Aḥmad, *Ortuḳid*, 168
-Manṣūr Ortuḳ-Arslān, *Ortuḳid*, 168
-Manṣūr ʿAbd-Allāh, *Rasūl*, 102
-Manṣūr ʿAbd-Allāh, *Rasūlid*, 99
-Manṣūr ʿOmar, *Rasūlid*, 99
Manṣūr, *Samanids*, 132
-Manṣūr Sabuk, *Subuktigīd*, 94
-Manṣūr Tāj-al-dīn ʿAbd-al-Wahhāb, *Yāfiʿid* (Yaman), 101
-Manṣūr, *Turbul*, 26
Manṣūr, *Zegrid*, 40
Manṣūr, *Zeyan'id*, 97
Manuchahr, *Ziyārid*, 137
Manūchihr, *Bengal*, 306
Manūchihr, *Ziyārid*, 136, 137
Mardīn, *Golden Horde*, 230
Marinids, 57–59; 47, 51
Marjān (*Vezīr*), *Zeyānid*, 91
Marwān, *Omayyads*, 9
Marwān, Abū-, *Hammi Sharīfs*, 61
Marwānids, 118
-Marzubān, *Bawandids*, 141
Masmuda Berbers, 42, 45
-Mas'ūd Yūsuf, *Ayyubid*, 98
Mas'ūd, *Bengal*, 306
Mas'ūd Shāh, *Dehli*, 299
Mas'ūd, *Ghaznawids*, 289
-Mas'ūd, *Rasūlid*, 99
Mas'ūd Wajīh-al-dīn, *Sarbadārid*, 261
Mas'ūd Ghiyāth-al-dīn, *Seljuk of -Irāḳ*, 154; 160; *of -Rum*, 156
Mas'ūd, *Zeyānid*, 103
Mas'ūd, Hasu, 97
Ma'sūm Shāh Murād, *Mangit*, 277
Matvadites, 119, 120
Miknasa Berbers, 39
Ming, 213
Mīrān Muḥammad Shāh Fārūḳī, *Gujerāt and Khandīsh*, 313, 315
Mirinides, 114, 115
Miṣr, Abū-l, Kāfūr, *Ikhshīdid*, 69
Mo'āwiya, *Omayyads*, 9; 3
Mōdūd, *Ghaznawid*, 289
Mōdūd, *Ortuḳid*, 168
Mōdūd, *Zengid*, 163
Mogul Emperors, 329; 298, 305, 313, 315, 322–7
Mohammad, the Prophet, 3, 188
Mohammad, *ʿAbbādids*, 25
Mohammad, Dost, *Afghān*, 331–4
Mohammad, *Aghlebids*, 37
Mohammad, *Ak-Koyunli*, 254
Mohammad, *ʿAlid*, 127
Mohammad b. Tūmart, *Almohad*, 45
Mohammad -Nāṣir, *Almohad*, 47
Mohammad -Mansūr, *Aroosia*, 170
Mohammad -Pahlawān Jahān, *Atābeg of Adherbijān*, 171
Mohammad, *Ayyūbids*, 77, 78
Mohammad Shāh, *Bahmanids*, 318
Mohammad Sūr, *Bengal*, 309
Mohammad, *Bīārid*, 161
Mohammad, *Ghaznīds*, 242
Mohammad Guhlakhtigīn, *Dāūdmandid*, 156 [316
Mohammad Shāh, *Dehli*, 299, 300, 316
Mohammad b. Tughlak, *Dehli*, 300; 297, 316
Mohammad, *Fātimid*, 71
Mohammad, *Hafsid Sharīfs*, 61
Mohammad, *Ghaznawid*, 289
Mohammad b. Sām, *Ghōrid*, 292–4
Mohammad Bōlāk, *Gold Horde*, 230
Mohammad Karīm, *Gujerāt*, 313
Mohammad Kūchuk, *Golden Horde*, 232; 229
Mohammad, *Hafsids*, 56
Mohammad, *Hamdānid*, 111
Mohammad -Mahdī, *Hammādids*, 23, 25 [23
Mohammad -Mustanṣir, *Hammādid*,
Mohammad, *Hassani Sharīfs*, 61
Mohammad, *Idrīsid*, 34
Mohammad, *Ikhshīdid*, 69
Mohammad, *Il-Khān*, 220
Mohammad Abū-l-Walīd, *Jahwarid*, 25
Mohammad Shāh, *Jonepūr*, 309
Mohammad, *Kājār*, 260; 258

Mohammad 'Alā-al-dawla Abū-Ja'far, *Kakuyahid*, 145
Mohammad Amin, *Kajar*, 234
Mohammad, Ulugh, *Kajar*, 234-5
Mohammad Mirān, *Khaldjīs*, 313, 315
Mohammad 'Ali, *Khedive*, 84, 85; 67 [279
Mohammad Rahim, *Khiva*, 276,
Mohammad 'Ali, *Khokand*, 280
Mohammad 'Omar, *Khokand*, 280
Mohammad 'Alā-al-dīn, *Khwārizm Sháhs*, 177; 176, 179
Mohammad Kutb-al-dīn, *Khwārizm Sháh*, 177
Mohammad Girāy, *Krim*, 226
Mohammad, *Kuhlegh Khāns*, 179
Mohammad Ghazni, *Mahmūd*, 311
Mohammad, *Mamlūks*, 81, 83
Mohammad, *Marinids*, 57-8
Mohammad, *Muzaffarid*, 119
Mohammad Akbar II, *Mogul*, 328
Mohammad Nāsir-al-dīn, *Mogul*, 328
Mohammad, *Muzaffarid*, 250; 249
Mohammad, *Nasrids*, 28
Mohammad, *'Okaylid*, 116
Mohammad, *Omayyad (Cordova)*, 21
Mohammad, *'Orfukid*, 168
Mohammad, *'Othmanlis*, 195; 185-7
Mohammad, *Rasulid*, 99
Mohammad, *Salgharids*, 173 [239
Mohammad Khudabanda, *Safavid*,
Mohammad Ghiyath-al-dīn, *Seljūk*, 153; 166
Mohammad Mughith-al-dīn, *Seljūks of Kirmān*, 153
Mohammad, *Seljūk of 'Irāk*, 154
Mohammad, *Shaybānid*, 271; 229
Mohammad Kāsim, *Sind*, 283
Mohammad, *Tāhirid*, 128
Mohammad, *Wa'tasids*, 58
Mohammad, *Ya'furids*, 91
Mohammad 'Ali, *Zand*, 260
Mohammad, *Ziyadid*, 163
Mohammad, *Zuyadid*, 91
Mohammad, *Zuray'ids*, 97
Mohammad, Abū-, *Khiva*, 279
Molon, *Mongol*, 215
Moscow, 199-242; 3, 7, 77, 155, 172, 174, 177, 179, 183, 296; *see* Muscovy
-Mu'ayyad Shihāb-al-dīn Ahmad, *Mamlūk*, 83
-Mu'ayyad Shaykh, *Mamlūk*, 83
-Mu'ayyad Najāh, *Najāhid*, 92
-Mu'ayyad, *Omayyad (Cordova)*, 21
-Mu'ayyad Dāwūd, *Rasūlid*, 99
-Mu'ayyad -Hirsyu, *Rasūlid*, 99
-Mu'ayyad Mohammad, *Sa'di*, 103
-Mu'ayyad, *Serbadārid*, 251
Mu'ayyid-al-dawla Abū-Mansūr, *Buwaykid*, 142
-Mu'azzam Sharaf-al-dīn 'Isā, *Ayyūbid*, 78
-Mu'azzam Tūrān-Shāh, *Ayyūbid*, 77, 78, 96
Mubārak Khōja, *Golden Horde*, 231
Mubārak Mirza, *Khaldjīs*, 315
Mubārak Shāh, *Bengal*, 307
Mubārak Shāh, *Ghuzzāly*, 242
Mubārak Shāh, *Dehli*, 299, 300
Mubārak Shāh, *Jaunpūr*, 309
Mubāriz-al-dīn, *Muzaffarid*, 250
-Mufaddal Mohammad, *Rasūlid*, 99
Muflih, 126
Muhammad, *see* Mohammad
Mughith-al-dīn, *Seljūk of 'Irāk*, 154; *of Kirmān*, 153 [166
Mughith-al-dīn Tughril, *Bengal*,
Muhassin, *Hammādid*, 40
-Muhtadī, *'Abbāsid*, 12
Muhyī-al-dīn, *Seljūk Kirmān*, 153
Mu'in-al-dawla Sakmān, *Orfukid*, 168; 166
Mu'in-al-dīn, *Seljūk of 'Irāk*, 154
-Mu'izz Abū-Tamīm Ma'add, *Fātimid*, 71
-Mu'izz 'Izz-al-dīn Aybak, *Mamlūk*, 81
Mu'izz, *Zayyānid*, 40
Mu'izz-al-dawla Khusrū Shāh, *Ghaznawid*, 289

Mu'izz-al-dawla Abū-'Ulwān Tamāl, *Mirdāsid*, 115
Mu'izz-al-dawla Abu-l-Ḥasayn Aḥmad, *Buwayhid*, 141; 139-40
Mu'izz-al-dīn Ismā'īl, *Ayyubid*, 98
Mu'izz-al-dīn Bahrām, *Dahl*, 299
Mu'izz-al-dīn K. Kubād, *Dahl*, 299
Mu'izz-al-dīn b. Sām, *Ghūrid*, 294-4
Mu'izz-al-dīn, *Kart*, 252
Mu'izz-al-dīn Jahāndār, *Mogul*, 328
Mu'izz-al-dīn Sinjar, *Seljūk*, 153; 152, 292
Mu'izz-al-dīn Maḥmūd, *Zangid*, 163
Mu'izz-al-dīn Sinjār Shāh, *Zangid*, 163
Mujāhid Shāh, *Bahmanid*, 318
-Mujāhid, *Dauis*, 26
-Mujāhid 'Alī, *Rasūlid*, 99
-Mujāhid Shams-al-dīn 'Alī, *Tāhirid* (Yaman), 191
Mujāhid-al-dīn 'Alī Zayn-al-'Ābidīn, *Muẓaffarid*, 250
Mujāhid-al-dīn Kā'imāz, 165
Mujīr-al-dīn Abak, *Būrid*, 161
-Mukallad, *Okaylid*, 117
-Mukarram Aḥmad, *Sulaghid*, 94
-Muktafī, *'Abbāsid*, 12
-Muktadir, *'Abbāsid*, 12
-Muktadir, *Hūdid*, 26
-Muktafī, *'Abbāsid*, 12
-Muktafī, *'Abbāsid*, 12
Mumahhid-al-dawla Abū-Manṣūr, *Marwānid*, 118
-Mundhir, *Omayyad* (*Cordova*), 21
Mundhir, *Tujībids*, 26
Muntafiḳ, Banū-, 116, 119
-Muntaṣir, *'Abbāsid*, 12
-Muntaṣir, *Marīnid*, 58
-Muntaṣir Dāwūd, *Rasūlid*, 102
Murādiyya, 41-3; 26, 27, 39, 45
Murād, *Āl-Kuyunlū*, 254
Murād, *Khāns of Khalkhāl*, 286
Murād (Amurath), *'Othmānlīs*, 195; 186, 187, 192, 256
Murād-Bakhsh, *Mogul*, 328
Murād Girāy, *Krim*, 237
Murād Shāh Mu'izzī, *Mangit*, 277
Murīd Khōja, *Golden Horde*, 230
Murtaḍā, *Golden Horde*, 232
-Murtaḍā, *Omayyad of Cordova*, 21
-Murtaḍā Muḥammad, *Rasūlid*, 102
Mūsā, *Ayyūbids*, 77, 78
Mūsā, *Ilak Khān*, 125
Mūsā, *Il-Khān of Persia*, 220
Mūsā, *Marīnid*, 58
Mūsā Abū-Ḥammū, *Zayānids*, 61
Musharrif-al-dawla, *Buwayhid*, 141
Muslim, *'Okaylid*, 117
-Mustaḍī, *'Abbāsid*, 13
Mustafā, *'Othmānlīs*, 195
-Musta'īn, *'Abbāsid*, 12
-Musta'īn, *'Abbāsid of Egypt*, 53
-Musta'īn, *Hūdids*, 26
-Musta'īn, *Omayyad* (*Cordova*), 21
-Mustakfī, *'Abbāsid*, 12
-Mustakfī, *Omayyad of Cordova*, 21
-Musta'lī, Abū-l-Ḳāsim Aḥmad, *Fāṭimid*, 71
-Musta'lī, *Hammūdid*, 23
-Mustanjid, *'Abbāsid*, 13, 110
-Mustanṣir, *'Abbāsid*, 13
-Mustanṣir, *Almohad*, 47
-Mustanṣir Abū-Tamīm Ma'add, *Fāṭimid*, 71
-Mustanṣir, *Hafṣids*, 50
-Mustanṣir, *Hammūdid*, 23
-Mustanṣir, *Marīnid*, 58
-Mustanṣir, *Omayyad* (*Cordova*), 21
-Mustarshid, *'Abbāsid*, 12
-Musta'ṣim, *'Abbāsid*, 13
-Mustaẓhir, *'Abbāsid*, 12
-Mustaẓhir, *Omayyad* (*Cordova*), 21
-Musta'yyad, *Hammūdid*, 23
-Mu'tadd, *Omayyad of Cordova*, 21
-Mu'taḍid, *'Abbāsid*, 25
-Mu'taḍid, *'Abbāsid*, 12, 111
-Mu'talī, *Hammūdid*, 21, 23
-Mu'taman, *Hūdid*, 26
-Mutamassik, *Naṣrid*, 28
-Mu'tamid, *'Abbādid*, 25

-Mu'tamid, *'Abbāsid*, 12, 129
Mu'tamid-al-dawla Kirwāsh, *'Oḳaylid*, 117
-Mu'taṣim, *'Abbāsid*, 12
-Mu'taṣim, *Almohad*, 47
-Mutawakkil, *'Abbāsid*, 12
-Mutawakkil, *Imāms of San'a*, 103
-Mutawakkil, *Marīnid*, 58
-Mutawakkil, *Rasūl Imāms*, 102
-Mu'tazz, *'Abbāsid*, 12
-Muṭī', *'Abbāsid*, 12
-Muṭṭaḳī, *'Abbāsid*, 12
-Muwaffaḳ, *'Abbāsid*, 129
-Muwaffaḳ, *Hammūdid*, 23
Muwaḥḥids, 45–7; 27, 39, 43, 49–.
-Muẓaffar, *'Āmirid*, 26
-Muẓaffar Ghāzī, *Ayyūbid*, 78
-Muẓaffar 'Omar, *Ayyūbid*, 79, 165
-Muẓaffar Sulaymān, *Ayyūbid*, 98
Muẓaffar Shāh, *Bengal*, 308
Muẓaffar Shāh, *Gujarāt*, 313
Muẓaffar Aḥmad, *Mamlūk*, 83
-Muẓaffar Rukn-al-dīn Baybars -Jāshankīr, *Mamlūk*, 81
-Muẓaffar Sayf-al-dīn-Ḥājjī, *Mamlūk*, 81
-Muẓaffar Sayf-al-dīn Ḳuṭuz, *Mamlūk*, 81
-Muẓaffar Dāwūd, *Ortoḳid*, 168
-Muẓaffar Yūsuf, *Rasūlid*, 99
-Muẓaffar, *Tughluḳ*, 26
Muẓaffar-al-dīn Üzbeg, *Atābeg of Adharbāyjān*, 171
Muẓaffar-al-dīn Mūsā, *Ayyūbid*, 78
Muẓaffar-al-dīn Kökburī, *Begtigīnid*, 165
Muẓaffar-al-dīn, *Mangit*, 277
Muẓaffarids, 249–50; 179, 219, 245

Nāṣir, *Afḍalid*, 259; 257–8, 278, 328, 330
Nādir Muḥammad, *Jānid*, 275
Naffe, 91
Najāḥ, 90, 92
Nāṣiriya, 92, 93
Najm-al-dīn, *Ayyūbids*, 77, 78
Najm-al-dīn Alpī, *Ortoḳid*, 168
Najm-al-dīn Ghāzī I -Sa'īd, *Ortoḳid*, 168
Najm-al-dīn Il-Ghāzī, *Ortoḳid*, 166–8
Najm, Abū-l, Badr, *Hasanwayhid*, 138
Narbuta, *Khoḳand*, 280
-Nāṣir, *'Abbāsid*, 13; 7
-Nāṣir Ḥasan, *'Alid*, 127
-Nāṣir, *Almohad*, 47
-Nāṣir Ayyūb, *Ayyūbid*, 98
-Nāṣir Ṣalāḥ-al-dīn Dāwūd, *Ayyūbid*, 78
-Nāṣir Ṣalāḥ-al-dīn, 77; *see* Ṣāladin
-Nāṣir, *Hammādid*, 40
-Nāṣir, *Hammūdid*, 21, 23
-Nāṣir, *Omayyad of Cordova*, 21
-Nāṣir Aḥmad, *Mawlāy*, 81
-Nāṣir Faraj, *Mamlūk*, 83
-Nāṣir Ḥasan, *Mamlūk*, 81
-Nāṣir Muḥammad, *Mamlūks*, 81–3
-Nāṣir, *Naṣrid*, 28
-Nāṣir Aḥmad, *Rasūl Imām*, 102
-Nāṣir-Duylamī, *Rasūl*, 102
-Nāṣir Moḥammad, *Rasūl*, 102
-Nāṣir 'Abd-Allāh, *Rasūlid*, 99
-Nāṣir Aḥmad, *Rasūlid*, 99
-Nāṣir Muḥammad, *Sa'd*, 103
Nāṣir-al-dawla Abū-Muḥammad -Ḥasan, *Ḥamdānid*, 111, 112
Nāṣir-al-dīn, *Armenia*, 170
Nāṣir-al-dīn, *Bengal*, 306
Nāṣir-al-dīn, *Kāshgar*, 260
Nāṣir-al-dīn, *Khaljīd*, 289
Nāṣir-al-dīn Badr, *Hasanwayhid*, 138
Nāṣir-al-dīn Bughrā, *Bengal*, 300
Nāṣir-al-dīn Humāyūn, *Mogul*, 329
Nāṣir-al-dīn Khusrū, *Delhī*, 299
Nāṣir-al-dīn, Kubācha, *Sind*, 294–5
Nāṣir-al-dīn Maḥmūd, *Bengal*, 307–8

Nāṣir-al-dīn Maḥmūd Shāh, *Dehlī*, 299
Nāṣir-al-dīn Maḥmūd, *Ortuḳid*, 168
Nāṣir-al-dīn Maḥmūd, *Seljūḳ*, 153
Nāṣir-al-dīn Maḥmūd, *Zengid*, 163
Nāṣir-al-dīn Moḥammad, *Mogul*, 328
Nāṣir-al-dīn Naṣrat, *Bengal*, 308
Nāṣir-al-dīn Ortuḳ-Arslān-Manṣūr *Ortuḳid*, 168
Nāṣir-dīn-Allāh Mas'ūd, *Ghazna-wid*, 289
Nāṣir Khān Maḥmūd, *Gujerāt*, 313
Nāṣir Khān, *Khāndēsh*, 315
Nāṣir Shāh, *Mālwa*, 311
Naṣr, *Ilak Khāns*, 135
Naṣr, *Marwānid*, 118
Naṣr, *Mirdāsids*, 115
Naṣr, Abū-l-Juyūsh, *Naṣrid*, 28
Naṣr, *Sāmānids*, 132
Naṣr, Abū-, *Marwānid*, 118
Naṣr-al-dawla Abū Naṣr Aḥmad, *Marwānid*, 118
Naṣr-Allāh, *Mangit*, 277
Naṣrat Shāh, *Bengal*, 308
Naṣrāt Shāh, *Dehlī*, 300
Naṣrids, 27-29; 46
Naẓār, *Fāṭimid*, 71
Nikpāy, *Chagatāy*, 242
Nikū-siyar, *Mogul*, 328 [118
Niẓām-al-dawla Naṣr, *Marwānid*,
Niẓām-al-mulk, 318
Niẓām Shāh, *Bahmanid*, 318
Nizam Shahs, 329; 318
Normans, 36, 40, 41, 71, 75
Nouredin, 163
Nūḥ, *Sāmānids*, 132; 286
Nūr-al-dawla, *Ilak Khān*, 135
Nūr-al-dawla Dubays, *Mazyad*, 119
Nūr-dawlat, *Krim*, 230
Nūr-al-dīn 'Alī, *Ayyūbid*, 78
Nūr-al-dīn 'Alī, *Mamlūk*, 81
Nūr-al-dīn Arslān, *Zengids*, 163
Nūr-al-dīn Maḥmūd (Nouredin), *Zengid*, 163; 74-6
Nūr-al-dīn Moḥammad, *Ortuḳid*, 168
Nūr-al-Warī, *Hazāraspid*, 175
Nūshīrwān, *Il-Khānof Persia*, 226
Nūrūz Aḥmad, *Shaybānid*, 271
Nūrūz-Beg, *Golden Horde*, 230

'Obayd-Allāh, *Fāṭimid*, 70, 71
'Obayd-Allāh, *Jānids*, 275
'Obeyd-Allāh, *Shaybānid*, 271
Orchiali, *Corsair*, 66
Ogotāy, *Mogul*, 215; 172, 179, 205, 207-10, 241
'Oḳaylids, 116-117; 115
'Omar Abū-Ḥafṣ -Murtaḍā, *Almohad*, 47 [165
'Omar, Tuḳī-al-dīn, *Ayyūbid*, 79,
'Omar Shāh, *Dehlī*, 299
'Omar, *Dulafid*, 125
'Omar Abū-Ḥafṣ, *Hafṣids*, 59
'Omar, *Mangit*, 277
'Omar, *Omayyad*, 9
'Omar, *Orthodox Caliph*, 3, 9
'Omar, *Rasūlids*, 99
'Omar, *Zengid*, 163
'Omar, Abū-, *Marinid*, 57
Omayya, 3
Omayyad Caliphs, 3-6, 9, 10, 11, 67
Omayyads of Cordova, 19-22; 6
Orda, *Golden Horde*, 231
Orgāna Khātūn, *Chagatāy*, 242
Orkhān, *'Othmānlī*, 195
Orthodox Caliphs, 3, 9
Ortuḳ, 160, 166
Ortuḳ-Arslān, *Ortuḳid*, 168
Ortuḳids, 166-169
'Othmān -Kādī, *Amirid*, 26
'Othmān, *Atābeg Azerbijān*, 171
'Othmān -'Azīz, *Ayyūbid*, 77
'Othmān Abū-'Amr, *Hafṣid*, 59
'Othmān, *Mamlūk*, 83
'Othmān, *Marinids*, 57
'Othmān, *Orthodox Caliph*, 3, 9
'Othmān, *'Othmānlī*, 195
'Othmān, *Ziyānids*, 61

'Othmanli or Ottoman Sultans, 186–197; 4, 49, 55, 56, 67, 84, 101, 103, 108, 152, 183, 256, 266
Oways, *Jalayrs*, 246-8

-Pahlawan Jahan, *Atabeg of Ad-Arbijan*, 171
Persia, Shahs of, 258–62
Persians, 123, 245
Pir 'Ali, *Kurt*, 252
Pir Mohammad, *Shaybanids*, 271
Pirl, *Ghaznavids*,
Prithwi Raja, 293
Pulad, *Golden Horde*, 232
Pulad Khoja, *Golden Horde*, 230

Rabi', Abu-l-, *Marinid*, 57
-Radi, *'Abbasid*, 12
Raf'-al-darajat, *Mogul*, 328
Raf'-al-dawla Shah-Jahan II, *Mogul*, 328
-Rahim Khusrau Firuz, *Bawandid*, 141
Rahim, *Khalj'id*, 280
Rahim Kuli, *Khiva*, 279
Raja Kans, *Bengal*, 307
Rajipeka, *Mongol*, 215
-Rashid, *'Abbasid*, 12
-Rashid, *'Abbasid*, 12
-Rashid, *Almohad*, 47
-Rashid, *Fatimi Sharif*, 61
Rashid-al-dawla Mahmud, *Mirdasid*, 115
-Rashidun, *Khalifs*, 3
Rasulo Imams, 102
Rasulids 99–100; 77
Reyes de Taifas, 23–27; 20
Rhodes, Knights of, 56, 188
Riftya, *Dadi*, 209; 296
Ridwan, *Seljuk of Syria*, 154
Rintshinpal, *Mongol*, 215
Roger of Sicily, 40
Rukh, Shah, *Afshirid*, 259
Rukh, Shah, *Khalj'id*, 280
Rukh, Shah, *Timurid*, 267-8
Rukn-al-dawla Abu-'Ali Hasan, *Bawandid*, 142
Rukn-al-dawla Dawud, *Artukid*, 168
Rukn-al-din K-Kawus, *Bengal*, 306
Rukn-al-din Barbak, *Bengal*, 307
Rukn-al-din Firuz, *Dehli*, 299
Rukn-al-din Ibrahim, *Dehli*, 299
Rukn-al-din, *Turk Khan*, 135
Rukn-al-din, *Kurt*, 252
Rukn-al-din Khojat-al-Hakk, *Kutlugh Khan*, 179
Rukn-al-din Baybars, *Mamluk*, 81
Rukn-al-din Mahmud, *Artukid*, 168
Rukn-al-din Bargiyaruk, *Seljuk*, 153
Rukn-al-din Tughril Beg, *Seljuk*, 153; 145, 151, 172
Rukn-al-din Sultan Shah, *Seljuk of Kirman*, 153
Rukn-al-din, *Seljuks of Rum*, 155
Rushd (*vezir*), *Ziyadid*, 91
Rustam, *Al-Kuyunli*, 254
Rustam, *Bawandid*, 142

Sa'adat Giray, *Krim*, 236, 237
Saba, *Sulayhid*, 94
Saba, *Zuray'id*, 97
Sabaktigin, *Ghaznavid*, 289; 283-6
Sabik Abu-l-Fadl-il, *Mirdasid*, 115
Sa'd-Muzaffar, *Nayrid*, 28
Sa'd, *Salgharid*, 173; 172
Sa'd-al-dawla Abu-l-Ma'ali Sharif, *Hamdanid*, 112
Sa'da, Imams of, 102
Sadika Sayf-al-dawla, *Mazyadids*, 119
Sadik, *Zand*, 260
Safa Giray, *Krim*, 237
Safavids (Shahs of Persia), 259; 245, 254, 255-7, 268
-Saffah, *'Abbasid*, 12
Saffarids, 129, 130; 7, 284
Safi, *Seferid*, 259
Safwat-al-din, *Kutlugh Khan*, 179

-Saghīr, *Naṣrid*, 28
Sāḥib Girāy, *Krim*, 236, 237
-Sa'īd, *Almohad*, 47
Sa'īd, *Hamdānid*, 111, 112
Sa'īd, *Khedive*, 85
-Sa'īd Baraka Khān, *Mamlūk*, 81
-Sa'īd, *Marinids*, 57, 58
Sa'īd -Aḥwal, *Nejdīd*, 92
-Sa'īd Ghāzi, *Ortuḳid*, 168
Sa'īd Sulṭān, *Shaybānid*, 272
-Sa'īd Shaykh Wat'as, *Wat'asid*, 58
Sa'īd-al-dawla, *Hamdānid*, 112
Sa'īd, Abū-, *Ḥasanwayhid*, 175
Sa'īd, Abū-, *Il-Khāns of Persia*, 229; 218, 249, 251
Sa'īd, Abū-, *Marinid*, 58
Sa'īd, Abū-, *Shaybānid*, 271
Sa'īd, Abū-, *Timūrid*, 268
Saladin, 77; 46, 67, 71, 74-5, 165
Salāḥ-al-dīn Dāwūd, *Ayyūbid*, 78
Ṣalāḥ-al-dīn Yūsuf -Nāṣir, *Ayyūbid*, 77; *see* Saladin
Salāḥ-al-dīn Yūsuf, *Ayyūbid*, 78
Salāmat Girāy, *Krim*, 236-7
Salāmish, *Mamlūk*, 81
Salghar, 160, 172
Salghurids, 172, 173
-Ṣāliḥ Najm-al-dīn Ayyūb, *Ayyūbid*, 77, 78, 80
-Ṣāliḥ Ismā'īl, *Ayyūbid*, 78
-Ṣāliḥ Ḥajjī, *Mamlūk*, 81
-Ṣāliḥ Ismā'īl, *Mamlūk*, 81
-Ṣāliḥ Mohammad, *Mamlūk*, 83
-Ṣāliḥ Ṣāliḥ, *Mamlūk*, 81
Ṣāliḥ, *Mirdāsid*, 115
Ṣāliḥ, *Ortuḳids*, 168
-Ṣāliḥ, Ismā'īl, *Zengid*, 163
Sālim, Abū-, *Marinid*, 57
Samā-al-dawla Abū-l-Ḥasan, *Ḥasanwayhid*, 142
Sāmānids, 131-133; 7, 127, 129
-Samīn, *Fāṭimī Sharīf*, 61
Samṣām-al-dawla Abū-Kālinjār -Marzubān, *Ḥasanwayhid*, 141
Ṣamṣām-al-dawla, *Mirdāsid*, 115
Sanʿā, Imāms of, 163
Sanad-al-dawla, *Muzyadid*, 119
Sanhāja Berbers, 39
Saphadīn, 76-78
Sannanāzūs, 250; 219, 245
Sartak, *Golden Horde*, 230
Ṣarū-Khān Amīns, 184-5
Sasaktu, *Mongol*, 216
Sāsānids, 4, 5
Sāsibūka, *Golden Horde*, 231
Sāṣ Beg, *Il-Khān*, 229; 219
Sattūn, *Ḥasanwayhid*, 141
Sayf-al-dawla Abū-l-Ḥasan ʿAlī, *Hamdānid*, 111, 112
Sayf-al-dawla, *Hūdid*, 26
Sayf-al-dīn, *Ayyūbids*, 77, 78
Sayf-al-dīn Begtimur, *Armen.*, 179
Sayf-al-dīn Aybak, *Bengal*, 309
Sayf-al-dīn Fīrūz, *Bengal*, 306
Sayf-al-dīn Ḥamza, *Bengal*, 308
Sayf-al-dīn Shūrī, *Ghūrid*, 291
Sayf-al-dīn Ghāzi, *Zengids*, 163
Sayf-al-Islām Ṭughtigīn, *Ayyubid*, 79, 98
Sayf-al-Islām Ṭughtigīn, *Būrid*, 161; 160
Sayyid Aḥmad, *Golden Horde*, 232
Sayyid Moḥammad, *Khīva*, 279
Sayyid Sulṭān, *Khojand*, 280
Sayyids, 300, 303
Selīm, *Othmanlis*, 195; 3, 84, 188, 256
Selīm Girāy, *Krim*, 236, 237
Seljūk Shāh, *Salghurid*, 173
Seljūqs, 149-155; 134, 140, 145, 156, 158-62, 166, 167, 170-2, 176, 183-6, 287-8, 292
Setaru, *Mongol*, 216
Shaʿbān, *Mamlūks*, 81
Shādī Beg, *Golden Horde*, 232
-Shadīd, *Hafsid*, 50
Shāhānshāh, *Zengid*, 163
Shāh-ʿAlam Bahādur Shāh, *Mogul*, 328
Shāh-ʿAlam, Jalāl-al-dīn, *Mogul*, 328

Shāh-Jahān, *Kutlugh Khān*, 179
Shāh-Jahān, *Moguls*, 328
Shāh Rukh, *Afshārid*, 259
Shāh Rukh, *Khānkand*, 280
Shāh Rukh, *Timūrid*, 268
Shāh Shujā', *Afghān*, 334
Shāh Shujā', *Muẓaffarid*, 250
Shāhīn Girāy, *Krim*, 237
Shāhs of Armenia, 170
Shāhs of Persia, 258–262
Shajar-al-durr, *Mamlūk*, 81
Shams-al-dawla Abū-Ṭāhir, *Buwayhid*, 142
Shams-al-dīn Ildigiz, *Atābeg of Adharbāijān*, 171
Shams-al-dīn, *Bahmanid*, 318
Shams-al-dīn, *Bengal*, 307
Shams-al-dīn Aḥmad, *Bengal*, 307
Shams-al-dīn Fīrūz, *Bengal*, 306
Shams-al-dīn Ilyās, *Bengal*, 307
Shams-al-dīn Muḥammad Sūr Ghāzi Shāh, *Bengal*, 308
Shams-al-dīn Muẓaffar, *Bengal*, 308
Shams-al-dīn Yūsuf, *Bengal*, 307
Shams-al-dīn Altamish, *Dehli*, 299
Shams-al-dīn, *Kart*, 252
Shams-al-dīn Ṣāliḥ, *Ortuḳid*, 168
Shams-al-dīn, *Rasūl Imām*, 102
Shams-al-dīn 'Alī, *Serbadārid*, 251
Shams-al-ma'ālī, *Ziyārid*, 137
Shams-al-mulk, *Ilak Khān*, 135
Shams-al-mulūk Ismā'īl, *Būrid*, 161
Sharaf-al-dawla Shīr Zayd, *Buwayhid*, 141
Sharaf-al-dawla, *Ilak Khān*, 135
Sharaf-al-dawla Abū-l-Makārim Muslim, *'Oḳaylid*, 117
Sharaf-al-dīn Īsā, *Ayyubid*, 78
Sharaf-al-dīn, *Ilak Khān*, 135
Sharīf Abū-l-Ma'ālī, *Hamdānid*, 112
Sharīf, *Marīnid*, 58
Sharīfs of Morocco, 60–63
Shaṣṭī Kings of Jaunpūr, 309
Shaybān, *Mongol*, 222–3, 225, 230, 232, 238–240
Shaybān, *Tūlūnid*, 68
Shaybānīdes, 269–273; 239, 268, 278, 322
Shaykh, *Hasanī Sharīf*, 61
Shaykh, *Mamlūk*, 83
Sheref, Turkomāns of the Black and White, 252–4
Shibl-al-dawla Abū-Kāmil Naṣr, *Mirdāsid*, 115
Shihāb-al-dawla Mawdūd, *Ghaznawid*, 289
Shihāb-al-dawla, *Ilak Khān*, 135
Shihāb-al-dīn Bāyazīd, *Bengal*, 307
Shihāb-al-dīn Baghrā, *Bengal*, 306
Shihāb-al-dīn Maḥmūd, *Būrid*, 161
Shihāb-al-dīn 'Omar, *Dehli*, 299
Shihāb-al-dīn Muḥammad, *Ghūrid*, 292–4
Shī'ites, 37, 70, 102, 112, 124, 140, 149, 250
Shīr 'Alī, *Afghān*, 333–4
Shīr 'Alī, *Khān of Khokand*, 280
Shīr Ghāzī, *Khān of Khiva*, 279
Shīr Khān, *Bengal*, 306
Shīr Shāh, *Dehli*, 300; 294, 305, 322
Shīrzād, *Ghaznawid*, 289
Shīr Zayd, *Buwayhid*, 141
Shīrān, *Bengal*, 306
Shujā'-al-mulk, *Afghān*, 334; 331–3
Shujā', *Mogul*, 328
Sikandar Shāh, *Bengal*, 307
Sikandar Shāh, *Dehli*, 300
Sikandar Shāh, *Gujarāt*, 313
Sinjar, *Chagatāy*, 242
Sinjar Mu'izz-al-dīn, *Seljūḳ*, 153; 152, 292
Sinjār Shāh, *Zengid*, 163
Slave Kings of Dehli, 299, 301; 294–6
Subḥān Ḳulī, *Jānid*, 275
Ṣufyān, *Khāra*, 278
Sukmān-Ḳuṭbī, *Armenia*, 170

Sukmān Nāṣir-al dīn, *Armenia*, 170
Sukmān, *Ortukids*, 168; 166
Sulayhids, 94
Sulaymān, *Ayyūbids*, 98
Sulaymān Ḳarārānī, *Bengal*, 308
Sulaymān, *Filali Sharīf*, 61
Sulaymān -Musta'īn, *Hūdid*, 26
Sulaymān, *Īl-Khān of Persia*, 220
Sulaymān, *Khoḳand*, 280
Sulaymān Abū-*l*-Rabī', *Marīnid*, 57
Sulaymān, *Omayyad*, 9
Sulaymān -Musta'īn, *Omayyad of Cordova*, 21
Sulaymān, *'Othmānlīs*, 195; 188-9
Sulaymān, *Ṣafavid*, 259
Sulaymān, *Seljūḳ of -'Irāḳ*, 154
Sulaymān, *Seljūḳs of -Rūm*, 155
Sulṭān, 140, 286*n*
Sulṭān-al-dawla, *Buwayhid*, 141
Sulṭān-al-dawla Arslān, *Ghaznawid*, 289
Sulṭān Ḥājjī, *Khiva*, 278
Sulṭān Sa'īd, *Shaybānid*, 272
Sulṭān Shāh Rukn-al-dīn, *Seljūḳ of Kirmān*, 153
Sulṭān Shāh, *Seljūḳ of Syria*, 154
Sunḳur, *Salgharid*, 173; 172
Sūrī, Sayf-al-dīn, *Ghōrid*, 291
Su'ūd, Abū-, *Zuray'ids*, 97
Suyūrghātmish, *Ḳutlugh Khān*, 179
Suyūrghātmish, *Mongol*, 268; 210, 265

Tafkaj Khān, *Īlak Khān*, 135
Taghlaḳ Shāh, *Dehlī*, 300
Taghlaḳids, 300, 302
Taghlib, Abū-, *Ḥamdānid*, 112
Tagir, *Khiva*, 279
Ṭāhir, Abū-, *Hazāraspid*, 175
Ṭāhir, *Saffārid*, 130
Ṭāhir Dhū-l-Yamīnayn, *Ṭāhirid*, 128; 7
Ṭāhirids, 128, 129
Ṭāhirids of the Yaman, 101
Ṭāhir, Abū-, *Buwayhid*, 142
Ṭāhir, Abū-, *Ḥamdānid*, 112
Ṭahmāsp, *Ṣafavids*, 259
Ṭā'i', *'Abbāsid*, 12
Taifas, Reyes de, 23-7
Taisong, *Mongol*, 216
Tāj-al-dawla Khusrū Malik, *Ghaznawid*, 289
Tāj-al-mulūk Būrī, *Būrid*, 161
Taḳī-al-dīn 'Omar, *Ayyūbid*, 79, 165
Takka Amīrs, 184-5
Takla, *Hazāraspid*, 175
Takla, *Salgharid*, 173
Ṭālib, Abū-, *Buwayhid*, 142
Ṭalḥa, *Ṭāhirid*, 128
Tālikū, *Chagatāy*, 242
Tamāl, *Mirdāsid*, 116
Tamar Khān-Ḳirān, *Bengal*, 306
Tamerlane, *see* Timūr
Tamīm, *Zayrid*, 25
Tamīm, *Zayrid*, 40
Tamīm, Abū-, *Fāṭimids*, 71
Tandū, *Jalayr*, 247
Tarjumān-al-dīn, *Rassid*, 102
Tāshfīn, *Almoravid*, 43
Tāshfīn, Abū-'Omar, *Marīnid*, 57
Tāshfīn, Abū-, *Ziyānids*, 51
Tatar Khān, *Bengal*,
Ṭaṭār, *Mamlūk*, 83
Tawfīḳ, *Khedive*, 85
Thābit, Abū-, *Marīnid*, 57
Thābit, Abū-, *Ziyānids*, 51
Thā'ir, *'Alid*, 127
Temujin (Chingiz), 202
Teval, *Mongol*, 222, 240
Timūr (Tamerlane), 265-8; 185, 227-8, 242, 247-53, 297, 322
Timurbughā, *Mamlūk*, 83
Timūr, *Golden Horde*, 232-
Timūrids, 265–268; 175, 255, 330
Timūr Khōja, *Golden Horde*, 230
Timūr Ḳutlugh, *Golden Horde*, 232
Timūr Malik, *Golden Horde*, 231
Timūr Shāh, *Afghān*, 334
Timurtāsh, *Ortukid*, 168
Tīnī-Beg, *Golden Horde*, 230

Tirmasharīn, *Chagatāy*, 242
Trumen, Czars of, 239
Tojirids, 26
Tōḳtakya, *Golden Horde*, 231
Tōḳtāmish Ghiyāth-*al*-dīn, *Golden Horde*, 231; 225, 227-9, 265
Tōḳtū, *Golden Horde*, 230
Torghūd (Dragut), *Corsair*, 56
Tūda-Mangū, *Golden Horde*, 230
Tufghāj 'Imād-*al*-dawla Ibrāhīm, *Īlak Khān*, 135
Tughā-Timūr, *Īl-Khān*, 220, 265
Ṭughān Khān, *Bengal*, 306
Ṭughān Sharaf-*al*-dīn, *Īlak*, 135
Tughān-Timūr, *Mongol*, 215; 213
Ṭughril, *Ghaznawid*, 289
Ṭughril Khān, *Īlak Khān*, 135
Ṭughj, *Ikhshidid*, 69
Ṭughril, *Bengal*, 306
Ṭughril, *Seljuḳs of* -*'Irāḳ*, 154
Ṭughril Beg, Rukn-*al*-dīn, *Seljuḳ*, 153; 145, 151, 172, 287
Ṭughril Shāh Muḥyī-*al*-dīn, *Seljuḳ of Kirmān*, 153
Ṭughtigīn, *Ayyūbid*, 79, 98
Ṭughtigīn Sayf-al-Islām Ẓahīr-al-dīn, *Būrid*, 161
Ṭūka-Timūr, *Chagatāy*, 242
Tūka-Timūr, *Mongol*, 222-3, 225, 230, 232, 233 ff.
Tukush, *Khwārizm Shāh*, 177
Tūla-Bughā, *Golden Horde*, 230
Tūlān-Beg, *Golden Horde*, 230
Ṭūlūnids, 68; 6
Tulūy, *Mongol*, 205, 211-217
Tūmān-Bey, *Mamluk*, 83
Turakina, *Mongol*, 215
Tūrān-Shāh, *Ayyūbid*, 74, 77, 78, 98
Tūrān Shāh, *Seljuḳs of Kirmān*, 153
Turkistān, Khāns of, 134–5
Turkomāns, 245-7, 253–4
Turks, 7, 49. 150 ff., 159
Tutush, *Seljuḳ of Syria*, 154; 160, 162, 166

'Uddat-*al*-dawla Abū-Taghlib-Ghaḍanfir, *Ḥamdānid*, 112
Ukektu, *Mongol*, 216
'Ulā, Abū-l-, *Almohad*, 47
Uljai-Timūr, *Mongol*, 215
Ūljā'tū, *Mongol*, 215
Uljai'tū, *Il-Khān of Persia*, 220
Ulugh Beg, *Timūrid*, 268
Ulugh Moḥammad, *Kazan*, 334-5
Ūlūj 'Alī (Ochiali), *Corsair*, 56
Ūngūr Abū-l-Ḳāsim, *Ikhshidid*, 69
Urang Timūr, *Ḳrim*, 233
Urūj Barbarossa, 55
Ūrūs, *Golden Horde*, 231; 227, 229
Usukhal, *Mongol*, 215
Ūzbeg, Muẓaffar-*al*-dīn, *Atābeg of Ādharbījān*, 171
Uzbeg, *Golden Horde*, 230; 238
Uzun Ḥasan, *Āḳ-Ḳuyunlī*, 253-5

Wajīh-*al*-dīn Mas'ūd, *Sarbadārid*, 261
Walad, Shāh, *Jalayr*, 247-8
Walī-Allāh Shāh, *Bahmanid*, 316
Wālī Moḥammad, *Jānid*, 275
Walīd, *Ḥasanī Sharīf*, 61
-Walīd, *Omayyads*, 9
Washmagīr Ẓahīr-*al*-dawla, *Ziyārid*, 137
Wat'asids, 58
-Wāthiḳ, *'Abbāsid*, 12
-Wāthiḳ Abū-l-'Ulā, *Almohad*, 47
-Wāthiḳ, *Ḥammūdid*, 25
-Wāthiḳ, *Marīnid*, 58
White Horde, 231; 226

Yadighār, *Khiva*, 279
Ya'furids, 90, 91
Yaghi (or Ya'ḳūb) Arslān, *Dānishmandid*, 156
Yagmorasan, *Ziyānid*, 51
Yaḥyā -Mu'taṣim, *Almohad*, 47
Yaḥyā -Ḳādir, *Dhū-l-Nūnid*, 25, 26
Yaḥyā -Ma'mūn, *Dhū-l-Nūnid*, 25, 26

Yaḥyā Abū-Zakaryā, *Ḥafṣids*, 60
Yaḥyā, *Ḥammādid*, 40
Yaḥya-Mu'talī, *Ḥammādid*, 21, 23
Yaḥyā, *Idrīsids*, 35
Yaḥyā Shāh, *Muẓaffarid*, 248
Yaḥyā, *Rasūlid*, 99
Yaḥyā, *Sarbadārid*, 251
Yaḥyā-Muẓaffar, *Tojibid*, 26
Yaḥyā, *Zayrid*, 40
Yaḥyā, Abū-, *Ḥafṣids*, 50
Yaḥyā, Abū-, *Marīnids*, 57
Ya'ḳūb, *Afghān*, 334
Ya'ḳūb, *Aḳ-Ḳuyunlū*, 254
Ya'ḳūb Abū-Yūsuf-Manṣūr, *Almohad*, 47
Ya'ḳūb, Abū Yūsuf, *Marīnid*, 57
Ya'ḳūb, *Marīnid*, 58
Ya'ḳūb b.-Layth, *Ṣaffārid*, 128–130; 284
Ya'ḳūb, Abū-, *Almohad*, 47
Yamīn-*al*-dawla, *see* Maḥmūd *and* Bahrām, *Ghaznawids* [274
Yār Moḥammad, *Shaybānid*, 272;
Yazīd, *Filalī Sharīf*, 61
Yazīd, *Omayyads*, 9
Yazīd b. Hātim, 34, 36
Yildiz, 294-5
Yissugāy, 202
Yisūnbughā, *Chagatāy*, 242
Yisū Mangū, *Chagatāy*, 242
Yisūn-Tīmūr, *Chagatāy*, 242
Yisūn-Tīmūr, *Mongol*, 215
Yuen, 213
Yūluḳ-Arslān, *Ortuḳid*, 168
Yūsuf, *'Ādil Shāh*, 317, 321
Yūsuf Abū-Ya'ḳūb, *Almohad*, 47
Yūsuf b. Tāshfīn, *Almoravid*, 42, 43
Yūsuf, *Ayyūbids*, 77, 78, 98
Yūsuf Zayn-*al*-dīn, *Begtigīnid*, 165
Yūsuf Shāh, *Bengal*, 307
Yūsuf Shāh, *Ḥazāraspids*, 175
Yūsuf-Mu'taman, *Hūdid*, 26
Yūsuf, *Īlak Khān*, 135
Yūsuf, *Mamlūk*, 83
Yūsuf Abū-Ya'ḳūb, *Marīnid*, 57
Yūsuf-Nāṣir, *Naṣrids*, 28
Yūsuf-Dā'ī, *Rassid*, 102, 103
Yūsuf, *Rasūlids*, 99
Yūsuf Bulukkīn, *Zayrid*, 40
Yūsuf, Abū-, *Almohad*, 47
Yūsuf, Abū, *Marīnid*, 57
Yūzbak, *Bengal*, 306

Ẓafar Khān, *Bahmanid*, 318
Ẓafar Khān, *Gujarāt*, 313
Ẓāfir, *Dhu-l-Nūnid*, 25
Ẓāfir Abū-l-Manṣūr Ismā'īl, *Fāṭimid*, 71
Ẓāfir Ṣalāḥ-*al*-dīn 'Āmir, *Ṭahirids* (Yaman), 101
Zaghal, *Naṣrid*, 28
Ẓāhir, *'Abbāsid*, 13
Ẓāhir Ghiyāth-*al*-dīn Ghāzī, *Ayyūbid*, 78
Ẓāhir Abū-l-Ḥasan 'Alī, *Fāṭimid*, 71
Ẓāhir, *Ḥasanwayhid*, 138
Ẓāhir Barḳūḳ, *Mamlūk*, 81, 83
Ẓāhir Baybars-Bundukdārī, *Mamlūk*, 81
Ẓāhir Bilbey, *Mamlūk*, 83
Ẓāhir Jaḳmaḳ, *Mamlūk*, 83
Ẓāhir Kānsūh, *Mamlūk*, 83
Ẓāhir Khūshḳadam, *Mamlūk*, 83
Ẓāhir Ṭaṭār, *Mamlūk*, 83
Ẓāhir Timurbughā, *Mamlūk*, 83
Ẓāhir, *Ortuḳid*, 168
Ẓāhir, Yaḥyā, *Rasūlid*, 99
Ẓahīr-*al*-dawla, *Ghaznawid*, 289
Ẓahīr-*al*-dawla, *Ziyārid*, 137
Ẓahīr-*al*-dīn Ibrahīm, *Armenia*, 170
Ẓahīr-*al*-dīn, *Kākwayhid*, 145
Ẓahīr-*al*-dīn *see* Bābar,
Ẓahīr-*al*-dīn, *Sarbadārid*, 251
Ẓā'im Abū-Thābit, *Ziyānid*, 51
Za'īm-*al*-dawla Abū-Kāmil Baraka, *'Okaylid*, 117
Zakaryā Abū-Yaḥyā, *Ḥafṣid*, 60
Zakaryā, Abū-, *Ḥafṣids*, 50
Zamān Shāh, *Afghān*, 334; 331

Zands (Shāhs of Persia), 260; 268
Zangī, *Salgharid*, 173
Zangī, *Zangids*, 163
Zangids, Atābegs, 162–4; 74–5, 160, 165
Zāwī, *Zayrid*, 25
Zaydān, *Ḥasanī Sharīf*,
Zaydites, 102, 127
Zayn-al-'Ābidīn, *Muẓaffarid*, 250
Zayn-al-dīn 'Alī Kūchuk, *Begtigīnid*, 165
Zayn-al-dīn Yūsuf, *Begtigīnid*, 165
Zayrids (Granada), 25
Zayrids (Tunis), 39, 40, 41, 43
Ziyād, *Ziyādid*, 91
Ziyādat-Allāh, *Aghlabids*, 37
Ziyādids, 89, 90, 91
Ziyān, Abū-, *Marīnid*, 57
Ziyān, Abū-, *Ziyānids*, 51
Ziyānids, 51; 46, 57
Ziyārids, 136, 137
Zubay'ids, 97

THE END

BY STANLEY LANE-POOLE

The Life of Edward William Lane. 8vo, pp. 138. Williams and Norgate. 1877.

The People of Turkey. By a Consul's Daughter. Edited. Two vols. 8vo, pp. xxxi, 281; x, 352. Murray. 1878.

Lane's Selections from the Kuran. Edited with Introduction. 8vo. Frontispiece. pp. cxii, 173, 2. Trübner's Oriental Series. 1879.

Egypt. Illustrated. Fcp. 8vo, pp. xii, 200. Sampson Low. 1881.

The Speeches and Table-Talk of the Prophet Mohammad. 18mo, pp. lxiii, 196. Macmillan's Golden Treasury Series. 1882; reissue, 1893

Le Koran, sa Poesie et ses Lois. 24mo, pp. vi, 112. Leroux. 1882.

Studies in a Mosque. 1883. *Second Edition.* 8vo, pp. viii, 326. Remington. 1893.

Arabian Society in the Middle Ages. Edited. 8vo, pp. xvi, 283. Chatto. 1883.

Picturesque Palestine, Sinai, and Egypt. Vol. IV.—Egypt. 4to, pp. 121–234. Illustrated. Virtue. 1883.

Social Life in Egypt: a Description of the Country and its People. (Supplement to *Picturesque Palestine.*) 4to. Illustrated. pp. vi, 138. Virtue. 1883.

Selections from the Prose Writings of Jonathan Swift. Portrait Preface, and Notes. 8vo, pp. xxx, 284. Paul and Trench's Parchment Library. 1884.

Notes for a Bibliography of Swift. 8vo, pp. 36. Elliot Stock. 1884.

Letters and Journals of Jonathan Swift. With Commentary and Notes. 8vo, pp. xv, 292. Paul and Trench's Parchment Library. 1885.

The Life of General F. R. Chesney, R.A. By his Wife and Daughter. Edited, with Preface. Portrait. 8vo, pp. xxiii, 279. Allen. 1885; reissue, 1893.

The Art of the Saracens in Egypt. Illustrated. 8vo, pp. xviii, 264. Published for the Committee of Council on Education by Chapman and Hall. 1886.

The Moors in Spain. Illustrated. 8vo, pp. xx, 285. Unwin. 1887.

Turkey. Illustrated. 8vo, pp. xix, 373. Unwin. 1888.

The Life of the Rt. Hon. Stratford Canning, Viscount Stratford de Redcliffe, K.G. From his Memoirs and Papers. Three Portraits. Library Edition. 2 vols. 8vo, pp. xxix, 519; xviii, 475. Longmans. 1888.
Popular Edition. pp. xx, 377. Longmans. 1890.

Thirty Years of Colonial Government. From Papers of the Rt. Hon. Sir G. F. Bowen, G.C.M.G. Portrait. 2 vols. pp. viii, 460; viii, 467. Longmans. 1889.

The Barbary Corsairs. Illustrated. 8vo, pp. xviii, 316. Unwin. 1890.

Sir Richard Church, C.B., G.C.H., Commander-in-Chief of the Greeks in the War of Independence. With two Plans. 8vo, pp. iv, 73. Longmans. 1890.

Stories from the Arabian Nights. 16mo. 3 vols. pp. vii, 338, 331, 346. Six Illustrations. Putnam. 1891.

The History of the Moghul Emperors illustrated by their Coins. pp. clxxvii. Constable. 1892.

BY STANLEY LANE-POOLE

Cairo: Sketches of its History, Monuments, and Social Life. Numerous Illustrations. 8vo, pp. xiv, 320. Virtue. 1892.

Aurangzib. Rulers of India Series. 8vo, pp. 212. Clarendon Press. 1893.

The Mohammadan Dynasties: Chronological and Genealogical Tables. 8vo, pp. xxviii, 361. Constable. 1893.

The Life of Sir Harry Parkes, K.C.B., late H.M. Minister in Japan and China. 2 vols: 8vo. Macmillan. *In the Press.*

The Life of Saladin. Putnam. *In preparation.*

Lane's Arabic-English Lexicon. Vols. 6-8. Imp. 4to, pp. xxxix, 2221-3064. Edited. Williams and Norgate. 1877-1893.

NUMISMATIC WORKS.

Catalogue of the Guthrie Collection of Oriental Coins. pp. viii, 38. Five Autotype Plates. Austin. 1874.

International Numismata Orientalia. Part II.—Coins of the Turkumans. 4to, pp. xii, 44. Six Plates. Trübner. 1875.

Essays in Oriental Numismatics. First, Second, and Third Series. Plates. 8vo. 3 vols. 1874, 1877, 1892.

Catalogue of Oriental Coins in the British Museum. Printed by order of the Trustees. 8vo. 10 vols. (Ouvrage couronné par l'Institut de France, 1881.)

Vol. I. THE KHALIFS. pp. xx, 263. Eight Autotype Plates. 1875.
II. MOHAMMADAN DYNASTIES. pp. xii, 279. Eight Autotype Plates. 1876.
III. THE TURKUMANS. pp. xxvi, 305. Twelve Autotype Plates. 1877.
IV. EGYPT. pp. xxx, 279. Eight Autotype Plates. 1879.
V. The MOORS and ARABIA. pp. lii, 175. Seven Autotype Plates. 1880
VI. The MONGOLS. pp. lxxv, 300. Nine Autotype Plates. 1881.
VII. BUKHARA. pp. xlviii, 131. Five Autotype Plates. 1882.
VIII. The TURKS. pp. li, 431. Twelve Autotype Plates. 1883.
IX., X. ADDITIONS: 1875—1889. 2 vols. pp. 420, 460. Twenty Autotype Plates, and General Index. 1889, 1890.

Catalogue of Indian Coins in the British Museum. Printed by order of the Trustees. 8vo. 3 vols.

Vol. I. SULTANS of DEHLI. pp. xiv, 199. Nine Autotype Plates. 1884.
II. MOHAMMADAN STATES. pp. lxxx, 239. Twelve Autotype Plates. 1885.
III. MOGHUL EMPERORS. pp. cliii, 401. Thirty-three Autotype Plates. 1892.

Catalogue of Arabic Glass Weights in the British Museum. 8vo, pp. xxxv, 127. Nine Autotype Plates, Printed by order of the Trustees. 1891.

Coins and Medals: their Place in History and Art. By the Authors of the British Museum Official Catalogues. Edited. Illustrated. 8vo. pp. x, 286. Elliot Stock, 1885. *Second Edition.* 1892.

Catalogue of the Mohammadan Coins in the Bodleian Library, Oxford. pp. xvi, 55. Four Plates. Clarendon Press. 1888.

LIBRARY OF THE BOMBAY

00035871

ized with financial assistance
H T Parekh
FOUNDATION
An Initiative by
HDFC
WITH YOU, RIGHT THROUGH
on 08 January, 2019